Power Systems

Krzysztof Sozański

# Digital Signal Processing in Power Electronics Control Circuits

Springer

Power Systems

For further volumes:
http://www.springer.com/series/4622

Krzysztof Sozański

# Digital Signal Processing in Power Electronics Control Circuits

Springer

Krzysztof Sozański
Institute of Electrical Engineering
University of Zielona Góra
Zielona Gora
Poland

ISSN 1612-1287 ISSN 1860-4676 (electronic)
ISBN 978-1-4471-5266-8 ISBN 978-1-4471-5267-5 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-1-4471-5267-5
Springer London Heidelberg New York Dordrecht

Library of Congress Control Number: 2013939344



Printed on acid-free paper

Springer is part of Springer Science+Business Media (www.springer.com)

*This book is dedicated to my dear parents Maria and Kazimierz, and my darling children, Anna, Mateusz and Andrzej*

# Preface

Power electronics circuits are increasingly important in the modern world due to the rapid progress in developments of microelectronics in areas such as microprocessors, digital signal processors, memory circuits, complementary metaloxide-semiconductors, analog-to-digital converters, digital-to-analog converters, and power semiconductors—especially metal–oxide–semiconductor field-effect transistors and insulated gate bipolar transistors.

Specifically, the development of power transistors has shifted the range of applications from a few amperes and hundreds of volts to several thousands of amperes and a few kilovolts, with a switching frequency measured in millions of hertz. Power electronics circuits are now used everywhere: in power systems, industry, telecommunications, transportation, commerce, etc. They even exist in such modern popular devices as digital cameras, mobile phones, and portable media players, etc. They are also used in micropower circuits, especially in energy harvesting circuits.

In the early years of power electronics, in the 1960s and 1970s, analog control circuits were most commonly used, meaning that only the simplest control algorithms could be applied. Some years later, in the 1980s and early 1990s, hybrid control circuits were used, which consisted of both analog and digital components. In subsequent years, there followed a slow transition to fully digitalized control systems, which are currently widely used and enable the application of more complex digital signal processing algorithms.

In this book, the author considers signal processing, starting from analog signal acquisition, through its conversion to digital form, methods of its filtration and separation, and ending with pulse control of output power transistors. The author has focused on two applications for the considered methods of digital signal processing: an active power filter and a digital class D power amplifier.

Both applications require precise digital control circuits with very high dynamic range of control signals. Therefore, in the author's opinion, these applications will provide very good illustrations for the considered methods. In this book, the author's original solutions for both applications are presented. In the author's opinion, the adopted solutions can also be extended to other power electronics devices.

In relation to the first application—active power filters (APF)—to start with there is analysis of first harmonic detectors based on: IIR filter, wave digital filters, sliding DFT and sliding Goertzel, moving DFT. Then, there is a discussion of the author's implementation of classical control circuits based on modified instantaneous power theory. Next, the dynamics of APF is considered. Dynamic distortion of APF makes it impossible to fully compensate line harmonics. In some cases, the line current THD ratio for systems with APF compensation can reach a value of a dozen or so percent. Therefore, the author has dealt with this problem by proposing APF models suitable for analysis and simulation of this phenomena. For predictable line current changes, it is possible to develop a predictable control algorithm to eliminate APF dynamics compensation errors. In the following sections, the author's modification using a predictive circuit to eliminate dynamic compensation errors is described. In this book, control circuits with filter banks which allow the selection of compensated harmonics are described. There are considered filter banks based on: sliding DFT, sliding Goertzel, moving DFT and instantaneous power theory algorithms.

For unpredictable line current changes, the author has developed a multirate APF. The presented multirate APF has a fast response for sudden changes in the load current. So, using multirate APF, it is possible to decrease the THD ratio of line current even for unpredictable loads.

The second application is a digital class D amplifier. Both APFs and the amplifiers are especially demanding in terms of the dynamics of processed signals. However, in the case of a class D amplifier, the dynamics reaches 120 dB, which results in high requirements for the type of algorithm used and its digital realization. The author has proposed a modulator with a noise shaping circuit for a class D amplifier. Interpolators are also considered that allow for the increasing of the sampling frequency while maintaining a substantial separation of signal from noise. The author also presents an original analog power supply voltage fluctuation compensation circuit for the class D amplifier. The class D amplifier with digital click modulation is also given special consideration. Finally, two-way and three-way loudspeaker systems, designed by the author, are presented, where the signal from input to output is digitally processed.

The greater part of the presented methods and circuits is the original work of the author. Listings from Matlab or in C language are attached to some of the considered algorithms to make the application of the algorithms easier. The presented methods and circuits can be successfully applied to the whole range of power electronics circuits.

The issues concerning digital signal processing are relatively widely described in the literature. However, in the author's opinion, there are very few publications combining digital signal processing and power electronics, due to the fact that these two areas of knowledge have been developed independently over the years. The author hopes that this book will, to some extent, bridge the gap between digital signal processing and power electronics. This book may be useful for

scientists and engineers who implement control circuits, as well as for students of electrical engineering courses. It may also be of some value to those who create new topologies and new power electronics circuits, giving them some insight into possible control algorithms.

Zielona Gora, Poland, December 2012 Krzysztof Sozański

# Acknowledgments

The author has written this book in his endeavor to abide by the following maxim *nulla dies sine linea* ↔ *nie ma dnia bez kreski* ↔ *not a day without a line drawn*. However, this is not always easily achieved.

I would also like to thank everyone who supported me during the writing of this book.

# Contents

# Acronyms

## Abbreviations

| | |
|---|---|
| AC | Alternating current |
| A/D | Analog-to-digital converter |
| ALU | Arithmetic-logic unit |
| APF | Active power filter |
| av | Average value of signal |
| BPF | Band-pass filter |
| BSF | Band-stop filter |
| CM | Click modulator, also called zero position coding |
| DAI | Digital audio interface |
| D/A | Digital-to-analog converter |
| dB | Decibel, 20log($U2/U1$), 10log($P2/P1$) |
| DC | Direct current |
| DFT | Discrete Fourier transform algorithm |
| DPWM | Digital pulse width modulation |
| DSM | Delta sigma modulator |
| DSP | Digital signal processor |
| D/t | Digital-to-time converter |
| e.g. | For example (exempli gratia-Latin) |
| EMI | Electromagnetic interference |
| etc. | And other things, or and so forth (et cetera-Latin) |
| FIR | Finite impulse response digital filter |
| FFT | Discrete fast Fourier transform algorithm |
| FLOPS | Floating-point operations per second |
| FPGA | Field programmable gate array |
| HPF | High-pass filter |
| IGBT | The insulated gate bipolar transistor |
| IC | Integrated circuit |
| i.e. | This is (id est-Latin) |

| | |
|---|---|
| IIR | Infinite impulse response digital filter |
| IIS | Inter-IC sound, integrated interchip sound, or IIS, is an electrical serial bus interface standard used for connecting digital audio devices together |
| $\mathrm{Im}(x)$, $\Im(x)$ | Imaginary part of $x$ |
| IPS | Instructions per second, MIPS |
| IPT | Instantaneous power theory |
| LC | LC circuit, circuit composed of capacitor and inductor |
| Log Chirp | Logarithmic swept sine chirp signal |
| LSB | Last significant bit |
| LPF | Low-pass filter |
| LR | Linkwitz-Riley filter |
| LTI | Linear time-invariant circuit (system) |
| LWDF | Lattice wave digital filter |
| LBWDF | Lattice bireciprocal wave digital filter |
| MAC | Multiplication and accumulation, special arithmetic operation of DSP |
| MDFT | Moving discrete Fourier transform algorithm |
| MIPS | Million instructions per second |
| MLS | Maximal length sequence signal |
| MOSFET | Metal–oxide–semiconductor field-effect transistor |
| MSB | Most significant bit |
| MWDF | Modified wave digital filters |
| PCB | Printed circuit board |
| PCM | Pulse code modulation |
| PDF | Probability density function |
| PLL | Phase locked loop or phase lock loop circuit |
| PWM | Pulse width modulation |
| $\mathrm{Re}(x)$, $\Re(x)$ | Real part of $x$ |
| RLC | Circuit, circuit composed of resistor, capacitor and inductor |
| rms | Root mean square |
| SA | Successive approximation |
| SC | Strictly complementary digital filter bank |
| SDFT | Sliding discrete Fourier transform algorithm |
| SGDFT | Sliding Goertzel discrete Fourier transform algorithm |
| SH | Sample and hold circuit, sampling circuit |
| SOS | Second-order section |
| S/PDIF | Sony/Philips digital interconnect format (more commonly known as Sony Philips digital interface) |
| SPS | Sample per seconds |
| TR | Time reversal |
| QMF | Quadrature mirror filter |

| | |
|---|---|
| U2 | Two's complement binary code |
| WDF | Wave digital filters |
| ZePoC | Zero position coding, also called click modulation |
| $\mu$C | Microcontroller |
| $\mu$P | General-purpose microprocessor |

## Symbols

| | |
|---|---|
| $C$ | Capacitance |
| $\delta_p$ | Ripple in the passband |
| $\delta_z$ | Ripple in the stopband |
| $f_{cr}$ | Filter crossover (cutoff) frequency |
| $f_s$ | Sampling rate, sampling frequency |
| $f_k, f_c$ | Power transistor switching frequency |
| $f_M$ | Line voltage frequency |
| $f_p$ | Passband frequency |
| $f_z$ | Stopband frequency |
| $H(s)$ | Analog transfer function |
| $H(z)$ | Digital transfer function |
| $i_C$, $i_C(t)$ | Instantaneous value of APF compensation current |
| $i_C(n)$ | Discrete signal represents APF compensation current |
| $i_M$, $i_M(t)$ | Instantaneous value of line current, power line current |
| $i_M(n)$ | Discrete signal represents power line current |
| $i_L$, $i_L(t)$ | Instantaneous value of load current |
| $i_L(n)$ | Discrete signal represents load current |
| $L$ | Inductance |
| $N$ | Length of sample block |
| $N_M$ | Number of samples per line voltage period |
| $R$ | Signal oversampling ratio |
| $R$ | Resistance |
| $M$ | Signal decimation ratio |
| SINAD | Signal to noise and distortion ratio |
| SNR | Signal to noise ratio |
| THD | Total harmonic distortion |
| $T_M$ | Line voltage period |
| $T_S$ | Sampling period |
| $Q_g$ | MOSFET total gate charge |
| $Q_{\mathrm{rr}}$ | Diode reverse recovery charge |
| $u_{C1}$, $u_{C1}(t)$ | Instantaneous value of capacitor voltage |
| $X(s)$ | Analog signal transmittance |
| $X(z)$ | Digital signal transmittance |
| $Z$ | Impedance |

| | |
|---|---|
| $Z_C$ | APF compensation circuit output impedance |
| $Z_M$ | Power line impedance |
| $Z_L$ | Load impedance |
| $z^{-1}$ | Unit delay operator |

# Chapter 1
# Introduction

## 1.1 Power Electronics Systems

Over the past 30 years, the range of power electronics has expanded greatly. This has been caused by the extensive development of microelectronics in areas such as microprocessors, digital signal processors, memory circuits, complementary metal-oxide-semiconductors (CMOS), analog-to-digital (A/D) converters, digital-to-analog (D/A) converters, and power semiconductors, especially metal-oxide-semiconductor field-effect transistors (MOSFET) and insulated gate bipolar transistors (IGBT). Specifically, the development of power transistors has shifted the range of applications from a few amperes and hundreds of volts to several thousand amperes and a few kilovolts with a switching frequency measured in millions of hertz. Another area of application of power electronics circuits are micropower circuits and particularly energy harvesting circuits. Hence, power electronics circuits are now used everywhere, in power systems, industry, telecommunications, transportation, commerce, etc. They even exist in such modern popular devices as digital cameras, mobile phones, and portable media players. The background of power electronics is described by Mohan [31], Erickson [17], Bose [11], Trzynadlowski [53], and many others.

Power electronics is quite a difficult field of science and technology, requiring an extensive knowledge of related fields. These include areas such as: power systems, electrical machines, signal processing, analog and digital control, electronics, electromagnetic compatibility, solid-state electronics, embedded software design, circuit theory, circuit simulation, electromagnetic theory, thermal design, etc. These aspects are shown in Fig. 1.1. In order to produce properly functioning power electronics devices, all these aspects should be included. Often, the omission of one of these factors causes a system malfunction. This is due to the fact that a power electronics system converts energy and any errors are revealed in energy dissipation, which lead to the disruption or destruction of components. This book focuses attention on the aspects of digital signal processing applications in power electronics systems.

K. Sozański, *Digital Signal Processing in Power Electronics Control Circuits*, Power Systems, DOI: 10.1007/978-1-4471-5267-5_1,

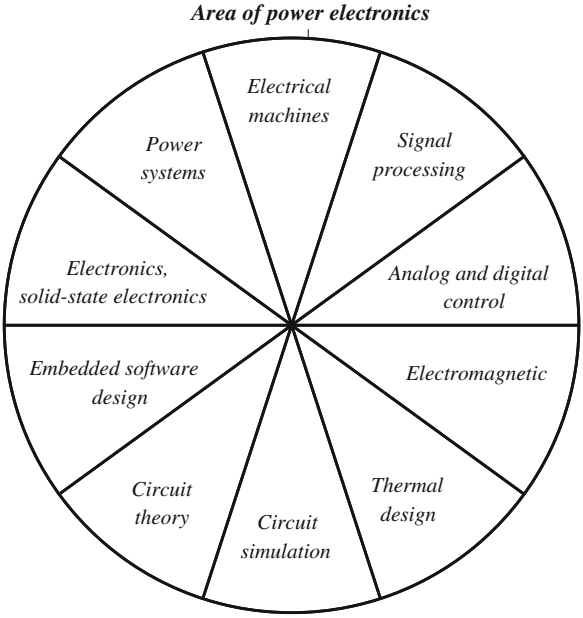



**Fig. 1.1** Multidisciplinary nature of power electronics circuit

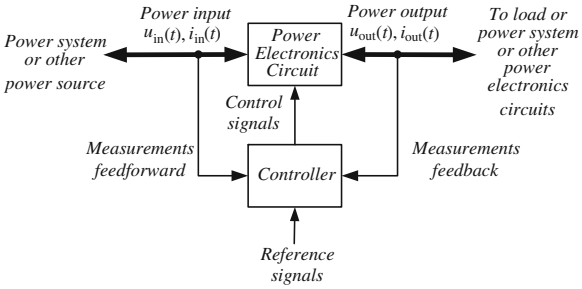



**Fig. 1.2** A power electronics system

A simplified diagram of a power electronics system is shown in Fig. 1.2. The system makes the conversion of electric power from input to load. The power input is typically from a power system, electrochemical battery, solar cells or fuel cells, etc. The input power can be direct current (DC) or alternating current (AC): single phase, two phase, three phase, or more. The output power depends on the load. The power electronics circuit is monitored by a controller which compares the output power (feedback) and input power (feedforward) with the reference value needed to achieve the desired results. The controller can be designed to use either an analog or digital technique. Today the digital solution is most common, while the analog solution is reserved only for simple power electronics systems. The power flows

through an electronics system from source to output. The output can be connected to a load or to an other power system or to other power electronics circuits, etc. However, the power electronics circuit may be reversed and then the energy can flow from output to source.

## 1.2 Digital Control Circuits for Power Electronics Systems

The most common power electronics system element is the inverter. Single- or three-phase (even more in multi-phase or in multilevel devices) inverters are frequently used parts of power electronics systems, in such devices as: AC and DC motor drives, uninterruptible power supplies, harmonic compensators, DC power supplies, controlled rectifiers, AC and DC power transmission systems, smart grid, etc.

A simplified block diagram of an exemplary three-phase inverter with digital controller is shown in Fig. 1.3. The inverter consists of six power IGBT transistors $Q_1$, $Q_2$, $Q_3$, $Q_4$, $Q_5$, $Q_6$, controlled by drivers with galvanic isolation. This galvanic isolation should have low input-to-output capacitance and should be highly resistant to a high output voltage slew rate, in the range 10–20 kV/μs. One of the inverter legs consists of two transistors $Q_1$ and $Q_4$, which are connected to the load $Z_{L1}$ through the LC low-pass filter ($L_{F1}$, $C_{F1}$) for suppressing pulse width modulation (PWM) components. The inverter is controlled by a digital signal processor (DSP) which performs the control algorithm. The control DSP function can be realized using one of several devices: general purpose microprocessors, microcontrollers, advanced microprocessors and microcontrollers, digital signal processors and programmable digital devices, etc. As with transistor control signals, analog signals representing currents and voltages are galvanically isolated too. The analog signals are converted into the digital form by an A/D converter. The algorithm controls the output signal value using controlling output transistors by pulses generated by the same kind of pulse modulator. In the early days of digital control circuits, the control

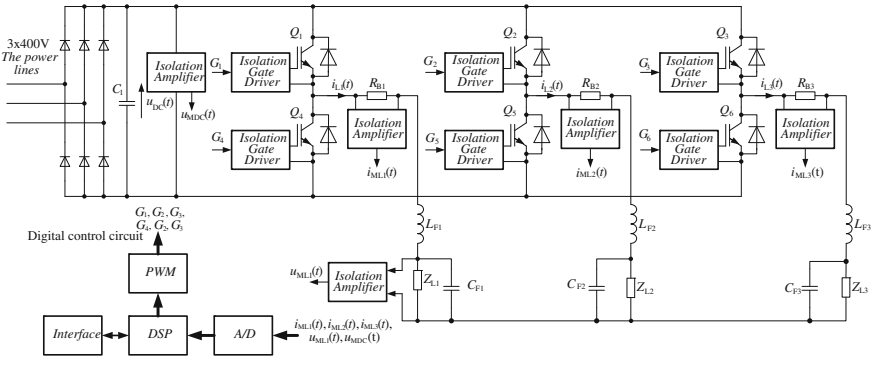



**Fig. 1.3** Exemplary three-phase inverter with digital controller

algorithms were very simple and represented only digital versions of analog control circuits with a single sampling frequency. Over time, control algorithms have turned into highly advanced and more complicated solutions. Currently, control circuits designed to increase signal dynamic range use a few sampling frequencies. Digital circuits using different sampling rates are called multirate digital circuits.

There are not many comprehensive publications dealing with digital control circuits for power electronics systems, though it is possible to find a lot of limited discussion in many conference papers. The background of digital control circuits is described by Astrom and Wittenmark [6], Williamson [58], Kazimerkowski et al. [25, 26], Buso nad Mattavelli [12], same aspects about power and signal processing are discussed by Bollen et al. [10].

Also some problems of control circuits for active power filters (APF) are described by the author [45–48]. The crucial first questions for digital control circuits are:

- Control system functions?
- Control algorithm?
- Sampling rate?
- Number of bits?
- Realization of control algorithm: fixed point or floating point?
- Type of digital circuit for realization?

Discussion of these problems is found in this book.

Examples of objects for digital control circuit application used are: an active power filter and a digital class D power amplifier. Both applications require precise digital control circuits with very high dynamic range of control signals. Therefore, in the author's opinion, these applications will provide very good illustrations for the considered methods. This book presents the author's original solutions for both applications. In the author's opinion, the adopted solutions can also be extended to other electronics devices.

### *1.2.1 Analog Versus Digital Control Circuit*

Historically, the control circuit of a power electronics device was analog. Therefore in the literature, even today, a lot of digital control circuits are described using analog transfer functions $H(s)$. This may be acceptable if the sampling frequency $f_s$ and power transistor switching frequency $f_k$ are much bigger than the frequency of the higher component of the band of interest. In Fig. 1.4a there is shown a magnitude frequency response of an analog circuit and in Fig. 1.4b there is shown a magnitude frequency response of its digital representation. The relation between analog and digital frequencies for the most commonly used bilinear transform is nonlinear, and especially for high frequencies near $f_s/2$ the frequency characteristic is compressed. The frequency response of an analog circuit is spanned between zero and infinity and it should be compressed from zero to $f_s/2$ for the digital domain. Therefore, characteristics of analog and digital circuits are different especially near $f_s/2$. This

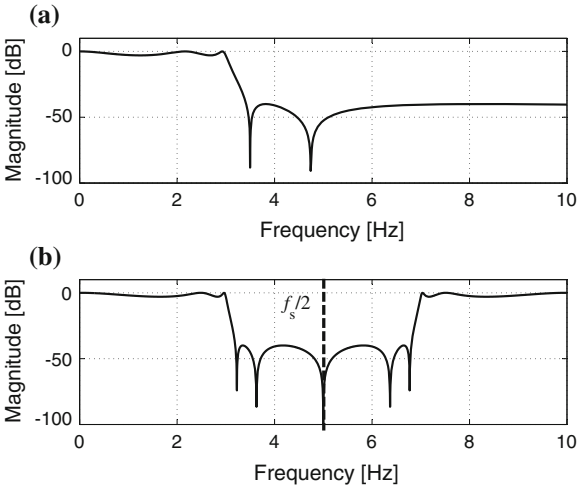



**Fig. 1.4** Frequency response of equivalent analog and digital circuits: **a** analog, **b** digital

problem is considered in Chap. 3. In this author's opinion, the right way to consider a digital circuit is as a digital controller rather than an analog circuit. This helps to avoid errors and instability in high frequency components. Another problem concerns algorithm computation, for which simulation research should use the same arithmetic resolution as in a real control circuit. This will help avoid unexpected associations with the instability caused by the limited resolution of the arithmetic. These problems are also considered in Chap. 3. The problems of digital signal processing are described in many publications, and as basic books ("bricks") the following books can be recommended [7, 15, 29, 33, 34, 36–38, 59]. The author presents some selected solutions of digital signal processing useful for power electronics circuits.

### *1.2.2 Causal and Noncausal Circuits*

A circuit (system) for which the output signals at any instant depends only on the past or/and present values of the input signals is called a causal system (circuit) e.g., $y(n) = x(n) - 0.3x(n-1) + 0.1x(n-3)$. All real-time physical systems are causal, because time only moves forward.

A circuit (system) for which the output at any instant depends also on future values of the input signals is called a noncausal system (circuit) e.g., $y(n) = x(n) - 0.5x(n+1) + 0.1x(n+3)$, $y(n) = x(-n)$, $y(n) = y(n^2)$. A noncausal circuit (system) is also called a nonrealizable circuit (system). A circuit (system) depending only on future input signal values is an anti-causal circuit (system), e.g., $y(n) = x(n+1)$.

This book mainly considers causal circuits (systems), because they are easier to work with and understand, because most practical systems are causal in nature. However, noncausal circuits in some applications are very attractive e.g., the realization of a linear-phase IIR filter uses a noncausal zero-phase IIR filter. Similarly, the author uses a noncausal circuit in the control circuit for an APF.

### *1.2.3 LTI Discrete-Time Circuits*

This book mainly considers linear time-invariant (LTI) discrete-time circuits. Let $x(n)$ be the discrete input signal, $y(n)$ be the discrete output signal, and $h(n)$ be a discrete impulse response from the discrete unit impulse $\delta(n)$, which is the impulse response. Discrete impulse $\delta(n)$ is also called Kronecker delta

$$\delta(n) = \begin{cases} 1 & n = 0 \\ 0 & n \neq 0 \end{cases}. \tag{1.1}$$

It plays the same role as the Dirac delta in continuous-time circuits.

A block diagram of the LTI discrete-time circuit is shown in Fig. 1.5.

Time domain LTI discrete-time circuits can be described by the following equations, for a noncausal circuit,

$$y(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} h(k)x(n-k), \tag{1.2}$$

and for a casual circuit,

$$y(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} h(k)x(n-k). \tag{1.3}$$

For a frequency domain LTI discrete-time circuit

$$Y(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{j}\omega T_s}) = H(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{j}\omega T_s})X(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{j}\omega T_s}) = H(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{j}\omega T_s}), \tag{1.4}$$

where: $X(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{j}\omega T_s})$, $H(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{j}\omega T_s})$, $Y(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{j}\omega T_s})$—Fourier transformation of discrete signals, $H(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{j}\omega T_s})$—LTI discrete-time circuit frequency transfer function, and

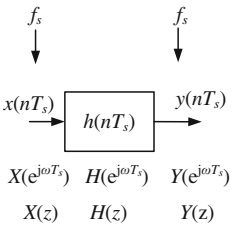



**Fig. 1.5** LTI discrete-time circuit

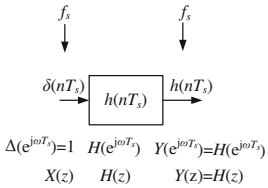



**Fig. 1.6** LTI discrete-time circuit impulse response

$$j\omega T_s = j2\pi f/f_s. \tag{1.5}$$

A LTI discrete circuit may be also described by a Z-transform

$$Y(z) = H(z)X(z), \tag{1.6}$$

where: $X(z), Y(z)$—Z-transform of discrete signals, $H(z)$—transfer function. Therefore for LTI discrete-time circuits, it is possible to write relations as

$$x(n) \leftrightarrow x(nT_s) \leftrightarrow X(e^{j\omega T_s}) \leftrightarrow X(z) \tag{1.7}$$

For a description of LTI discrete-time circuits it is important to know their impulse response. Substituting for input signal discrete impulse $x(n) = \delta(n)$, it is possible to calculate the circuit impulse response

$$y(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} h(k)\delta(n-k) = h(n), \tag{1.8}$$

and for frequency domain ($\Delta(e^{j\omega T_s}) = 1$)

$$Y(e^{j\omega T_s}) = H(e^{j\omega T_s})X(e^{j\omega T_s}). \tag{1.9}$$

A block diagram of a LTI discrete circuit for impulse response is depicted in Fig. 1.6. A highly detailed description of LTI discrete circuits can be found in many books, e.g.: Oppenheim et al. [33], Rabiner and Gold [38], Proakis and Manolakis [37], Mitra [30], Zielinski [59], Chen et al. [13], Wanhammar [57], Venezuela and Constantindes [55], Orfanidis [34], Tantaratana [52], Chen [13].

### *1.2.4 Digital Filters*

In engineering practice, there is often a common problem of the presence of noise in digital measuring signals. If the frequency of the noise is higher than the frequency of the signal, in the first approach, the most common remedy is the use of averaging. Typically, $N + 1$ signal samples are summed and the result is divided by the number

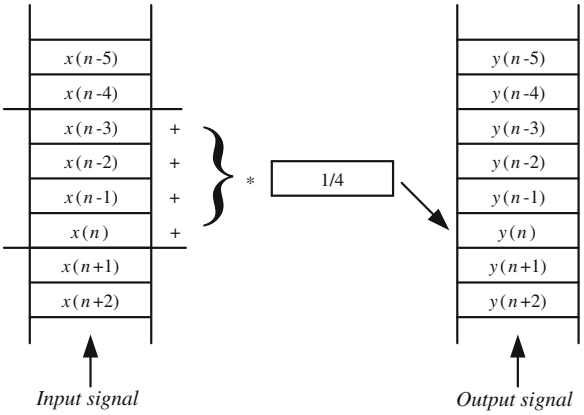



**Fig. 1.7** 3-Order moving average circuit

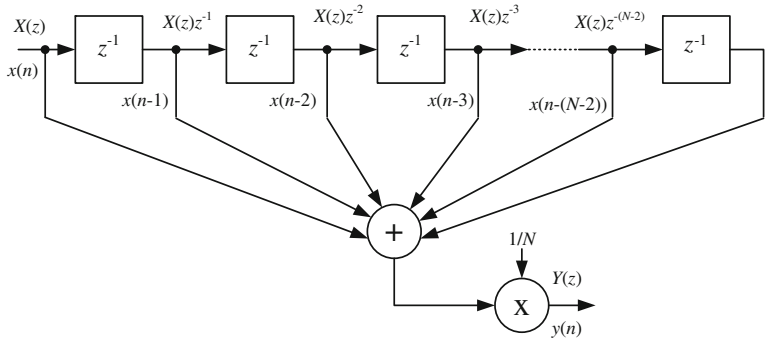



**Fig. 1.8** Block diagram of $N$-order moving average circuit

of samples $N + 1$. A diagram of such a circuit for calculating the average of four current samples, also called the moving average, is shown in Fig. 1.7. The input signal is stored in the input buffer and the output signal is stored in the output buffer, but only four $(N + 1)$ current input samples should be stored. A diagram of a $N$-order moving average circuit is depicted in Fig. 1.8. The operation of such a circuit can be described by the equation

$$y(n) = \frac{1}{N+1} \sum_{k=0}^{N} x(n-k), \tag{1.10}$$

where: $N + 1$—number of signal samples.

The $N$-order moving average transfer function can be described by the equation

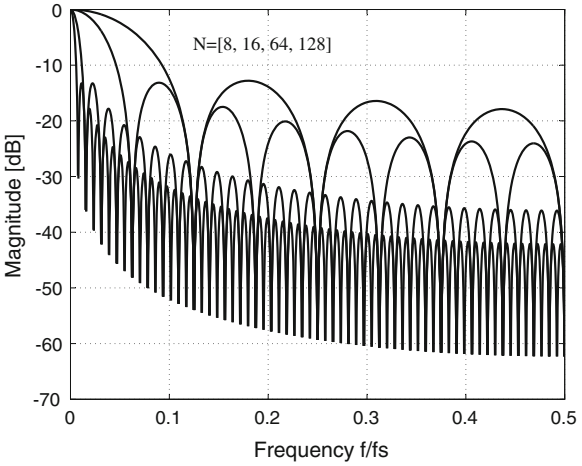



**Fig. 1.9** Frequency responses of moving average circuits

$$H(z) = \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} = \frac{1}{N+1} \sum_{k=0}^{N} z^{-k}. \tag{1.11}$$

Figure 1.9 shows the frequency characteristics for the moving average of the orders: 8, 16, 64, and 128. As can be seen from the graph, this method does not allow the obtaining of very high noise suppression. Achieving greater suppression is possible thanks to the use of more complex circuits than the moving average. These problems are further described in Chap. 3. Special attention is paid to the wave digital filter (WDF), which is especially suitable for the realisation of low resolution arithmetics [18, 19, 21].

### *1.2.5 Hard Real-Time Control Systems*

The control circuit for a power electronics system should be a hard real-time system. What this means is that a control system function (hardware, software, or a combination of both) is considered hard real time if, and only if, it has a hard deadline for the completion of an action or task [35]. This deadline must always be met; otherwise, the task has failed and in power electronics circuits there is a high risk of damage. A block diagram of an exemplary control circuit with one analog input and one analog output is shown in Fig. 1.10. Analog input signal $x(t)$ is converted into digital form with sampling rate $f_s$, and is then processed by a DSP. Finally, output signal $y(n)$ is converted by a PWM modulator to pulses controlling output inverter switches $S_1$ and $S_2$. In this circuit, all digital circuits have the same sampling frequency $f_s$. A typical timing diagram for such a control circuit for power electronics is depicted

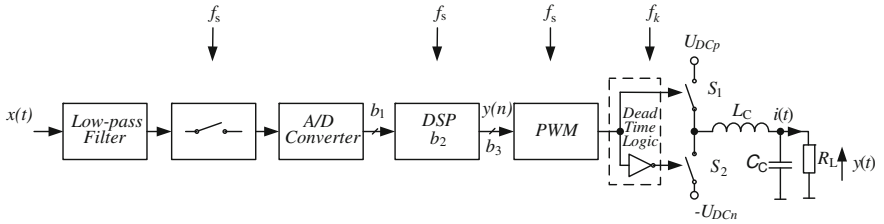



**Fig. 1.10** Block diagram of exemplary control circuit for power electronics system

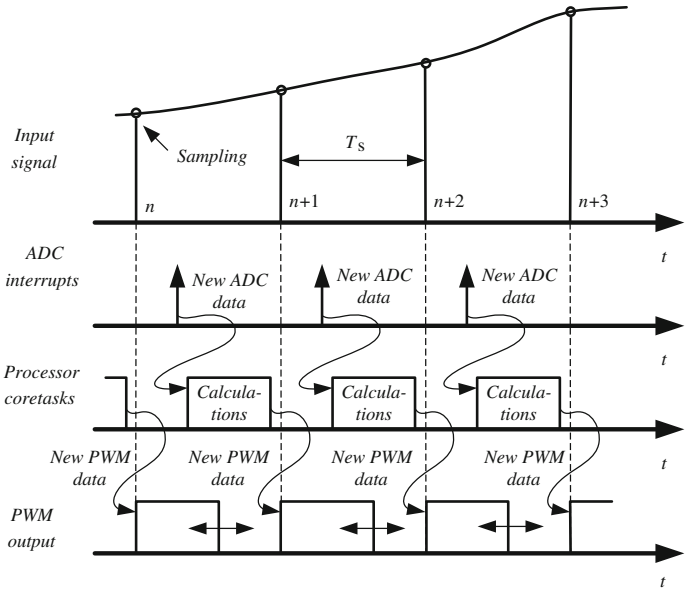



**Fig. 1.11** Timing diagram for power electronics control circuit

in Fig. 1.11. During the sampling period $T_s$ all operations (calculation, conversion, communication etc.) should be completed. A control system may have more than one hard real-time task as well as other nonreal-time tasks. This is possible, as long as the system can properly schedule these tasks in such a way that the hard real-time tasks always meet their deadlines. The control system should ensure that the system still operates under worst-case response time to events. The control circuit should also be stable even under transient overload, when the system is overloaded by events and it is impossible to meet all deadlines, yet the deadlines of selected critical tasks must still be guaranteed.

### 1.2.6 Sampling Rate

A continuous analog signal is sampled at discrete intervals, $T_s = 1/f_s$, which must be carefully chosen to ensure an accurate representation of the original analog signal. It is clear that the more samples taken (faster sampling rates), the more accurate the digital representation, while if fewer samples are taken (lower sampling rates), a point is reached where critical information about the signal is actually lost. In the classical system for analog signal band $0 \ldots f_b$, half of the sampling frequency $f_s/2$ is only a little bit higher than $f_b$. A rule of sampled data systems is that the input signal's spectrum gets folded around a frequency one-half that of the sampling clock. An ideal anti-aliasing filter would pass all signals in the band of interest and block all signals outside of that band. The quality of the anti-aliasing filter is the major factor in the signal-to-noise ratio (*SNR*). Problems of choosing the correct sampling rate are discussed in Chaps. 2 and 3.

### 1.2.7 Simultaneous Sampling

A very important aspect of digital control circuits is the fact that the samples represent simultaneously sampled data or time-aligned data. The A/D converters have two very common architectures, which in analog input design are multiplexed and simultaneous sampling solutions [27, 28]. Multiplexed architectures use one A/D converter for many channels. The main disadvantage of a sequential sampling A/D converter is the time error between channel samples. The best solution is to use a simultaneous sampling A/D converter, however, if it is not possible to use such a converter, the sequential sampling A/D converter with time alignment has to be used. Benefits of simultaneous sampling compared to sequential sampling are:

- less jitter,
- higher bandwidth,
- less channel-to-channel crosstalk,
- less settling time.

In Chap. 2, discussion of these problems is presented.

### 1.2.8 Number of Bits

Another important question during the design process of power electronics control circuits is the number of bits. During the quantization process noise is added to the signal, so signal quality deteriorates. The quality of signal can be described by the signal-to-noise ratio (*SNR*) [24]. Signal-to-noise ratio can be determined by

$$SNR_{dB} = 10 \log_{10} \left( \frac{P_x}{P_n} \right), \tag{1.12}$$

where: $P_x$—power of signal, $P_n$—power of noise.

The following aspects of signal acquisition and processing are considered in this book:

- currents and voltage measurements,
- signal galvanic isolation,
- choice of sampling rate,
- choice of number of bits,
- discussion of sequential and simultaneous sampling,
- synchronization with line voltage,
- signal filtration and separation.

## 1.3 Multirate Control Circuits

Today, most control circuits are built using multirate circuits. The most common multirate circuits are signal interpolators and decimators, used for changing the signal sampling rate. Multirate circuits are described by Crochiere and Rabiner [14], Vaidyanathan [54], Flige [20], Proakis and Manolakis [37], and by many others. The exemplary digital multirate control circuit with analog input and output is depicted in Fig. 1.12. The analog input signal $x(t)$, after passing through a low-pass anti-aliasing filter, is sampled with frequency $f_{s1}$ and afterwards is converted into digital form with $b_1$ bits resolution by an A/D converter. The digital signal processor performs the algorithms with sampling rate $f_{s2}$ and resolution $b_2$ bits. The algorithm output signal is converted into analog form by a D/A converter with the sampling rate $f_{s3}$ and with the resolution $b_3$ bits. In power electronics systems, the output D/A converter is usually a pulse width modulator producing power transistor controlling pulses. In the past, digital systems worked at sampling speeds close to the maximum signal frequency. This resulted in very high requirements for analog input and output filters. At the present time the sampling rate can be easily and inexpensively increased, so the requirements for the analog input and output filters can be much lower. This phenomenon is shown in Fig. 1.13. Signal with band $0 - f_b$ is sampled at a frequency

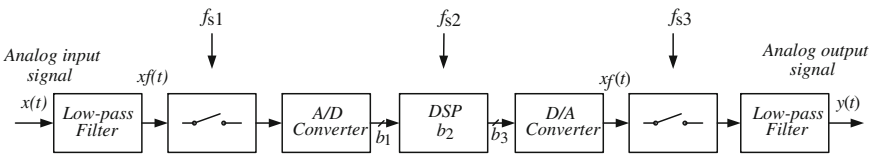



**Fig. 1.12** The digital multirate control circuit with analog input and output

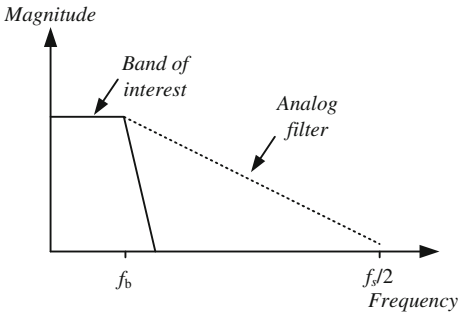



**Fig. 1.13** The oversampling

much greater than $2f_b$. This technique is called oversampling. Oversampling ratio $R$ is determined from the equation

$$R = \frac{f_s}{2f_b}. \tag{1.13}$$

As shown in Fig. 1.13 analog filter characteristics may be softer, which reduces the complexity and cost. Therefore, use of oversampling allows improvement of control system performance.

This book considers the following multirate circuit problems:

- increasing signal dynamic range by oversampling in A/D and D/A conversion,
- noise shaping circuits,
- methods for signal decimation and interpolation useful for power electronics control circuits,
- multirate circuits with wave digital filters
- interpolators with linear phase IIR filters.

## 1.4 Active Power Filters

Recently, wide usage of power electronics equipment has caused an increase of the harmonic disturbances in power distribution systems. The control by AC power thyristors and other semiconductor switches is widely applied to feed electric power to electrical loads, such as: furnaces, computer power supplies, adjustable speed drives, etc. The nonlinear loads draw harmonic and reactive power components of current from AC mains. In three-phase systems, they can also cause unbalance and draw excessive neutral currents. Reactive power burden, unbalance, and injected harmonics cause a poor power factor, a low power system efficiency and excessive neutral currents.

Conventionally, passive LC filters and capacitors have been used to eliminate line current harmonics and to increase the power factor. However, in some practical

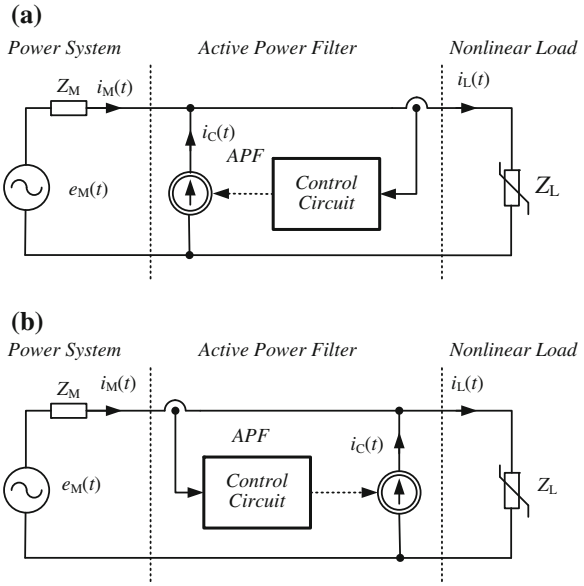



**Fig. 1.14** Harmonic compensation circuit with current-fed active power filters: **a** without feedback (with unity gain), **b** with feedback

applications, in which the amplitude and the harmonic content of the distortion power can vary randomly, this conventional solution becomes ineffective.

To suppress these harmonics, an active power harmonic compensator should be used, which is also called an active power filter (APF). The APF can be connected in series or in parallel with the supply network. The series APF is applicable to the harmonic compensation of a large capacity diode rectifier with a DC link capacitor. The shunt APF (called also: parallel APF or current-fed APF) permits compensation of the harmonics and asymmetries of the mains currents caused by nonlinear loads. The idea of a shunt APF (sometimes called parallel APF) was introduced by Gyugyi and Strycula in 1976 [23]. Problems with APFs are discussed in many publications, among others [2–5, 9]. The shunt APF compensates the harmonics and asymmetries of the line current, caused by nonlinear loads. Two versions of harmonic compensation circuits with shunt APF are depicted in Fig. 1.14, where $Z_M$ represents the mains power line impedance, $Z_L$ represents nonlinear load, $e_M(t)$ mains power line (source) voltage. Figure 1.14a shows an APF without feedback (with unity gain) and Fig. 1.14b presents an APF with feedback. Due to its better stability, in this book APFs without feedback are considered. (Fig. 1.14a). The shunt APF injects AC power current $i_C(t)$ to cancel the main AC harmonic content. The line current $i_M(t)$ is the result of summing the load current $i_L(t)$ and the compensating current $i_C(t)$

$$i_M(t) = i_L(t) - i_C(t). \tag{1.14}$$

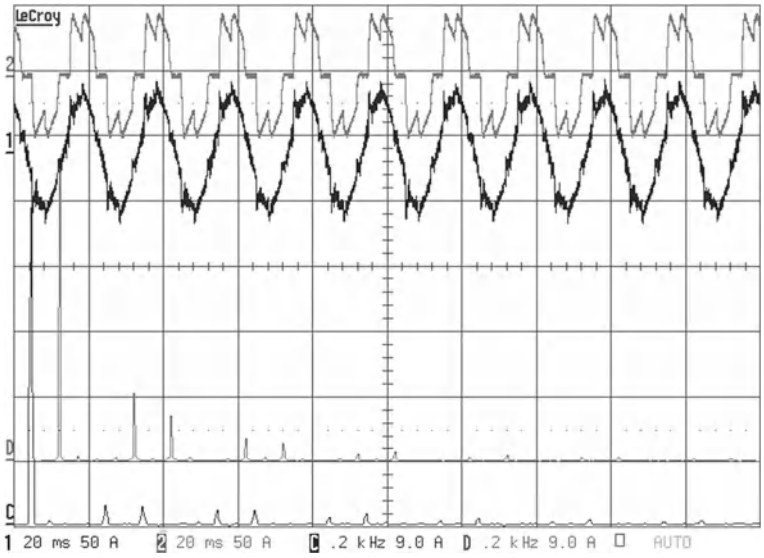



**Fig. 1.15** Experimental waveforms of shunt *APF*: load current $i_L$, line current $i_M$, and theirs spectra

Three-phase shunt APF is one of the best devices for compensating:

- harmonic,
- reactive power,
- asymmetries,
- voltage sag and swell–for shunt APF with additional DC energy bank.

Classical control algorithms of APFs are widely described in the literature, among which may be mentioned [1–5, 9]. Experimental waveforms of compensation circuit with shunt APF load current $i_L$, line current $i_M$, and their spectra are shown in Fig. 1.15. When the value of load current changes rapidly, as in current $i_L$ in Fig. 1.15, the APF transient response is too slow [43, 51] and the line current $i_s$ suffers from dynamic distortion. This distortion causes an increase of harmonic content in the line current, which is dependent on a time constant. In the APF shown in Fig. 1.15, the total harmonic distortion (*THD*) ratio is increased by more than 12 %. In Chap. 4 there are presented solutions for this problem, and there are considered the following APF control algorithm modifications:

- new control circuits with prediction circuit,
- control algorithm based on sliding discrete Fourier transform (SDFT) and sliding Goertzel (SGDFT), moving DFT,
- filter bank solution for selective harmonics compensation,
- synchronization circuits,
- improving the dynamic range for load current less than the APF rating current.

In this book, the APF with novel modified output multirate shunt APF suitable for unpredictable loads [44] is described too.

## 1.5 Digital Class-D Power Amplifiers

In the past, the typical issues associated with audio power amplifiers [16, 40, 41] were not reported in the literature of power electronics, and despite the many similarities, both worlds lived parallel but separated existences. However, the introduction of power class D amplifiers, initially analog and then digital, encroached on both these areas. A digital power amplifier class D is not much different from the power inverter or APF. The output power of audio power amplifiers is in the range up to tens of watts in the home, and in the range of kilowatts in the entertainment power amplifier. The only significant difference is the dynamic range of processed signals, which for class D amplifiers is more than 100 dB. In this respect, the author considers it appropriate to consider these problems.

Today, there is easy access to digital audio signal sources. Most audio signal sources are digital and have analog output solely because of conventional systems [8, 22, 32, 49, 50, 56]. However, it seems not unreasonable to supply a digital signal directly to the loudspeaker. A block diagram of a digital power audio amplifier is shown in Fig. 1.16 [42, 48]. The digital audio input signal S/PDIF or AES/EBU (in the CD player standard, i.e., $b = 16$ bit with sampling rate $f_s = 44.1$ kHz) is divided into two channels left and right by a digital audio interface receiver (DAI). The next stage is a digital pulse width modulator (DPWM). The input signal is converted into signal pulses controlling the output power pulse amplifier. The loudspeaker is connected to a pulse amplifier through $LC$ low-pass filter used for suppressing modulation harmonics. A typical audio band has a range of 20 Hz to 20 kHz. In a class D power amplifier, depicted in Fig. 1.17, the output pulse power amplifier works as a one-bit D/A converter [48]. In the classical analog PWM circuit, the conversion

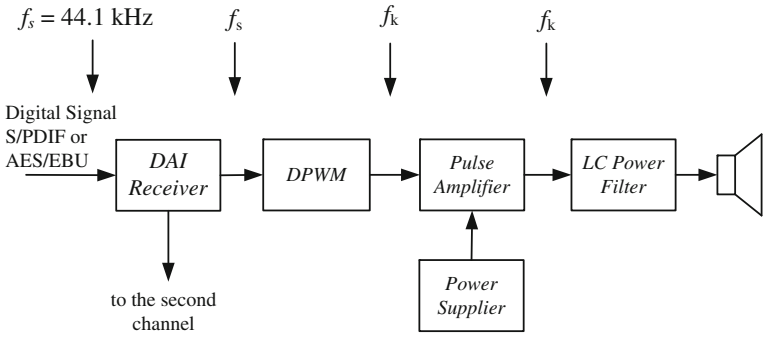



**Fig. 1.16** Block diagram of digital class D audio power amplifier

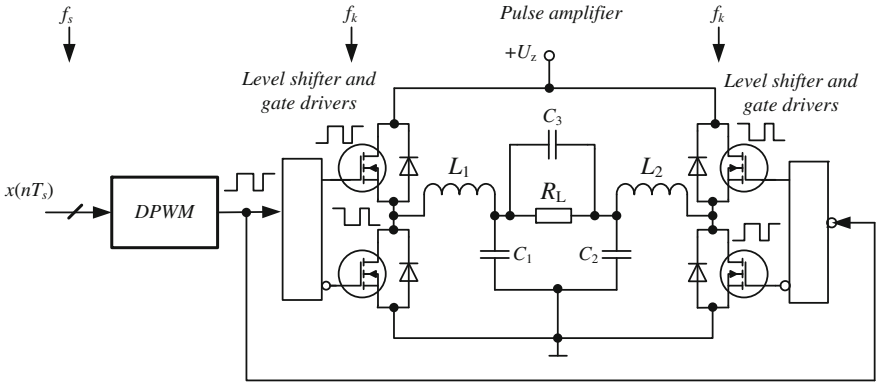



**Fig. 1.17** Simplified diagram of a pulse amplifier width DPWM modulator

resolution is theoretically unlimited and the spectrum of modulation components depends only on the modulation method. In practice, the conversion resolution is limited by component nonidealities [22, 39], while in DPWM resolution it is limited by the number of bits. In Chap. 5 consideration is given to the following digital class D amplifier problems:

- PWM for open-loop digital class D audio power amplifier, noise shaping technique,
- harmonics distortion in open-loop digital class D amplifier,
- amplifier load–loudspeaker model for low, mid and high frequencies,
- digital class D audio power amplifier with feedback from: supply voltage, output pulse, output signal (after output filter),
- digital click modulator,
- influence of output DC source impedance on open-loop digital class D amplifier,
- power supply voltage ripple.

## 1.6 Symbols of Variables

In this book, the symbols used for instantaneous values of variables that are a function of time are lowercase letters. The symbols $u$, $i$, and $p$ respectively denote voltage, current, and power. The following explicit notations are also used: $u(t) \equiv u, i(t) \equiv i$, $p(t) \equiv p$. For discrete instantaneous values of variables of time, notations used are: $u(nT_s) \equiv u(n)$, $i(nT_s) \equiv i(n)$, $p(nT_s) \equiv p(n)$, where: $n$—sample number, $T_s$ sampling period. Uppercase symbols $U$, $I$, and $P$ refer to their values computed from instantaneous values. Typically for DC current, uppercase denotes average value (avg) $U \equiv U_{avg}$, $I \equiv I_{avg}$, $P \equiv P_{avg}$ and for AC current, it denotes root-mean-square value (rms): $U \equiv U_{rms}$, $I \equiv I_{rms}$, $P \equiv P_{rms}$. Uppercase symbols are also used for: $Z$-transform of signal $U(z)$, Laplace transform of signal $U(s)$, and spectrum of signal $U(\mathrm{j}\omega)$.

## 1.7 What is in This Book

Chapter 2 covers the general problems of analog signal acquisition from power electronics, problems such as: sampling rate, number of bits, galvanic isolation, signal-to-noise ratio *SNR*, anti-aliasing filter, AC and DC current and voltage sensors, bandwidth of signal, signal range, jitter, and dither. Included is discussion about the influence of the above factors on signal dynamic range. This chapter discusses noise shaping circuits too. At the end of the chapter, some selected A/D converters suitable for power electronics control circuits are also presented. Special attention is paid to simultaneously sampling A/D converters.

Chapter 3 presents problems of digital signal filtration and separation methods useful for power electronics control circuits. Moreover, taken into consideration are digital filters and filter banks, and algorithms that are especially useful for active power filters and class D power amplifiers: sliding discrete Fourier transform (DFT), sliding Goertzel DFT and moving DFT, and linear phase IIR filters. There are also considered wave digital filters, especially useful for implementation using low resolution arithmetics. Chapter 3 also includes problems of using digital filter banks in power electronics control circuits. Some consideration is given to DFT-based filter banks and filter banks using lattice wave digital filters.

In Chapter 3, methods and circuits for signal changing sampling rate are also described, and interpolators and decimators useful for power electronics control circuits are considered. Special attention is paid to phase shifting by interpolator and decimator filters. Problems concerning the realization of the digital control algorithm are also described in Chap. 3. In addition, the following realizations of digital control circuits are considered: digital signal processors, microprocessors, microcontrollers, and programmable digital circuits. In this chapter these solutions are compared.

Chapter 4 describes control circuits for shunt active power filters. Special attention is paid to the improvement of APF dynamic range. There are considered methods for the reduction of APF dynamic distortion. There is a presentation of the active power filter with modern control circuits. For predictable loads a predictive control algorithm is used, and this allows for reduction of dynamic distortion. The usefulness of this method has been confirmed by experimental test results. However for unpredictable loads, a three-phase multirate APF with modified output inverter was designed. The simulation and the experimental test results of the considered APFs are presented and discussed.

A class D digital power audio amplifier is presented in Chap. 5. The chapter starts with discussion of the open-loop digital class D power audio amplifier. Special attention is paid to the amplifier supply voltage influence on output signal quality. Next, amplifiers with feedback are considered: with supply voltage feedback, with output pulse feedback, with output signal feedback. In this chapter, methods and circuits for changing signal sampling rate are described. Signal interpolators useful for class D amplifier power circuits are considered. Special attention is paid to the phase shift introduced by the signal interpolator circuits. There are also examined signal interpolators using a two-path digital filter and linear phase IIR filters. Special

attention is paid to the linear phase IIR filters using a lattice wave digital filter with extended dynamic range. In this chapter, there is examined the pulse width modulator (PWM) with noise shaping technique and the modulator using click modulation. Some simulation and experimental results are presented and discussed too.

Finally, Chapter 6 concludes the study of digital signal processing methods applied to power electronics control circuits.

## References


1. Akagi H, Kanazawa Y, Nabae A (1983) Generalized theory of instantaneous reactive power and its applications. Trans IEE Japan 103(7):483–490
2. Akagi H, Kanazawa Y, Nabae A (1984) Instantaneous reactive power compensators comprising switching devices without energy storage components. IEEE Trans Ind Appl 1A–20(3): 625–630
3. Akagi H (1996) New trends in active filters for power conditioning. IEEE Trans Ind Appl 32(6):1312–1322
4. Akagi H, Watanabe EH, Aredes M (2007) Instantaneous power theory and applications to power conditioning. Wiley, New Jersey
5. Aredes M (1996) Active power line conditioners. Ph.D. thesis, Technische Universitat Berlin.
6. Astrom KJ, Wittenmark B (1997) Computer-controlled system. Theory and design. Prentice Hall, Inc., New Jersey
7. Attia J O (1999) Electronics and circuit analysis using Matlab. CRC Press, Boca Raton
8. Baxandall PF (1959) Transistor sine-wave LC oscillators. In: ICTASD–IRE, pp 748–759
9. Benysek G, Pasko M (eds) (2012) Power theories for improved power quality. Springer-Verlag, London
10. Bollen MHJ, Gu IYH, Santoso S, McGranaghan MF, Crossley PA, Ribeiro MV, Ribeiro PF (2009) Bridging the gap between signal and power. IEEE Signal Process Mag 26(4):12–31
11. Bose BK (2006) Power electronics and motor drives: advances and trends. Academic Press, Amsterdam
12. Buso S, Mattavelli P (2006) Digital control in power electronics. Morgan & Claypool, San Rafael
13. Chen WK (ed) (1995) The circuits and filters handbook. IEEE Press, Boca Raton
14. Crochiere RE, Rabiner LR (1983) Multirate digital signal processing. Prentice Hall Inc., Englewood Cliffs
15. Dabrowski A (ed) (1997) Digital signal processing using digital signal processors. Wydawnictwo Politechniki Poznanskiej, Poznan (In Polish)
16. Duncan B (1996) High performance audio power amplifier for music performance and reproduction. Newnes, Oxford
17. Erickson RW, Maksimovic D (2004) Fundamentals of power electronics. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston
18. Fettweis A (1971) Digital filter structures related to classical filter networks. AEU, Band 25. Heft 2:79–89
19. Fettweis A (1986) Wave digital filters: theory and practice. Proc IEEE 74(2):270–327
20. Flige N (1994) Multirate digital signal processing. Wiley, New York
21. Gazsi L (1985) Explicit formulas for lattice wave digital filters. IEEE Trans Circuits Syst 32(1):68–88
22. Goldberg JM, Sandler MB (1994) New high accuracy pulse width modulation based digital-to-analogue convertor/power amplifier. IEE Proc Circuits Dev Syst 141(4):315–324
23. Gyugyi L, Strycula EC (1976) Active AC power filters. In: Proceedings of IEEE industry applications on annual meeting, pp 529–535

24. IEEE Standard for terminology and test methods for analog-to-digital converters (2011) IEEE Standard. IEEE, Technical report, pp 1241–2010
25. Kazimierkowski M, Malesani L (1998) Current control techniques for three-phase voltage-source converters: a survey. IEEE Trans Ind Electron 45(5):691–703
26. Kazmierkowski M P, Kishnan R, Blaabjerg F (2002) Control in power electronics. Academic Press, San Diego
27. Kester W (2004) Analog-digital conversion. Analog Devices Inc., London
28. Kester W (2005) The data conversion handbook. Newnes, New York
29. Lyons R (2004) Understanding digital signal processing, 2nd edn. Prentice Hall, New Jersey
30. Mitra S (2006) Digital signal processing: a computer-based approach. McGraw-Hill, New York
31. Mohan N, Undeland TM, Robbins WP (1995) Power electronics, converters, applications and design. Wiley, New Jersey
32. Nielsen K (1998) Audio power amplifier techniques with energy efficient power conversion. PhD thesis, Departament of Applied Electronics, Technical University of Denmark.
33. Oppenheim AV, Schafer RW (1999) Discrete-time signal processing. Prentice Hall, New Jersey
34. Orfanidis S J (2010) Introduction to signal processing. Prentice Hall Inc., Upper Saddle River
35. Oshana R (2005) DSP software development techniques for embedded and real-time systems. Newnes, Burlington
36. Owen M (2007) Practical signal processing. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge
37. Proakis JG, Manolakis DM (1996) Digital signal processing, principles, algorithms, and application. Prentice Hall Inc., Upper Saddle River
38. Rabiner LR, Gold B (1975) Theory and application of digital signal processing. Prentice Hall Inc., Englewood Cliffs
39. Santi S, Ballardini M, Rovatti R, Setti G (2005) The effects of digital implementation on ZePoC codec. In: Proceedings of the IEEE conference on ECCTD III:173–176
40. Self D (2002) Audio power amplifier design handbook. Newnes, Oxford
41. Slone G R (1999) High-power audio amplifier construction manual. McGraw-Hill, Toronto
42. Sozański K (1999) Design and research of digital filters banks using digital signal processors. Ph.D. thesis, Technical University of Poznan (in Polish)
43. Sozanski K (2004) Harmonic compensation using the sliding DFT algorithm. In: Proceedings of the 35rd annual IEEE power electronics specialists conference, PESC 2004, Aachen
44. Sozanski K (2007) The shunt active power filter with better dynamic performance. In: Proceedings of the Power Tech 2007 Conference, Lausanne
45. Sozanski K (2008) Improved shunt active power filters. Przeglad Elektrotechniczny (Electr Rev) 45(11):290–294
46. Sozanski K (2010) Digital realization of a click modulator for an audio power amplifier. Przeglad Elektrotechniczny (Electr Rev) 2010(2):353–357
47. Sozanski K (2012) Realization of a digital control algorithm. In: Benysek G, Pasko M (eds) Power theories for improved power quality. Springer-Verlag, London, pp 117–168
48. Sozanski K, Strzelecki R, Fedyczak Z (2001) Digital control circuit for class-D audio power amplifier. In: Proceedings of the IEEE 32nd annual power electronics specialists conference, PESC 2001, pp 1245–1250
49. Streitenberger M, Bresch H, Mathis W (2000) Theory and implementation of a new type of digital power amplifiers for audio applications. In: Proceedings of the IEEE conference on ICAS 2000, vol I, pp 511–514
50. Streitenberger M, Felgenhauer F, Bresch H, Mathis W (2002) Class-D audio amplifiers with separated baseband for low-power mobile applications. In: Proceedings of the IEEE Conference on ICCSC'02, pp 186–189
51. Strzelecki R, Fedyczak Z, Sozanski K, Rusinski J (2000) Active power filter EFA1, technical report. Instytut Elektrotechniki Przemyslowej, Politechnika Zielonogorska (in Polish)
52. Tantaratana S (1995) Design of IIR filters. In: Chen WK (ed) (1995) The circuits and filters handbook. IEEE Press, Boca Raton
53. Trzynadlowski A (2010) Introduction to modern power electronics. Wiley-Interscience, New Jersey

54. Vaidyanathan PP (1992) Multirate systems and filter banks. Prentice Hall Inc., Englewood Cliffs
55. Venezuela RA, Constantindes AG (1982) Digital signal processing schemes for efficient interpolation and decimation. IEE Proc Part G 130(6):225–235
56. Verona J (2001) Power digital-to-analog conversion using sigma-delta and pulse width modulations, ECE1371 Analog Electronics II, ECE University of Toronto (II):1–14
57. Wanhammar L (1999) DSP integrated circuit. Academic Press, New York
58. Williamson D (1991) Digital control and implementation. Prentice Hall Inc., Englewood Cliffs
59. Zielinski T (2005) Digital signal processing: from theory to application. Wydawnictwo Komunikacji i Lacznosci, Warsaw (in Polish)

# Chapter 2
# Analog Signals Conditioning and Discretization

## 2.1 Introduction

In control systems, it is necessary to observe the work of the controlled object. It is usually achieved in power electronics systems by measuring currents and voltages [7, 68]. This chapter is devoted to the problems of processing the analog current and voltage signals to convert them into digital form in power electronics systems. The problems discussed in this chapter, the author believes, are essential for the proper operation of control systems.

## 2.2 Analog Input

Typical circuits of analog inputs for measuring voltages and currents are shown in Fig. 2.1. In the voltage measurement circuit (Fig. 2.1a), voltage from the voltage divider ($R_1, R_2$) goes through the amplifier input and the anti-aliasing filter to the sample and hold circuit (SH) and analog to digital converter (A/D). Finally, digital signal $x_1(nT_s)$ corresponding to the measured voltage is sent to the processor control system. A similar process takes place in the current measurement circuit (Fig. 2.1b), where instead of a voltage divider there is applied a current transducer. Current measurement issues are discussed in Sect. 2.3.

### *2.2.1 Galvanic Isolation*

In low-power electronics systems, it is possible to use measurement systems electrically coupled with the control system. This is often the cheapest and best option, especially if accuracy is taken into account. However, usually in high-power systems galvanic isolation in measurements is required. It should be noted that the

K. Sozański, *Digital Signal Processing in Power Electronics Control Circuits*, Power Systems, DOI: 10.1007/978-1-4471-5267-5_2,

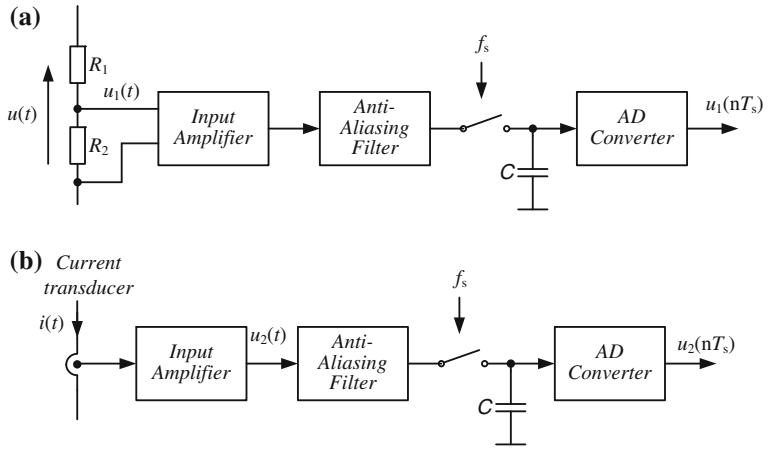



**Fig. 2.1** Analog input of A/D converter: **a** voltage measurement, **b** current measurement

application of galvanic isolation always deteriorates the quality of the signal, but it is often necessary. Reasons for the use of galvanic isolation include:

- break ground loop,
- high common voltage,
- safety reasons,
- increased noise immunity.

### *2.2.2 Common Mode Voltage*

Measurements in power electronics systems are very difficult due to a very high slew rate of common mode voltage. The common mode voltage swings of several hundred volts in tens of nanoseconds are common in modern switching inverters. The isolation amplifier should be designed to ignore very high common-mode transient slew rates (of at least 10–25 kV/μs).

Figure 2.2 depicts an isolation amplifier connected to one leg of a power inverter.

During the operation of the inverter, the potential of point A voltage changes from −500 to 500 V in a time equal to 100 ns. The slew rate of voltage change can be determined by the equation

$$SR = \frac{\mathrm{d}u(t)}{\mathrm{d}t} \approx \frac{\Delta U}{\Delta t}. \tag{2.1}$$

Capacitor $C_1$ represents the resultant common mode (parasitic) capacitance on the signal path, capacitor $C_2$ represents the resultant common mode (parasitic) capacitance in the DC/DC converter. The circuit of an isolation amplifier for a common mode (parasitic) current calculation can be simplified to the circuit shown in Fig. 2.3. Thus, the value of parasitic current can be calculated by equation

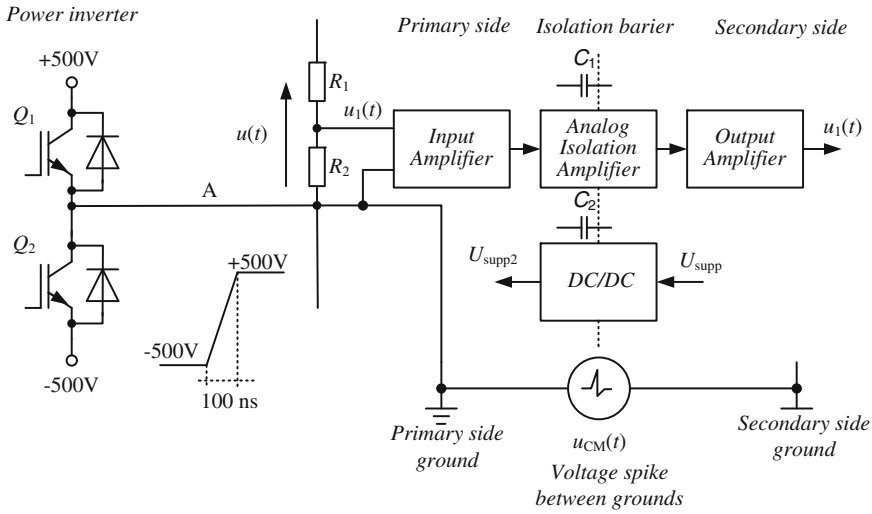
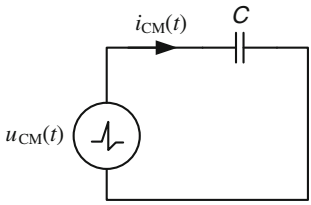



**Fig. 2.2** Common mode voltage

**Fig. 2.3** Simplified circuit for common mode current




$$i_{CM}(t) = C\frac{\mathrm{d}u_{CM}(t)}{\mathrm{d}t} \approx C\frac{\Delta U_{CM}}{\Delta t}, \tag{2.2}$$

where: $C$—resultant common mode (parasitic) capacitance.
As an example, for $SR = 10\,\mathrm{kV/\mu s}$ and $C = 10\,\mathrm{pF}$ common mode current the value is 10 mA. It is too a high value especially for sensitive electronics input circuits, such as optoelectronic devices. Therefore, in optoelectronic circuits transparent to light, an electric shields are used. For example, Avago's optoelectronic circuits (former Hewlett Packard) are an industry reference solution [8, 9]. Also, the printed circuit board and connections should be designed to minimize the parasitic capacity.

### *2.2.3 Isolation Amplifiers*

Topologies of isolation amplifiers are shown in Fig. 2.4. A topology with analog isolation amplifier is depicted in Fig. 2.4a.

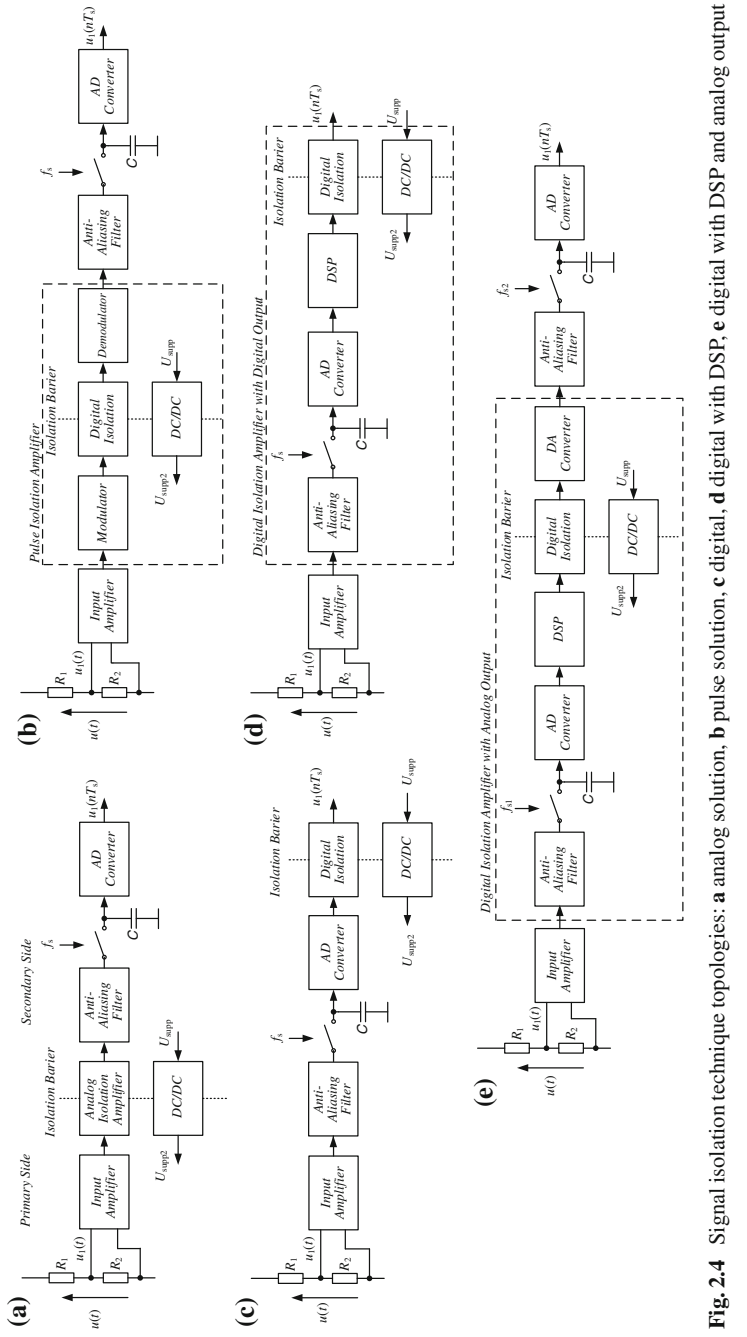



**Fig. 2.4** Signal isolation technique topologies: **a** analog solution, **b** pulse solution, **c** digital, **d** digital with DSP, **e** digital with DSP and analog output

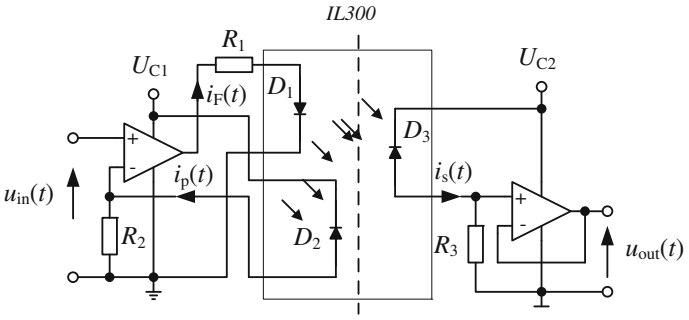



**Fig. 2.5** Isolation amplifier with feedback IL300

This solution uses optical separation or magnetic. In this solution, optical separation with linearization is often used. The advantage of such a system is the small signal delay. A typical example of this solution is the integrated circuit (IC), IL300 (Fig. 2.5) from Vishay [65]. The IC consists of an LED $D_1$ irradiating an isolated feedback photodiode and an output photodiode $D_3$ in a bifurcated arrangement. The feedback photodiode $D_2$ captures a part of the LEDs flux and generates a control signal $i_p(t)$ that can be used to servo the LED drive current $i_F(t)$ . This technique couples AC and DC signals and compensates for the LED's nonlinear, time, and temperature characteristics. The IC achieves the following parameters: 0.01 % servo linearity, wide bandwidth, >200 kHz, high gain stability, 0.005 %/ °C typically. The time and temperature stability of the coupler transfer function is insured by using matched PIN photodiodes $D_2$ and $D_3$ that accurately track the output flux of the LED. In alternative solutions the transformer is used, which allows the transfer of AC and DC signals by adding the Hall sensor. Primary circuits are supplied by an isolated DC/DC converter.

The most commonly used topology of the insulation circuit is shown in Fig. 2.4b. In this system, an isolation pulse amplifier is applied. It consists of an input modulator, pulse signal isolator, and demodulator. Such systems give high accuracy at a low price. In typical applications, the modulation frequency is in the range of 10 kHz–1 MHz. The use of modulation prolongs the typical impulse response time and causes the occurrence of modulation components in the output signal. In applications with transformer isolation, the transformer can also be used to transfer energy to supply the primary side circuits.

Examples of industrial integrated circuits include: isolation amplifier with capacitor isolation ISO124 [57, 59], classical isolation amplifier with transformer isolation AD215 [4], and isolation amplifier with optical isolation barrier HCPL-7800 [9].

An interesting solution has been applied in the ISO121, through the use of precision isolation amplifiers with duty cycle modulation–demodulation technique. The signal is transmitted digitally across a 2 × 1pF differential capacitive barrier. Simplified block diagram of ISO121 is shown in Fig. 2.6. The IC achieves the following parameters: 0.01 % max nonlinearity, bandwidth, 6 kHz, high gain stability

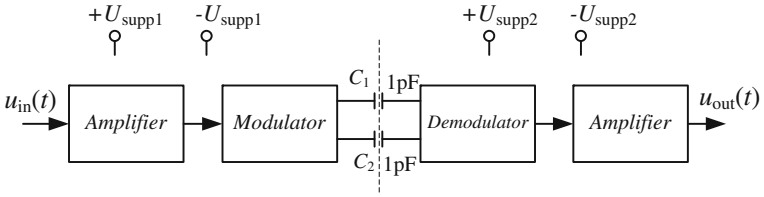



**Fig. 2.6** Simplified block diagram of ISO121

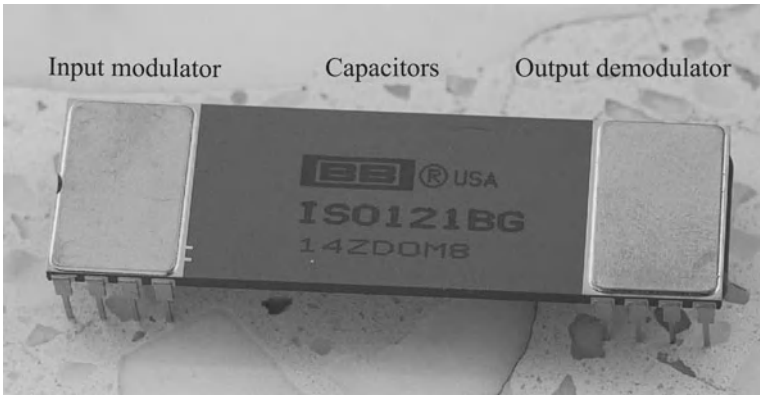



**Fig. 2.7** Precision isolation amplifier with capacitor barrier isolation

and 150 µV %/ °C max offset voltage drift. The IC, shown in Fig. 2.7, is built into a ceramic barrier, where modulator and demodulator are placed at the ends and two 1 pF matched barrier capacitors are placed in the middle. This IC has excellent reliability. In the next solution, the A/D converter was moved to the primary side. Hence, signal to the secondary side is transmitted in digital form (Fig. 2.4c). Such a solution allows the elimination of errors introduced by the insulation system. But in the case of multi-channel systems, it is difficult to synchronize the sampling moments. Optically isolated sigma delta modulator HCPL-7860 [8] with digital output is the simplest example of such a solution.

In the next circuit (Fig. 2.4d), there is added a DSP to allow local measurement error correction and additional algorithms. In another topology (Fig. 2.4e), a digital isolation transducer is used. In this design, the input signal is converted into digital form and in this form it is sent to the secondary side, then it is converted into analog form. In this configuration, as in the previous one, it is possible to correct an error. The disadvantages of this system are the high price and the double signal conversion causing signal delay. Comparison and summary of the galvanic isolation techniques are presented in Table 2.1.

**Table 2.1** Comparison of isolation amplifiers

| Signal isolation technique | Accuracy | Delay | Power consumption | Relative cost | Typical signal ranges |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Analog, optoelectronic isolation | 0.5–5 %, high nonlinearity and temperature drift | Low | Low | Low | DC to 200 kHz |
| Analog with transformer isolation | 0.5–5 % | Low | Low | Low | AC, 50–200 kHz |
| Pulse, optoelectronic isolation | 0.01–0.5 % | Moderate | Low | Low | DC to 100 kHz, output with signal containing residuals of the modulation component |
| Pulse with transformer isolation | 0.01–0.5 % | Moderate | Moderate | Low | DC to 300 kHz, output with signal containing residuals of the modulation component |
| Pulse with capacitive isolation | 0.01–0.5 % | Moderate | Moderate | Low | DC to 300 kHz, output with signal containing residuals of the modulation component |
| With A/D converter on primary side | Depending on the A/D converter, possible error correction | Low | Moderate-High | Moderate | DC to 100 kHz, difficult realization of simultaneous sampling |
| With A/D converter and DSP on primary side | Depending on the A/D converter | Moderate | High | High | DC to 100 kHz, difficult realization of simultaneous sampling |
| Digital transducer on primary side with analog output | Depending on the A/D and D/A converters, possible error correction | High | High | High | DC to 50 kHz, double signal conversion, difficult realization of simultaneous sampling |

## 2.3 Current Measurements

Current sensors are often used to provide essential information to power electronic control systems. Current transducers convert measured current into a proportional AC or DC voltage or milliamp signal. These devices should have extremely low insertion impedance. There are also current transducers with digital output and in the author's opinion they will in future play an increasing role in current measurement systems. There are several techniques that are typically used for measuring currents: sense resistor (resistive shunt), current transformer, current transformer with Hall effect sensor, and current transformer with magnetic modulation and air coil.

### *2.3.1 A Resistive Shunt*

A sense resistor is inserted in series with the load. Through Ohm's law, $U = IR$, we know the voltage drop across the resistor is proportional to the current. This system is very simple and provides very accurate measurements, given that the resistance value has a tight tolerance. To maintain low dissipation power voltage across sense resistors, should be very low, therefore they also require a high-quality amplifier, such as instrumentation amplifiers, to generate an exact signal. This kind of measurement does not provide galvanic isolation, so in some applications an isolation amplifier needs to be used. For larger currents, sense resistors with high performance thermal packages have been used. In the last few years, there has been extensive development of portable battery-powered electronic devices, and as a result a high demand for current measurement systems has been created. It is a typical way of measuring battery currents. Thus, there has arisen a great demand for simple and inexpensive measurement systems. Figure 2.8 shows a measurement system with an amplifier with a unique high common mode ratio to allow for work above the positive supply voltage ($U_{supp}$) and under the negative supply voltage of amplifier. Common mode voltage of such amplifiers achieves −20–80 V. A typical voltage value $U_2$ is several hundred millivolts. Many manufacturers produce such circuits, for example: integrated circuit INA270 from Taxas Instruments [61], AD8210 from Analog Devices [5] etc. Due to the voltage range, this kind of amplifier is also widely used in automotive applications.

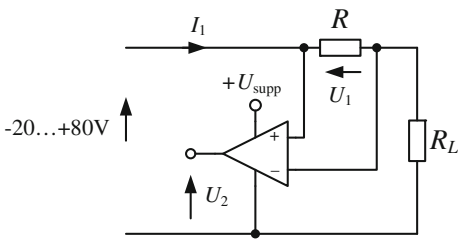



**Fig. 2.8** Current measurement with high common mode amplifier

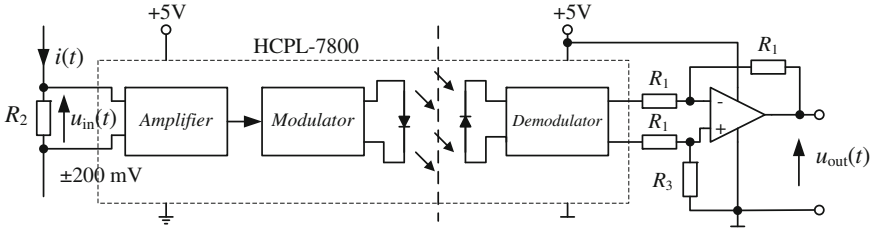



**Fig. 2.9** Simplified diagram of HCPL-7800 current measurement circuit

For current sensing in power electronics circuits, the HCPL-7800 family isolation amplifier was designed [9]. The HCPL-7800 utilizes delta sigma modulator converter technology, chopper stabilized amplifiers, and a fully differential circuit topology. Figure 2.9 depicts a simplified diagram of a current measurement circuit. In a typical implementation, currents flow through an external resistor and the resulting analog voltage drop is sensed by the HCPL-7800. The HCPL-7800 input voltage range is equal to ±200 mV. A differential output voltage is created on the other side of the HCPL-7800 optical isolation barrier. This differential output voltage is proportional to the input current and can be converted into a single-ended signal by using an operational amplifier as shown in Fig. 2.9. The HCPL-7800 was designed to ignore very high common-mode transient slew rates (of at least 10 kV/μs).

### *2.3.2 Current Transformers*

Current transformers are relatively simple and passive (self-powered) devices, and do not require driving circuitry to operate. They are two-wire components with voltage or current output. The primary current (AC) will generate a magnetic field. The field is concentrated by magnetic core. The secondary coil is coupled with the primary coil by magnetic field. This is the principle that governs all transformers. Current transformers are designed to measure AC current and typically operate between 20 and 100 Hz, although some units will work in the kilohertz range. Inductive current transducers are available in both solid-core and split-core configurations. For an ideal transformer, the secondary current magnitude is proportional to ratio of the primary number of turns $z_p$ (typically from one to several) to secondary number of turns $z_s$ (typically thousands); thus, the secondary current $I_s$ for an ideal transformer can be calculated by the equation

$$I_s = \frac{z_p}{z_s} I_p. \tag{2.3}$$

The current transformer is shown in Fig. 2.10. The secondary current is then sensed through a sense resistor $R_b$ to convert the output into a voltage $U_2$.

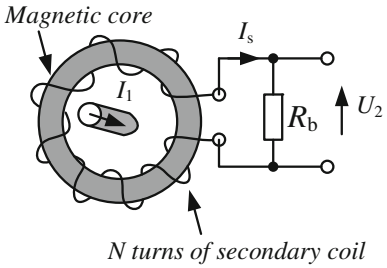



**Fig. 2.10** Current transformer

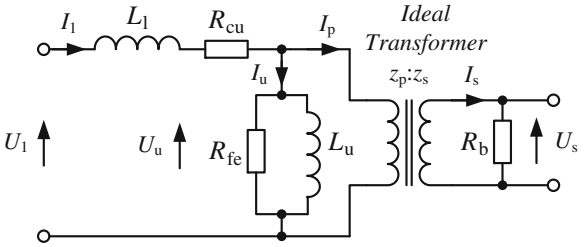



**Fig. 2.11** Simplified equivalent circuit of current transformer

For a real transformer this equation is more complicated. Figure 2.11 shows a simplified version of a current transformer low-frequency circuit. This model is called the high side equivalent circuit model, because all parameters have been moved to the primary side of the ideal transformer. In this circuit: $L_l$—resultant windings leakage inductance, $R_{cu}$—resultant windings resistance, $R_{fe}$—resistance which represents power losses in transformer core (mainly due to hysteresis), $L_u$—main transformer inductance, magnetizing inductance.

Hence, for this transformer model, secondary current should be calculated by the equation

$$I_s = \frac{z_p}{z_s}(I_1 - I_u). \tag{2.4}$$

Magnetizing current $i_u$ will give an error in the current transformation of the secondary side. In order to reduce the error, voltage at the output should be very small. Another way to decrease magnetizing current is by increasing the core size. Figure 2.12 shows a circuit which minimizes current transformer output voltage and hence reduces current error.

The presented current transformer model has sufficient accuracy only for low frequency use, while for high frequency use it has to be more complicated for example in [12]. Current transformers are one of the simplest and relatively cheap solutions for current measurements but they have one major disadvantage in that they cannot transform DC. Therefore, in applications that require measurements of the DC current, other techniques should be used.

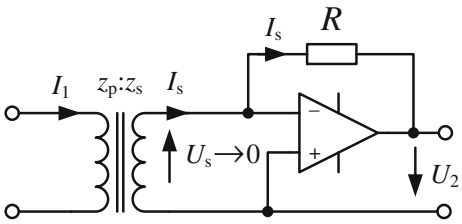



**Fig. 2.12** Current converter with minimized current transformer output voltage

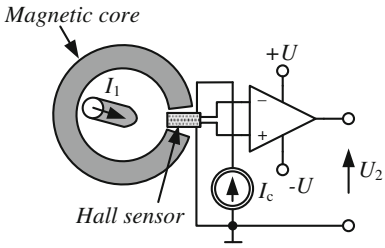



**Fig. 2.13** Open loop Hall effect current sensor

### *2.3.3 Transformer with Hall Sensor*

A simplified diagram of an open loop Hall effect current sensor is depicted in Fig. 2.13. The sensor measures DC, AC, and complex current waveforms while providing galvanic isolation. The Hall effect current sensor consists of three basic components: the magnetic core, the Hall effect sensor, and signal conditioning circuitry. The Hall sensor is located in the magnetic core gap. The magnetic flux created by the primary current $I_1$ is concentrated in a magnetic circuit and measured in the air gap using a Hall sensor.

$$U_H = \frac{k}{d} I_C B + U_{off}. \tag{2.5}$$

where: $k$—the Hall constant of the conducting material, $d$—the thickness of the sensor, $I_C$—constant current, $B$—magnetic flux density, and $U_{off}$ is the offset voltage of the Hall generator in the absence of an external field. Such an arrangement is referred to as a Hall generator and the product $k/dI_C$ is generally described as the Hall generator sensitivity. The output signal from the Hall device is then conditioned to provide an exact representation of the primary current at the output. The relation between primary current and the magnetic flux density, B, is nonlinear. Therefore, a magnetic core in the linear region is used . Within the linear region of the hysteresis loop of the material used for the magnetic circuit, the magnetic flux density, B, is proportional to the primary current, $I_1$, and the Hall voltage, $U_H$, is proportional to the flux density. Therefore, the output of the Hall generator is proportional to the primary current, plus the Hall offset voltage, $U_{off}$. The advantages of open loop

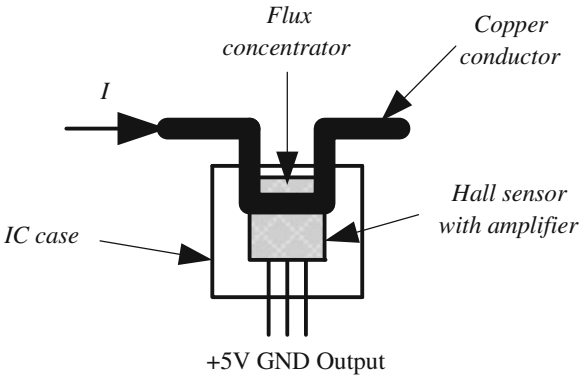



**Fig. 2.14** IC current sensor from Allegro MicroSystems

transducers include: low cost, small size, low weight, low power consumption, and very low insertion power losses. The accuracy is limited by the combination of:

- DC offset at zero current (hall generator, electronics, or remanent magnetization (remanence) of core ferromagnetic material)
- gain error (current source, hall generator, and core gap)
- linearity (core material, hall generator, and electronics)
- big influence of temperature changes
- output noise
- bandwidth limitation (attenuation, phase shift, and current frequency).

This type of sensor is widely used, and among the producers are: LEM Components, ABB, Honeywell, Allegro Microsystems, ChenYoung, etc. Especially noteworthy is Allegro's sensor, which is constructed in the form of a monolithic integrated circuit with flux concentrator [2, 3, 19]. The idea of these sensors is depicted in Fig. 2.14.

An example is the fully integrated, Hall effect-based linear current sensor IC ACS752SCA-100 from Allegro MicroSystems [2], with $3\,\mathrm{kV_{RMS}}$ voltage isolation and a low-resistance current conductor ($130\,\mu\Omega$) and single $+5\,\mathrm{V}$ supply on the secondary side. The current sensor is shown in Fig. 2.15, on the right side are two primary current terminals. The sensor has a primary sensed current range from $-100$ to $+100\,\mathrm{A}$, this current is converted into the output voltage signal with a sensitivity of $20\,\mathrm{mV/A}$.

To reduce magnetic core and Hall sensor errors a closed loop topology was introduced. Simplified diagram of a closed loop Hall effect current sensor is depicted in Fig. 2.16. In a closed loop topology, the Hall sensor drives the output amplifier current to a secondary coil, which will generate a magnetic flux to cancel the primary current magnetic flux. So the resultant flux should be equal to zero. The secondary current, which is proportional to the primary current by the secondary coil ratio, can then be measured as voltage across a sense resistor. By keeping the resultant flux in the core at zero, the errors associated with offset drift, sensitivity drift, and saturation

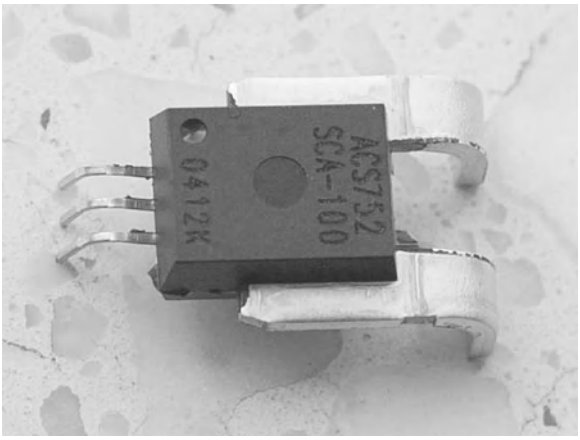



**Fig. 2.15** IC current sensor ACS752SCA-100

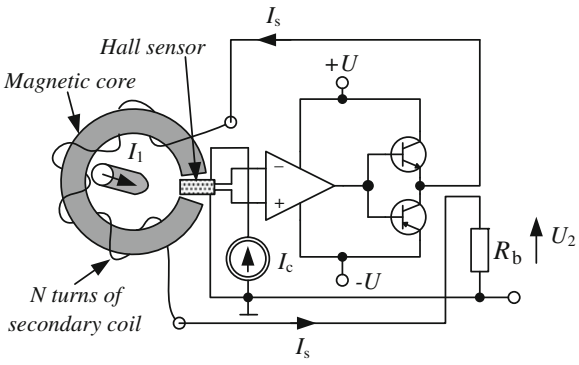



**Fig. 2.16** Closed loop Hall effect current sensor

of the magnetic core will also be significantly decreased. Closed loop Hall effect current sensors also provide the shortest response times. However, in such devices, the nominal secondary coil current from several milliamps to hundreds of milliamps, thus power consumption is much higher in closed loop Hall sensor devices than in open loop topologies. In the closed loop configuration, the maximum current magnitude is limited by a finite amount of compensation current in the device. The closed loop topology is widely used, for example Lem, ABB, and this type of transducer is widespread in industrial applications, with many manufacturers now supplying it. Good examples are the above-mentioned typical industrial current transducers: LA 55-P [33] from LEM Components, ESM1000 from ABB [1], CSNB121 from Honeywell [27], CYHCS-SH from ChenYoung [18], etc. Figure 2.17 shows closed loop Hall effect current sensors LA 205 [34] mounted on the current rail in APF EFA1 [56].

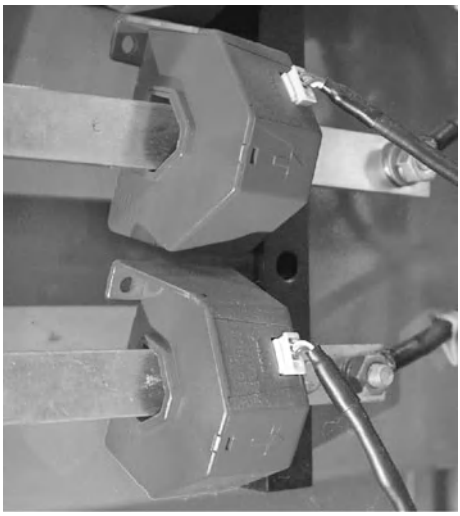


**Fig. 2.17** Closed loop Hall current sensors in APF

### *2.3.4 Current Transformer with Magnetic Modulation*

Certain power electronics applications such as: medical equipment, metering, or accessories for measuring equipment, require a precision current transducer. In order to eliminate the shortcomings associated with Hall effect, sensors are also developed with magnetic modulation topologies allowing the measurement of a DC component. These topologies have one, two, or three magnetic cores; for example, the high precision current transducer ITB 300-S from LEM Components [50]. Features of current transformers with magnetic modulation include:

- high global accuracy,
- high linearity $<1$ ppm,
- high temperature stability,
- low cross-over distortion,
- wide frequency range,
- low noise on the output signal.

### *2.3.5 Current Transducer with Air Coil*

A Rogowski coil allows the measurement of alternating current (AC). The principle of Rogowski coil operation is well described by Ray and Davis in [46–48]. The Rogowski coil measurement circuit is depicted in Fig. 2.18. It consists of a helical coil of wire wrapped around a straight conductor whose current $i(t)$ is to be measured, since the voltage that is induced in the coil is proportional to the rate of change (derivative) of current in the straight conductor. The coil output signal is connected

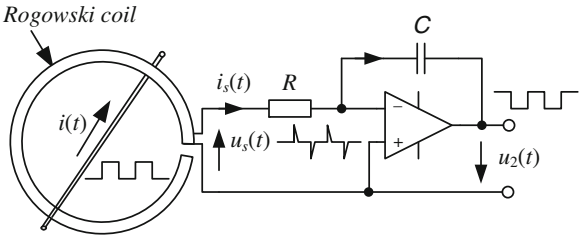



**Fig. 2.18** Rogowski coil measurement circuit

to an integrator circuit, so that the achieved output signal that is proportional to the current. The voltage induced in the coil is given by the equation

$$u_s(t) = \mu_0 NM \frac{\mathrm{d}i(t)}{\mathrm{d}t} = S \frac{\mathrm{d}i(t)}{\mathrm{d}t}, \tag{2.6}$$

where: $\mu_0$—permeability of free space, $N$—turns/meter, $M$—cross-sectional area [$m^2$], $S$—coil sensitivity [Vs/A]. In next the stage the coil voltage is integrated by the integrator, so that transducer output voltage is

$$u_2(t) = -\frac{1}{RC} \int u_s(t)\mathrm{d}t = -S_T i(t), \tag{2.7}$$

where: $S_T$—transducer sensitivity [V/A]. Rogowski coil features are:

- no magnetic saturation,
- high overload capacity,
- good linearity,
- light weight,
- low thermal losses,
- AC measurement with wide dynamic range.

Figure 2.19 shows Rogowski coil and integrator in the laboratory.

The free end is normally inserted into a socket adjacent to the cable connection but can be unplugged to enable the coil to be looped around the conductor or device carrying the current to be measured.

Application of an induction coil without magnetic core allows for the elimination of errors associated with nonlinear magnetic material. But the lack of a magnetic field concentrator causes the measuring system to be very sensitive to external interference fields. The use of two inductive coils allows the partial elimination of this phenomenon [32]. The induced voltages from coils are then integrated in order to obtain both amplitude and phase information for the measured current. In this solution, in comparison to the Rogowski coil, accuracy is independent of the position of the cable in the aperture and of external fields.


**Fig. 2.19** Rogowski coil in the laboratory

### *2.3.6 Comparison of Current Sensing Techniques*

Table 2.2 presents the basic features of current transducers discussed in this chapter. The discussed transducers have analog outputs, but it should be noted that currently the development of transducers with digital output is underway. They can be equipped with their own processors, allowing for compensation of some errors. Parallel to an industrial solution of current sensing techniques Hartman et al. [25] designed an alternative which consists of a wideband current transformer and a demagnetizing circuit. The sensor concept is capable of measuring AC currents with DC offset, having periodic zero crossings, as given in power-factor-corrected (PFC) circuits.

## 2.4 Total Harmonic Distortion

Total harmonic distortion (*THD*) ratio is a form of nonlinear distortion in circuits in which harmonics (signals whose frequency is an integer multiple of the input signal) are generated. A wide class of nonlinear circuits can be described by the equation

$$y(t) = a_1 x(t) + a_2 x(t)^2 + a_3 x(t)^3 + \cdots + a_k x(t)^k. \tag{2.8}$$

In linear circuits only $a_1$ coefficient is nonzero. For example for a nonlinear circuit described by equation $y(t) = x(t) - 0.2x(t)^3 + 0.15x(t)^5 + 0.11x(t)^7 - 0.05x(t)^9$

**Table 2.2** Comparison of current sensing techniques

| Current-sensing technique | Galvanic isolation | Accuracy | Power dissipation | Relative cost | Typical current ranges |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Transformer | Yes | 0.1–5 % | Low-Moderate | Low | Up to 15 kA, AC |
| Sensing resistor | None | 0.01–5 % mainly depends on resistor tolerance | Moderate-High | Low | Up to 500 A, DC-100 kHz |
| Sensing resistor with high common mode amplifier | None | 0.01 − 5 % | Moderate-High | Low | Up to 200 A, DC-100 kHz, common voltage from −20 V to 100 V |
| Open loop Hall effect sensor | Yes | 5–10 % | Low | Low | Up to 15 kA, DC-50 kHz |
| Closed loop Hall effect sensor | Yes | 1–5 % | Moderate-High | Moderate-High | Up to 15 kA, DC-200 kHz |
| Transformer with magnetic modulation | Yes | 0.001–0.5 % | High | High | Up to 700 A, DC-500 kHz |
| Rogowski coil—one air coil | Yes | 1–2 % | Low | Low | Up to 10 kA, 10 Hz–100 kHz |
| Two air coils | Yes | 0.5–1 % | Low | Low | Up to 10 kA, 10 Hz–100 kHz |

the response for DC input signal in range −1 to 1 is shown in Fig. 2.20. The response for unity amplitude sinusoidal signal, $f = 100$ Hz, is depicted in Fig. 2.21. The waveforms of input and output signal are presented in Fig. 2.21a. The output signal distortion causes generation of signal harmonics. The spectrum of the output signal is shown in Fig. 2.21b. Listing of Matlab program for the nonlinear circuit simulation:

```
clear all; close all;
 roz_fon = 18; grub_lin = 2;
 N = 2^12; % number of samples
 fs = 12800; % sampling frequency
 f1 = 50; f_1k = round(f1/(fs/N)) * fs/N; % line frequency
 A1 = 1;
 t = (0 : N− 1)/fs; % time vector
 a = [1 0 −0.2 0 0.15 0 −0.11 0 −0.05]; % coefficients
 %%−−−−− Response for DC−−−−−
 x = ((0 : N− 1)/ N) * 2− 1; % input signal −1...1
 y = a(1) * x + a(2) * x.^2 + a(3) * x.^3 + a(4) * x.^4 + a(5) * x.^5
     + ... + a(6) * x.^6 + a(7) * x.^7 + a(8) * x.^8 + a(9) * x.^9;
 plot (x,y,'k',x,x,'k','LineWidth',grub_lin);
 set (gca,'FontSize',[roz_fon],'FontWeight','d'),
```

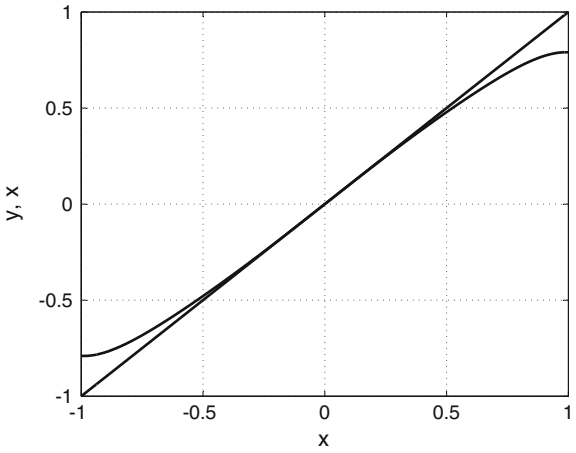



**Fig. 2.20** The static characteristics of nonlinear circuit, response for input signal −1 to 1

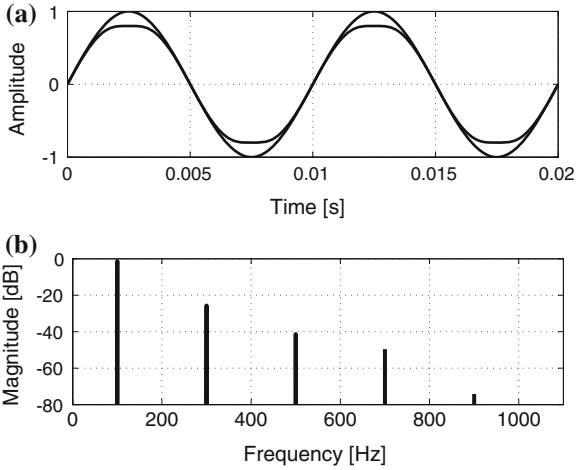



**Fig. 2.21** The nonlinear circuit response for sinusoidal signal, $f = 100\,\text{Hz}$, **a** input and output signal waveforms, **b** spectrum of the output signal

```
xlabel ('x'); ylabel ('y, x'); grid on;
%%----- Response for sinusoidal signal 100 Hz -----
x = A1 * sin(2 * pi * f_1k * t); % input sinusoidal signal
y = a(1) * x + a(2) * x.^2 + a(3) * x.^3 + a(4) * x.^4 + a(5) * x.^5
    + ... + a(6) * x.^6 + a(7) * x.^7 + a(8) * x.^8 + a(9) * x.^9;
% spectrum
w_y = fft(y)/N * 2; w_y_dB = 20 * log10(abs(w_y) + eps);
f = (0 : N-1) * fs/N;
subplot (211);
```

```
plot (t,x,'k',t,y,'k','LineWidth',grub_lin); grid on;
set (gca,'FontSize',[roz_fon],'FontWeight','n'),
set (gca,'Xlim',[0 2/f_1k]); xlabel ('Time [s]');
ylabel ('Amplitude'); title ('a)');
subplot (212);
plot (f,w_y_dB,'k','LineWidth',grub_lin + 1); grid on;
set (gca,'Ylim',[-80 0]);set (gca,'Xlim',[0 11 * f_1k]);
set (gca,'FontSize',[roz_fon],'FontWeight','n'),
xlabel ('Frequency [Hz]'); ylabel ('Magnitude [dB]');
title ('b)');
```

*THD* ratio is measured in percents or in decibels (dB), and harmonic distortion is calculated as the ratio of the level of the harmonic to the level of the original frequency

$$THD = \frac{\sqrt{\sum_{k=2}^{N} U_k^2}}{U_1}. \tag{2.9}$$

where: $U_1$—amplitude of first (or fundamental) harmonic, $U_k$—amplitude of $k$-th harmonic, and expressed in dB

$$THD_{\text{dB}} = 20\log\frac{\sqrt{\sum_{k=2}^{N} U_k^2}}{U_1}. \tag{2.10}$$

In power electronics systems other distortion factors [11, 26] are also used, one of which is weighted harmonic distortion ratio in which the importance of harmonics decreases as the frequency increases

$$WTHD = \frac{\sqrt{\sum_{k=2}^{K}\left(\frac{U_k}{k}\right)^2}}{U_1} \tag{2.11}$$

## 2.5 Analog Signal Sampling Rate

Sampling is an essential part of signal processing. It enables A/D transformation of the analog signal to occur. However useful this process is, some precautions need to be taken to ensure that the output signal is not changed significantly. Therefore, while sampling the analog signal at discrete intervals, $T_s = 1/f_s$, the signal sampling frequency $f_s$ (also called signal sampling speed) must be carefully chosen to ensure an accurate representation of the original analog signal. It is evident that the more

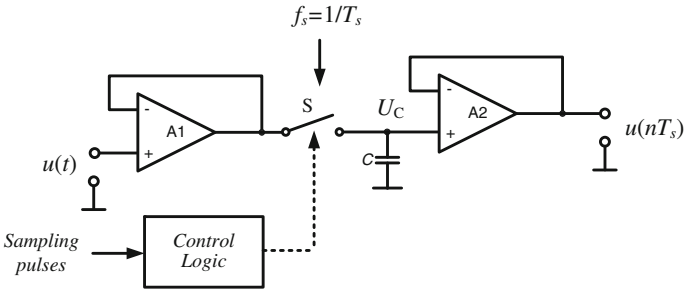



**Fig. 2.22** A Sampling circuit

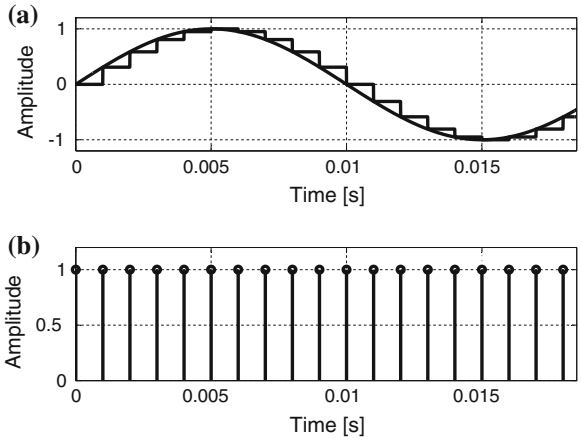



**Fig. 2.23** Illustration of analog sinusoidal signal sampling process: **a** input signal and sampled signal, **b** sampling pulses

samples are taken (faster signal sampling rates), the more accurate the digital representation is. Hence if fewer samples are taken (lower sampling rates), a point is reached where critical information about the signal is actually lost. The discussion in this chapter focuses on periodic and uniform sampling. An example of a sample and hold circuit (SH) (also called sampling circuit or track and hold (TH) circuit) is shown in Fig. 2.22 and an illustration of an analog sinusoidal signal sampling process is presented in Fig. 2.23.

The history of the mathematical background of sampling theory goes back to the 1920s, when it was founded by Nyquist [39, 40] of Bell Telephone Laboratories. This original work was shortly supplemented by Hartley [24] and Whittaker. These papers formed the basis for the pulse code modulation (PCM) work and were followed in 1948 by Claude Shannon who wrote a paper on communication theory [52]. The sampling theory was discovered independently by Kotielnikov from the Soviet Union in 1933 [31]. Simply stated, the sampling theory criteria require that the sampling frequency must be at least twice the highest frequency contained in the analog

signal; otherwise the information about the analog signal will be lost. If the sampling frequency is less than twice the maximum analog signal frequency, a phenomenon known as aliasing will occur. It is a source of spurious signals occurring within the anti-aliasing filter as a result of the high signal bandwidth available in today's ADCs. The main purpose of using an anti-aliasing filter is to limit the input signal's bandwidth to eliminate high-frequency components. Therefore, it is required that in data sampling systems, the input signal's spectrum frequency must not exceed one-half of the sample clock frequency. An ideal anti-aliasing filter would pass all signals within the band of interest and block all signals from outside of that band. It is the quality of the anti-aliasing filter which is the major factor in the signal-to-noise ratio (*SNR*). The *SNR* typically expressed in decibel, can be determined by the Eq. 1.12.

When the half sampling frequency $f_s/2$ is only slightly higher than $f_b$ for signal band $0-f_b$ (as happens in the classic system), the anti-aliasing has to have very sharp amplitude characteristics and a high dumping factor in the stopband. This results in the anti-aliasing filter being very complicated and expensive.

Currently, the development of integrated circuit (IC) manufacturing technology has led to the fact that fast digital circuits are freely available and cheap. Therefore, in modern systems the value of the sampling rate $f_s$ can be much higher than $f_b$ (this is called oversampling), so the requirements for the anti-aliasing filter are much lower. The spectra of a sampling signal process with aliasing occurrence are shown in Fig. 2.24.

The background of digital signal processing useful for A/D and D/A conversion is described by Oppenheim and Schafer [41], Proakis and Manolakis [44], Lyons [35], Rabiner and Gold [45], Zolzer [66, 67], and many others. Some interesting technical problems with A/D conversion are described in Data Translation [21, 22] and Analog Devices [28–30] (by Kester) technical reports and books. Other problems about signal oversampling and signal sampling rate changes are discussed in Chap. 3.

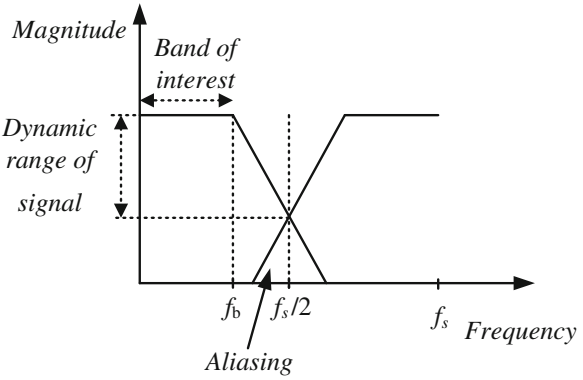



**Fig. 2.24** Impact of aliasing on the signal dynamics

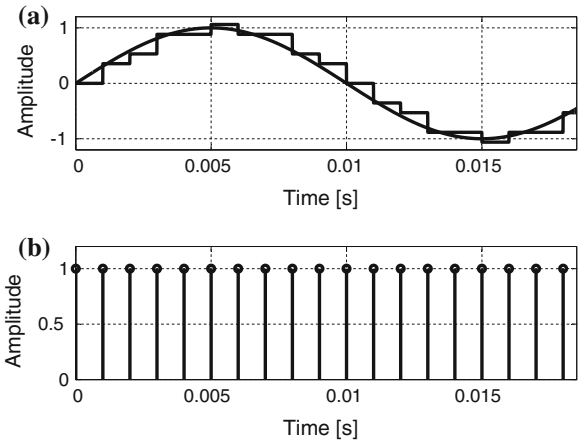



**Fig. 2.25** Analog sinusoidal signal sampling and quantization process: **a** input signal and sampled signal, **b** sampling pulses

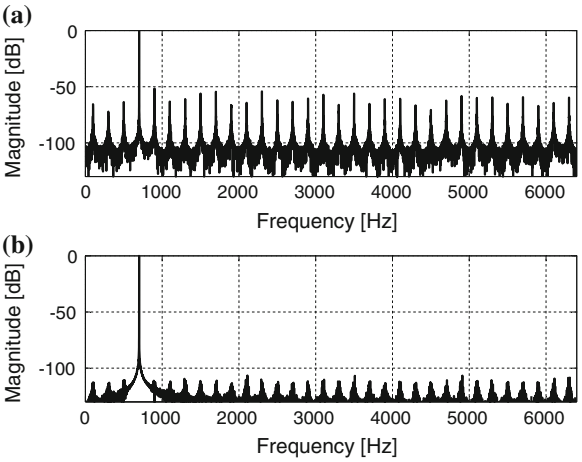



**Fig. 2.26** Spectra of quantized analog sinusoidal signals: **a** for $b = 7$ bit, **b** for $b = 14$ bit

## 2.6 Signal Quantization

In the process of A/D conversion, the amplitude resolution of digital signal is limited to digital representation. In most cases the $b$-bit fixed-point system is used, which eliminates the excess of digits by discarding them or by rounding off the number. An illustration of the sampling and quantization process of a sinusoidal analog signal is shown in Fig. 2.25.

In Fig. 2.26, spectra of quantized analog sinusoidal signals are shown, for $f = 700$ Hz, $f_s = 12800$ Hz, $b = 7$ bit (Fig. 2.26a) and $b = 7$ bit (Fig. 2.26b).

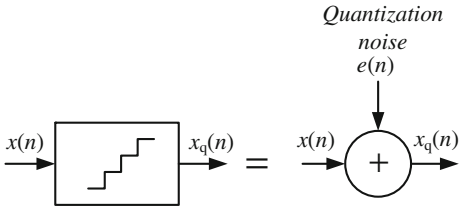



**Fig. 2.27** The additive linear model of quantization process

The digital signal is a sequence of numbers in which each number is represented by a finite number of digits

$$x(n) \longleftrightarrow x(nT_s), \quad -\infty < n < \infty, \tag{2.12}$$

where: $n$—number of samples, $x(n)$ discrete signal obtained by sampling of analog signal $x(t)$ every $T_s$ period of time. The amplitude of the signal corresponding to the least significant bit (LSB) is determined by the equation

$$\Delta = \frac{A_p}{2^{b-1}}, \tag{2.13}$$

where: $A_p$—maximum amplitude of converted signal. The $\Delta$ is also called quantization step size and resolution. The additive linear model of quantization process is shown in Fig. 2.27.

The quantization error is defined by equation

$$e_q(n) = x_q(n) - x(n), \tag{2.14}$$

$e_q(n)$ in the rounding quantization process is limited to the range of $-\Delta/2$ to $\Delta/2$, that is

$$-\frac{\Delta}{2} \leq e_q(n) \leq = \frac{\Delta}{2}, \tag{2.15}$$

Signal quantization adds noise to the signal, which deteriorates the signal dynamic range. For a sinusoidal signal and quantization noise uniformly distributed, for fixed-point $b$-bit system the noise power can be calculated by

$$P_n = \frac{\Delta^2}{12}. \tag{2.16}$$

For full-scale a sine-wave is used as the input, then the *SNR* can be written exactly as

$$SNR = 10\log_{10}\left(\frac{P_x}{P_n}\right) = 10\log_{10}\left(\frac{\frac{{A_p}^2}{2}}{\frac{\Delta^2}{12}}\right) = 10\log_{10}\left(\frac{3}{2}2^{2b}\right) \cong 1.76 + 6.02b. \tag{2.17}$$

## 2.7 Noise Shaping Technique

Figure 2.28 shows the spectra for the different methods of D/A conversion. The spectrum of the classical method of D/A conversion is shown in Fig. 2.28a. In the assumed model of quantization noise, spectral density is constant throughout the band 0 to $f_b$. By using oversampling noise power in band 0 to $f_b$ can be determined from the expression

$$P_{nb} = P_n \frac{2f_b}{f_s}, \tag{2.18}$$

where: $P_n$—noise power in band 0 to $f_s/2$.

Therefore, for D/A conversion with oversampling expression for the signal-to-noise ratio (2.17) can be modified to form

$$SNR = 1.76 + 6.02b + 10 \log \frac{f_s}{2f_b}. \tag{2.19}$$

Doubling the sampling rate increases the signal-to-noise ratio by 3dB.

Out-of-band noise can be suppressed by the output analog low-pass filter as shown in Fig. 2.28c. Further, increasing the signal-to-noise ratio can be achieved by the use of the digital noise shaping circuit. With this solution, the noise is moved outside the band of interest. The spectrum of such a solution is shown in Fig. 2.28d.

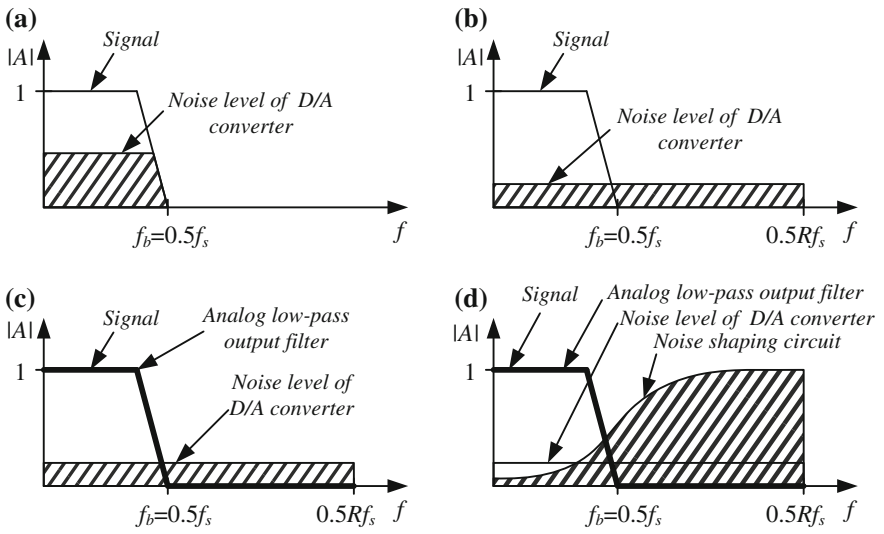



**Fig. 2.28** Spectrum of D/A conversion: **a** classical method, **b** method with oversampling, **c** method with oversampling and analog filter, **d** method with oversampling, analog filter and noise shaping circuit

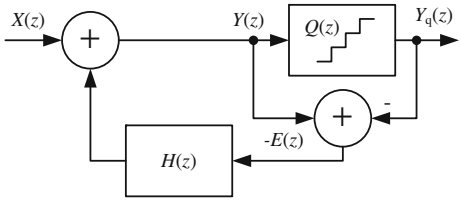



**Fig. 2.29** Noise shaping circuit

The noise shaping circuit works by putting the quantization error in a feedback loop. Different circuit architectures can be used for spectral shaping of the quantization noise, i.e., for moving it away from the band of interest toward higher frequencies [16]. Noise shaping circuits with feedback were first presented by Cutler [20] in 1954, and their detailed analysis was done by Spanga and Schultheiss [55]. A block diagram of a quantization noise shaping circuit using a linear quantizer model with feedback [23, 55, 64] is shown in Fig. 2.29. Output signal can be calculated as

$$Y(z) = X(z) - H(z)E(z), \tag{2.20}$$

and quantization error is calculated from

$$-E(z) = Y(z) - Y_q(z). \tag{2.21}$$

Finally, the output quantized signal is calculated by formula

$$Y_q(z) = X(z) - \overbrace{(1 - H(z))}^{H_n(z)} E(z) = X(z)H_s(z) + E(z)H_n(z), \tag{2.22}$$

where: $H_s(z) = 1$—transfer function for signal, $H_n(z) = 1 - H(z)$—transfer function for noise. A properly designed circuit with noise shaping has flat frequency response $H_s(z)$ in the signal frequency. On the other hand, $H_n(z)$ should have high attenuation in the frequency band of interest and a low attenuation in the rest of the band. For a low oversampling ratio $R$, an efficient way to increase the signal-to-noise ratio is by use of a second-order loop filter.

A block diagram of the processing of $b$-bit digital signal $X(z)$ of the sampling rate $f_s$ by means of a-bit D/A converter to the analog signal is shown in Fig. 2.30. Digital input signal $X(z)$ with a resolution of $b$-bit is interpolated by a factor of $R$, and produces a signal with a resolution of $b$-bit or more, depending on the method of interpolation for sample rate $Rf_s$. For example, for the SHARC digital signal processor it is 32/40-bits. Then the resolution of the signal is reduced to $a$-bits and the difference of signals $Y(z)$ and $Y_q(z)$ is transformed by a system of noise shaping transfer function $H(z)$.

In the simplest case, only with a delay of $H(z) = z^{-1}$ to the input signal $X(z)$ is added to this portion of the signal, which has not been processed in the previous cycle. A block diagram of such a system, with the $b$-bit input samples the D/A converter

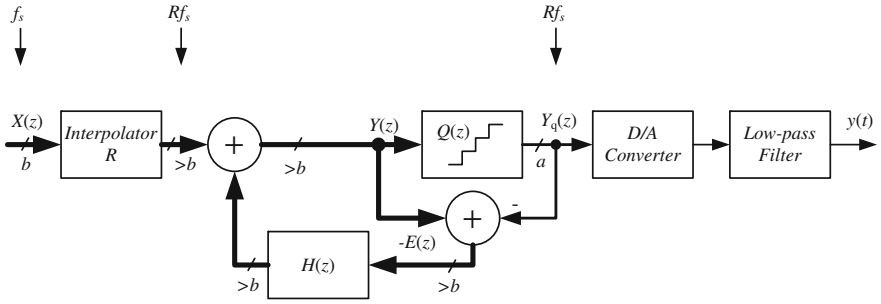



**Fig. 2.30** D/A converter with oversampling and noise shaping

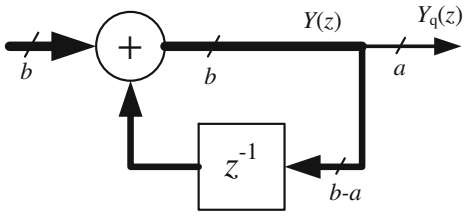



**Fig. 2.31** Simplest noise shaping circuit

converts only the oldest $a$-bits, and the remaining bits are added to the next sample, shown in Fig. 2.31. The transfer function of the noise $H_n(z)$ in the simplest case can be of the FIR and the $N$-th order is defined by the equation

$$H_n(z) = (1 - z^{-1})^N. \tag{2.23}$$

The frequency characteristics of noise attenuation of the noise shaping circuits described by the above Eq. (2.23) for the orders $N = 1 - 6$ is shown in Fig. 2.32. Figure 2.33 shows the block diagrams of noise shaping circuits of the first and second order. In order to prevent the overflow of numbers in circuits amplitude limiters are introduced.

The presented noise shaping method is one of several techniques, very common is being to apply the delta-sigma modulation [15, 17, 38, 43, 51]. This author has applied the noise shaping circuit for high-quality class D audio amplifier [53, 54].

The noise shaping technique for D/A conversion shown in this section can be also used for A/D conversion.

## 2.8 Dither

The resolution of A/D and D/A conversion can be increased by adding to the input signal a low-level noise signal; this signal is called a dither [38, 42, 43, 51, 53]. It is an intentionally applied form of noise signal used to randomize quantization error.

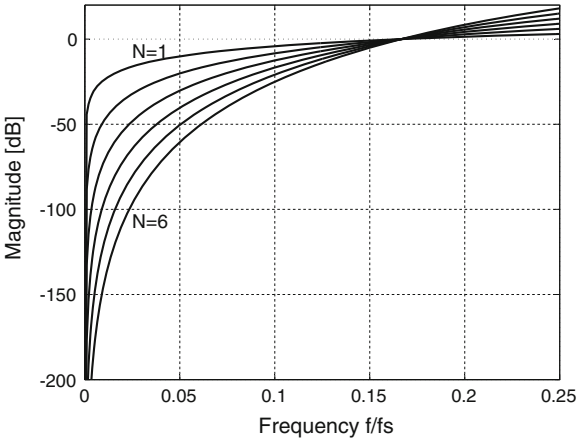



**Fig. 2.32** Frequency characteristics of noise shaping circuits

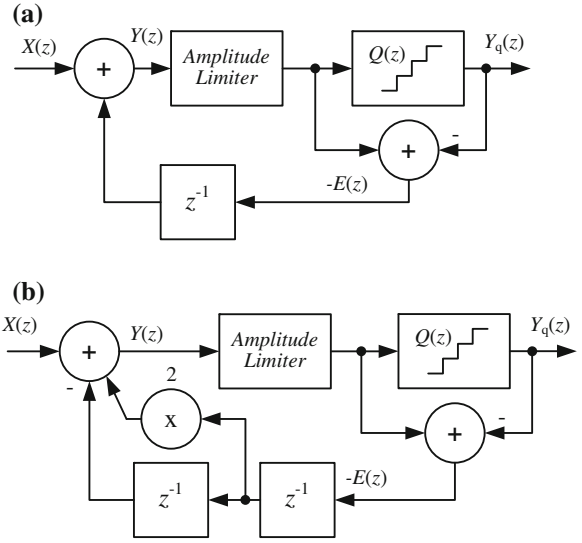



**Fig. 2.33** Noise shaping circuits: **a** first order, **b** second order

Dither is routinely used in the processing of both digital audio and video data, and is often one of the last stages of audio production of compact disks. Figure 2.34a shows circuit with analog dither added before the A/D converter, but after the SH circuit. Similarly, a digital dither signal may be used to improve the D/A conversion as shown in Fig. 2.34. It can also be successfully used in power electronics systems. The amplitude of this signal must be small in order to avoid reduction of the dynamic range of the signal. The author's research shows that it should be an amplitude in the range (0.5–2) LSB [53]. Figure 2.35 depicts a simple digital circuit where dither $D(z)$

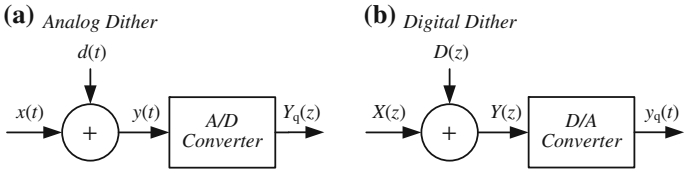



**Fig. 2.34** Dither circuits: **a** A/D conversion, **b** D/A conversion

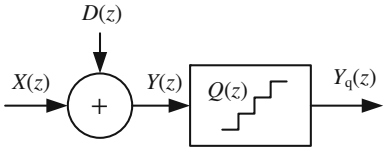



**Fig. 2.35** Digital dither circuit

signal is added to input signal $X(z)$ before its quantization. Application of a dither signal can also improve the performance of the noise shaping circuit as shown in Fig. 2.36a. A pseudorandom signal is added outside the loop feedback, so that it will not be followed by the tracking loop. Simulation studies carried out by the author [53] of the simulation shows that the optimum pseudorandom signal amplitude in terms of obtaining the greatest signal-to-noise ratio *SINAD* is about 0.3 LSB. The amplitude of the random signal to be added is so small due to the fact that noise shaping circuit has a feedback loop that reduces the size of the quantization step.

Adding to the input signal pseudorandom signal degrades *SNR*; therefore, it would be beneficial to change the amplitude depending on the amplitude of the input signal. For input signals with large amplitudes, the amplitude of the random signal is reduced. The block diagram of such a circuit is shown in Fig. 2.36b. The amplitude of the random signal $d(nT)$ can be modulated depending on the input module [37] according to the equation

$$d_m(nT_s) = (1 - \sqrt{|x(nT_s)|})^2 d(nT_s). \tag{2.24}$$

## 2.9 Signal Headroom

The *SNR* value from Eq. (2.17) is only possible when the signal amplitude is equal to $A_p$, in practice it is not possible to work with such high amplitude. It is, therefore, necessary to leave an adequate margin to exceed the value of the signal and additional space for the signal pulse components called signal headroom. Figure 2.37 shows an illustration of this phenomenon, where $A_{p1}$ is nominal amplitude of the input signal, and $A_{p2}$ is an extended amplitude of the input signal.

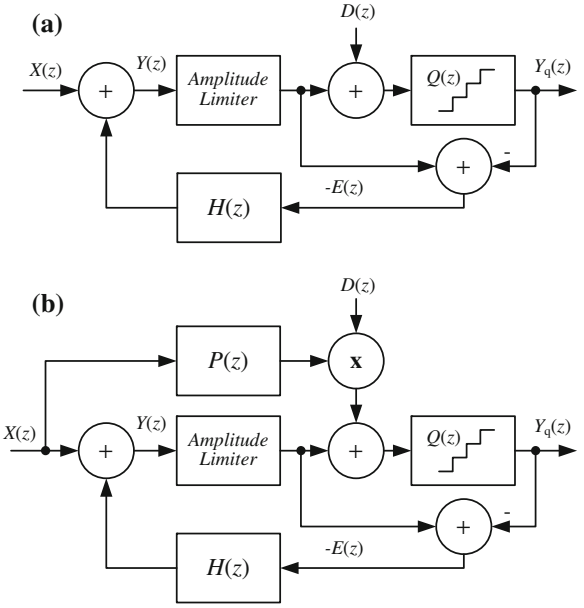



**Fig. 2.36** Dither circuits with noise shaping circuit: **a** with constant level of dither, **b** with dynamic level of dither

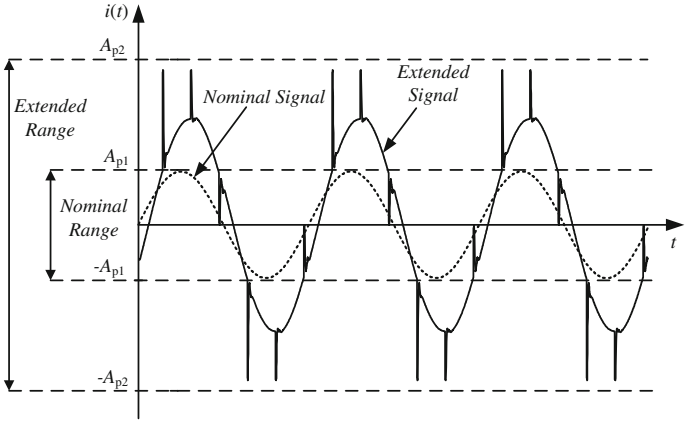



**Fig. 2.37** Signal headroom

Therefore, in real systems, the value of *SNR* will be lower and is apparent from the number of A/D converter bits and can be calculated by the formula

$$SNR = 10\log\left(\frac{\frac{A_{p1}{}^2}{2}}{\frac{\Delta^2}{12}}\right) = 10\log\left(\frac{\frac{A_{p1}{}^2}{2}}{\frac{A_{p2}^2}{\frac{2^{2b-1}}{12}}}\right)$$
$$= 10\log\left(\left(\frac{A_{p1}}{A_{p2}}\right)^2 \frac{3}{2}2^{2b}\right)$$
$$\cong 1.76 + 6.02b + 20\log\left(\frac{A_{p1}}{A_{p2}}\right). \tag{2.25}$$

## 2.10 Maximum Signal Frequency versus Signal Acquisition Time

The signal acquisition time is the time required by the circuit to settle to its final value after it is paced in the hold mode. Signal acquisition time $t_{aq}$ relates to A/D converters which use a sample and hold (or track and hold) circuit on the input to acquire and hold (to a specified tolerance) the analog input signal, see Brannon and Barlow [14]. For an A/D converter without a sample and hold circuit on the input, the signal acquisition time is equal to the converter conversion time $t_c$. The only exception concerns flash converters with well-matched comparators. An illustration of a sampling process is shown in Fig. 2.38, assuming that the amplitude of the input signal in the acquisition process does not change more than half of the LSB of the A/D converter. Assuming maximum signal change during sampling process

$$\Delta U \leq 0.5\Delta = 0.5\frac{A_p}{2^{b-1}} = \frac{A_p}{2^b}. \tag{2.26}$$

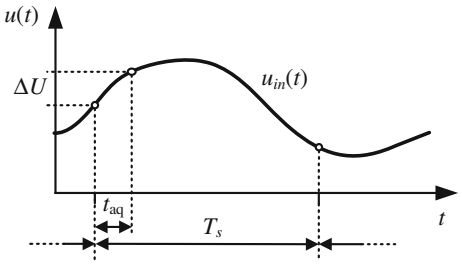



**Fig. 2.38** Signal acquisition process

The analog input sinusoidal signal with amplitude $A_p$ and frequency $f$

$$u_{in}(t) = A_p \sin(2\pi ft). \tag{2.27}$$

The maximum speed of the signal change is determined by the equation

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}u_{\mathrm{in}}(t)}{\mathrm{d}t}|_{max} = 2\pi A_p f. \tag{2.28}$$

Assuming that

$$t_{aq} \ll 1/f. \tag{2.29}$$

$\Delta U_{in}$ can be determined from

$$\Delta U_{in} = 2\pi A_p f t_{aq}. \tag{2.30}$$

As a result of a straightforward algebraic manipulation, we obtain an equation describing the maximum signal frequency

$$\Delta U_{in} \leq \Delta U, \tag{2.31}$$

$$2\pi A_p f t_{aq} \leq \frac{A_p}{2^b}, \tag{2.32}$$

$$f \leq \frac{1}{2\pi 2^b t_{aq}}. \tag{2.33}$$

#### 2.10.0.1 Example 2.1

With maximum signal frequency for a number of bits $b = 16$, acquisition time $t_{aq} = 10$ ns, and determined from the above inequality the maximum signal frequency is $f < 242.8$ Hz. As explained, this is one of the most important factors in the A/D conversion.

Using the A/D converter with a very small value of acquisition time meeting the requirements of Eq. 2.33 are very difficult and expensive. Therefore, systems are used where the acquisition time is much greater. Of course, in a single channel system, there will be differences in the signal sampling moment, and often the requirements of Eq. 2.33 can be omitted. However, in such a case, in multichannel systems, it is vital to provide the same value of acquisition time for all channels.

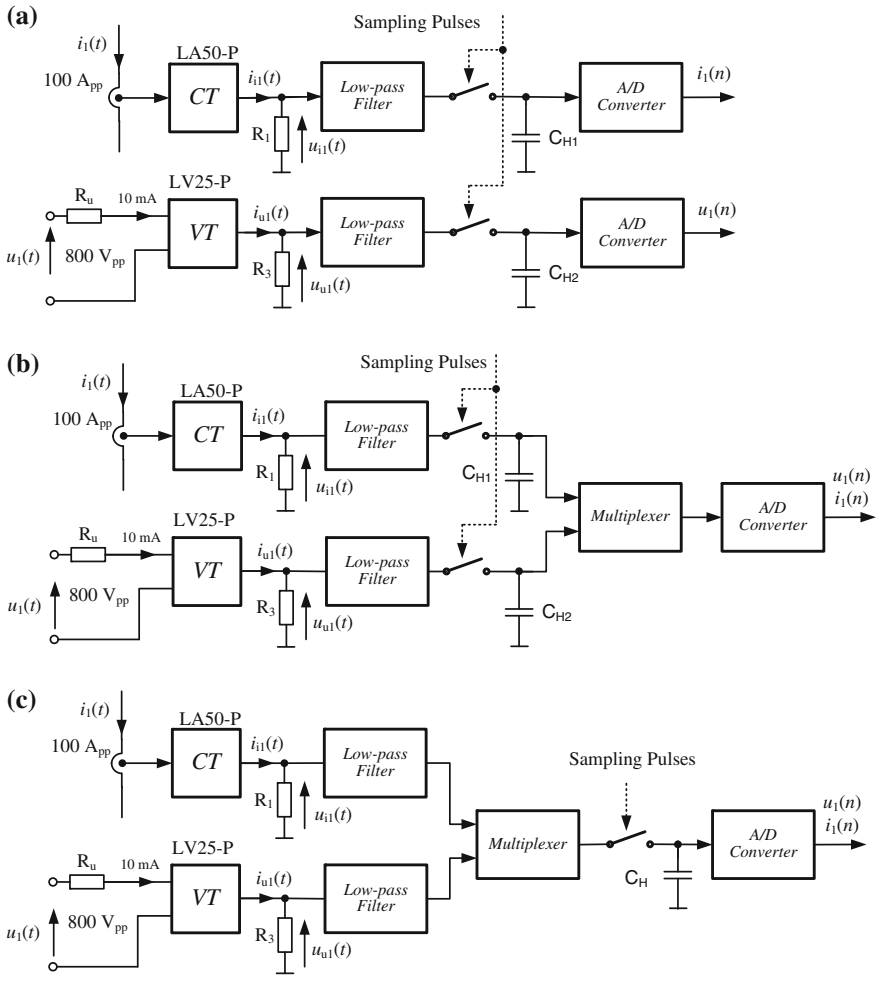



**Fig. 2.39** Two-channel sampling circuits: **a** simultaneous sampling with A/D converter in each channel, **b** simultaneous sampling with single A/D converter, **c** sequential sampling

## 2.11 Errors in Multichannel System

In multichannel systems, it is very important that the input signal is simultaneously sampled to reduce amplitude and phase errors. Multichannel A/D converters with a sampling circuit have three very common architectures, which are depicted in a two-channel version in Fig. 2.39. Two presented solutions provide simultaneous sampling (Fig. 2.39a, b) and one sequential sampling (Fig. 2.39c). A two-channel sequentially sampling analog-to-digital converter is depicted in Fig. 2.39a. In this circuit, current $i_1(t)$ is converted to a current signal $i_{i1}(t)$ using galvanic isolated current transducer

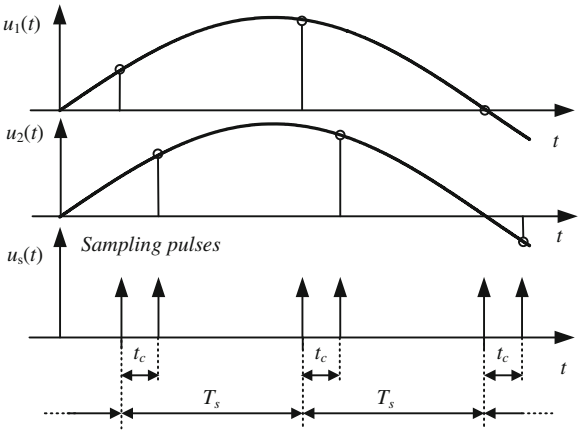



**Fig. 2.40** Sequential sampling of two-channel sampling circuit

CT, and in the same way a voltage signal using galvanic isolated voltage transducer VT is processed. Then the signals pass through anti-aliasing low-pass filters and are simultaneously sampled. After this, the A/D converters process and convert them into digital form. This solution is the fastest and the most comfortable for control circuit designers, however, it is also the most expensive. An alternative solution is a system with a single A/D converter with a few simultaneous sample and hold circuits. A block diagram of such a solution for the two channels is shown in Fig. 2.39b.

In comparison to the previous solution, this circuit is the simplest and hence can be cheaper. However, the errors associated with different capacitor hold times in sample and hold circuits will appear and deteriorate the accuracy of the system. The third circuit, based on multiplexed architecture, uses only one sampling circuit and A/D converter for all channels (Fig. 2.39c). The main disadvantage of a sequentially sampling A/D converter is the time error between channel samples. An illustration of this phenomenon is shown in Fig. 2.40, where two sample signals in time misalignment are shown. Discussion of simultaneous sampling versus sequential sampling is found for example in Data Translation reports [21, 22]. In the author's opinion, the best solution is a simultaneously sampling A/D converter, however, if it cannot be applied, the sequentially sampling A/D converter with time alignment has to be used. The benefits of simultaneous sampling compared to sequential sampling are:

- less jitter error,
- higher bandwidth of the system,
- less channel-to-channel crosstalk,
- less settling time.

## 2.12 Amplitude and Phase Errors of Sequential Sampling A/D Conversion

Due to the fact that the typical A/D converters (with built-in or separate microprocessors) allow only sequential sampling, and errors in such a solution will be considered. Sinusoidal input signals with the same frequency $f$ and $A_p$ amplitudes

$$u_1(t) = A_p \sin(2\pi ft), \quad u_2(t) = A_p \sin(2\pi f(t + t_c)). \tag{2.34}$$

Difference of signals (Fig. 2.40)

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta U(t) &= u_1(t) - u_2(t) \\ &= 2A_p \cos\left(\frac{2\pi ft + 2\pi f(t + t_c)}{2}\right) \sin\left(\frac{2\pi ft - 2\pi f(t + t_c)}{2}\right) \\ &= 2A_p \cos(2\pi ft + \pi ft_c) \sin(-\pi ft_c). \end{aligned} \tag{2.35}$$

Maximum of $\Delta U(t)$

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}U(t)}{\mathrm{d}t} = 4A_p \pi f \sin(2\pi ft + \pi ft_c) \sin(\pi ft_c) = 0. \tag{2.36}$$

So the derivative is zero when

$$2\pi ft + \pi ft_c = 0 \rightarrow t = -0.5t_c. \tag{2.37}$$

Maximum value of signal error can be calculated by the formula

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta U_{max} = \Delta U(t)|_{t=-0.5t_c} &= 2A_p \cos\left(\frac{2\pi f\,(-0.5t_c) + 2\pi ft_c}{2}\right) \sin\,(-\pi ft_c) \\ &= 2A_p \cos(0) \sin(-\pi ft_c) \\ &= 2A_p \sin(-\pi ft_c). \end{aligned} \tag{2.38}$$

However, phase error can be determined from the equation

$$\Delta\phi = \frac{t_1}{T}360 - \frac{t_1 - t_c}{T}360 = 360t_c f. \tag{2.39}$$

Example 2.2. With maximum signal frequency for sequential sampling for an A/D conversion time $t_c = 5$ µs, signal amplitude $A_p = 1$ and signal frequency $f = 50$ Hz it is possible to determine from the above equation: maximum signal error is $\Delta U = 1.57$ mV, phase error $\Delta\phi = 0.09$, and results for the 50th harmonics ($f = 2500$ Hz): $\Delta U = 39.26$ mV and $\Delta\phi = 4.5$. The result will be worse in multichannel systems with sequential sampling, where the A/D conversion time $t_c$ for the last channel will be multiplied by the number of channels.

For $b$-bit system signal error should be less than

$$|\Delta U_{max}| \leq 0.5\Delta,$$
$$2A_p \sin(\pi f t_c) \leq \frac{A_p}{2^b}, \tag{2.40}$$

Assuming

$$t_c \ll 1/f. \tag{2.41}$$

Finally

$$t_c \leq \frac{1}{2\pi f t_c 2^b}. \tag{2.42}$$

The result is similar to the one obtained in Sect. 2.10.

Another source of errors in multichannel systems are the channel crosstalk and channel-to-channel offset. Channel-to-channel offset is the difference in the characteristics of analog input channels which causes measurement error, as if a small voltage were added to or subtracted from the input signal. Channel crosstalk is the leakage of signals between analog input channels in a data acquisition system. Channel crosstalk has the potential to increase uncorrelated noise in the A/D conversions, reducing the signal-to-noise ratio (SNR), while coupled signals can create spurs similar to harmonic terms, reducing spurious free dynamic range (SFDR), and total harmonic distortion (THD) ratio.

## 2.13 Synchronization of Sampling Process

The properties of the majority of digital signal processing algorithms (e.g., DFT) to a large extent depend on whether the processed signal is sampled coherently. Coherent sampling refers to a certain relationship between input frequency, $f_{in}$, sampling frequency $f_s$, $N_{per}$—integer number of signal periods in block of $N$ signal samples

$$f_s = N_{per} \frac{f_{in}}{N}. \tag{2.43}$$

With coherent sampling one is assured that the signal magnitude in a DFT is contained within one DFT bin, assuming single input frequency. For example, Fig. 2.41 shows the spectrum of the same signal with coherent sampling (Fig. 2.41a) and noncoherent sampling (Fig. 2.41b). Therefore, in the author's opinion, for systems connected to the power network, it is expedient to use synchronization.

In Fig. 2.42, a block diagram of an analog phase-locked loop (PLL) circuit is depicted. Using this circuit, it is possible to generate signal with frequency $K$ times bigger than input frequency. A PLL circuit can track a reference frequency and it can generate a frequency that is a multiple of the input frequency. The phase of both

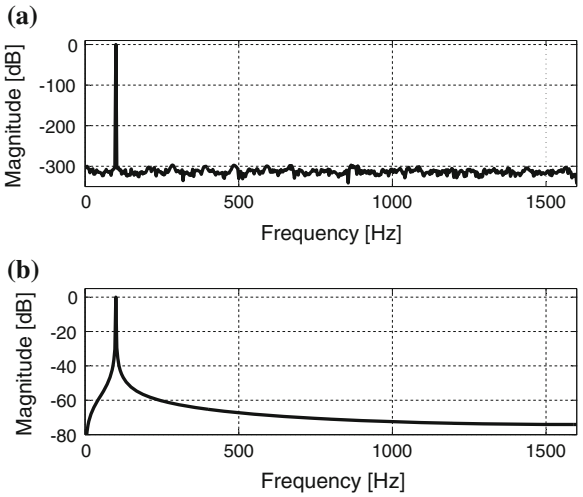



**Fig. 2.41** Spectra of sinusoidal signal: **a** coherent sampling, **b** non-coherent sampling

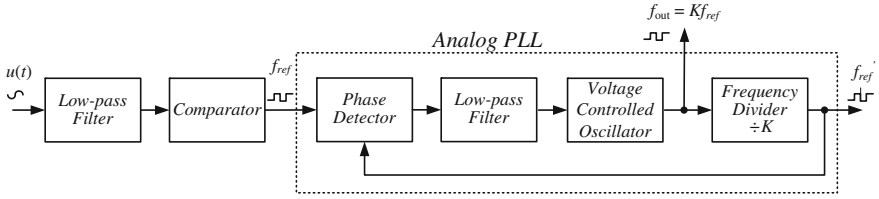



**Fig. 2.42** Analog synchronization circuit with PLL

signals is synchronized too. The PLL generates output signal with frequency

$$f_{out} = Kf_{ref}, \tag{2.44}$$

where: $f_{ref}$—reference input frequency, $K$—frequency multiplication factor. While designing the analog synchronization circuit, the output of the power electronic device should be taken into consideration. In most cases, it is a pulse width modulator (PWM) generating pulse controlled output switches (typically transistors). When the modulation frequency is independent of the reference system frequency (e.g., power line frequency), it will certainly result in generation of low frequency components. This is an effect of the beat frequency between the reference and modulation frequency. Hence, in the author's opinion, the input and output should be synchronized, which will minimize errors and eliminate unwanted components. The block diagram of such a solution is depicted in Fig. 2.43.

In the author's opinion, the same situation occurs during simulation tests, and if it is possible a coherent frequency of test signals should be used . A simple listing of the Matlab program for coherent frequency calculation is shown below:

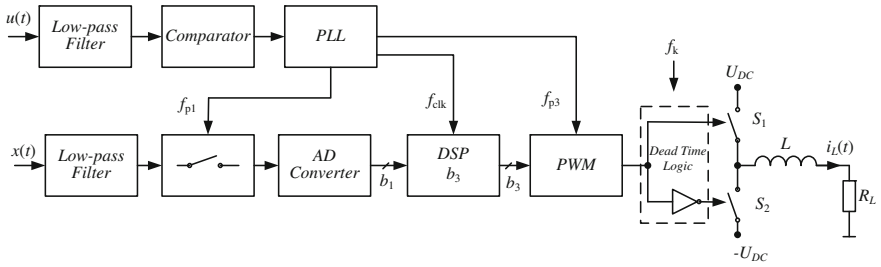



**Fig. 2.43** Full synchronized control circuit

```
N = 2048;      % length of signal block
fs = 10000;    % sampling frequency
f = 50;        % required frequency of the signal
f_koh = round (f/(fs/N)) * fs/N; % nearest coherent frequency
```

## 2.14 Sampling Clock Jitter

An important factor in the sampling process is the sampling clock in the A/D converter. Due to hardware error and noise the sampling moments in real A/D converters are uncertain. Problems of sampling signal uncertainty are described by many authors [10, 13, 14, 36, 49]. Variation in the sampling time is known as aperture uncertainty, or jitter, and will result in an error voltage that is proportional to the magnitude of the jitter and the input signal slew rate. In other words, the greater the input frequency and amplitude, the more susceptibility to jitter is in the clock source. Figure 2.44 shows a sampling pulse clock with jitter. Value of jitter $\Delta t$ corresponds to jitter amplitude $A_{jitter}$. Figure 2.45 shows how jitter generates an signal error.

$$\Delta U = \Delta t \frac{\mathrm{d}u_{in}}{\mathrm{d}t}. \tag{2.45}$$

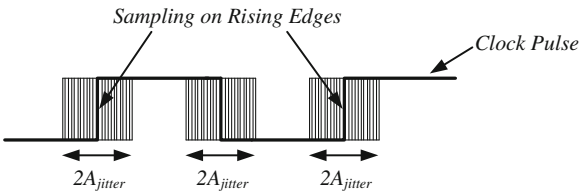



**Fig. 2.44** Sampling clock with jitter

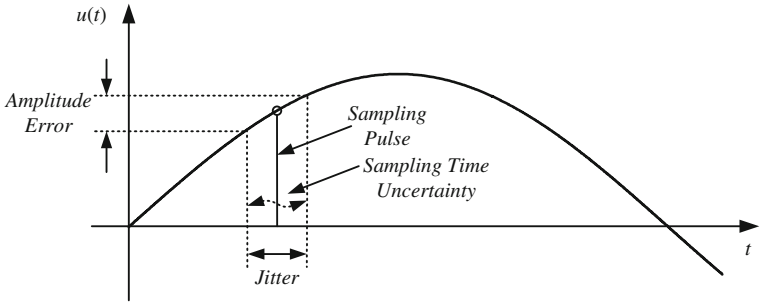



**Fig. 2.45** Sampling time uncertainty—jitter

The maximum value of voltage error for sine wave of frequency $f$ and amplitude $A$ is at zero crossing

$$\Delta U_{max} = \Delta t \overbrace{\frac{\mathrm{d}u}{\mathrm{d}t}}^{max} = \Delta t A_{in} 2\pi f. \tag{2.46}$$

This error cannot be corrected later, because it is already attached to the sampling sequence that is being processed for digitization and will impact the overall performance of the A/D converter and finally of the control system, as shown in Eq. 2.46.

$$\Delta U_{max} < 0.5\Delta, \Delta U_{max} < \frac{A_{in}}{2^b}. \tag{2.47}$$

then

$$\Delta t < \frac{1}{2\pi f 2^b}. \tag{2.48}$$

$$SNR_{jitter} = -20log(2\pi f \Delta t_{rms}). \tag{2.49}$$

Example 2.3. Assuming the following parameters: sampling frequency $f_s = 6400$ Hz, signal frequency $f = 200$ Hz, jitter amplitude $A_{jitter} = 0.01T_s = 1.5625$ µs, signal-to-noise ratio $SNR$ the value calculated from the formula 2.49 is equal to $SNR = 50$ dB. For such assumed values, a simulation in the Matlab environment was also made. In Fig. 2.46, the results of the simulation are shown. The spectrum presented in Fig. 2.46a is for sinusoidal signal, which was coherently sampled without jitter, the $SNR = 257.68$ dB of this signal is only limited by the Matlab arithmetic accuracy. The spectrum of signal sampled with jitter is shown in Fig. 2.46b. In this case, the value of signal-to-noise ratio calculated on the basis of simulation is equal to $SNR = 59.01$ dB and it is almost equal to the value calculated by formula 2.49.

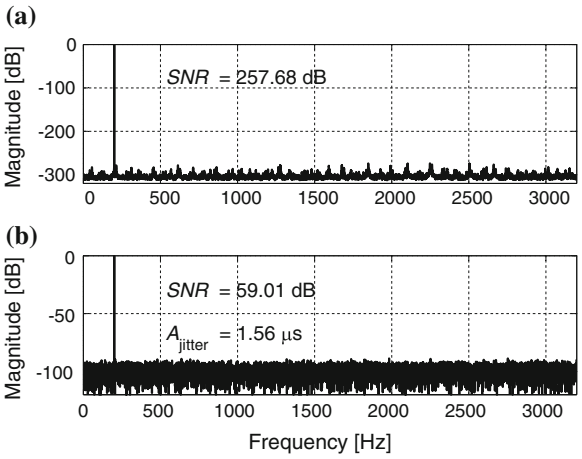



**Fig. 2.46** Spectra of coherent sampled signals: **a** without jitter, **b** with jitter

## 2.15 Effective Number of Bits

An interesting parameter of the digital signal is the effective number of bits (*ENOB*). This parameter takes into account all errors made during the conversion. This parameter is especially important today when there is easy access to 18-bit A/D converters and by incompetent application, it is easy to reduce the effective number of bits to 10–12. Major sources of errors during the A/D conversion are digital transmission and clock signals of high-speed processors. Among the most important are: quantization noise, jitter, A/D converter noise, aliasing, integral and differential nonlinearity, channel crosstalk, channel-to-channel crosstalk, and other error sources (Fig.2.47).

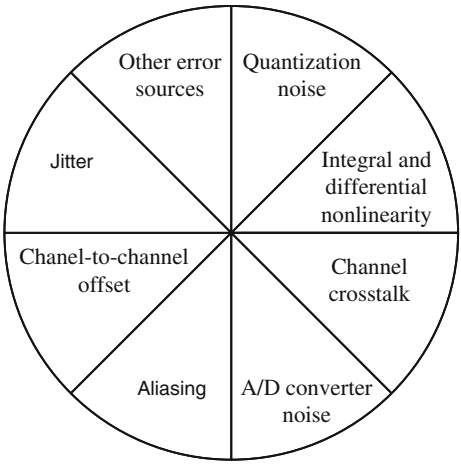



**Fig. 2.47** Effective number of bits

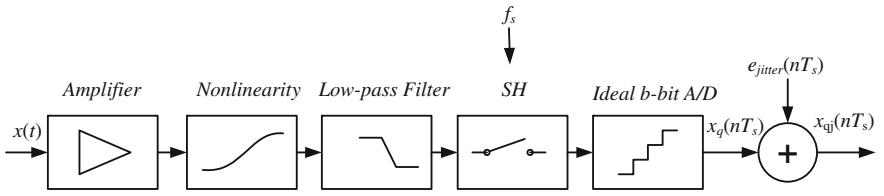



**Fig. 2.48** Simplified model of analog front end

Simplified analog front end used for effective number of bit calculation is shown in Fig. 2.48. *SINAD* is the ratio of the wanted signal (the fundamental) to the sum of all distortion and noise products, after the DC term is removed. SINAD is a measure of the quality of a signal, defined as:

$$SINAD = 10 \log \left( \frac{P_x}{P_d + P_n} \right), \tag{2.50}$$

where: $P_x$, $P_n$, $P_d$—are the average power values respectively of the signal, noise, and distortion components. The effective number of bits can be described by the equation

$$ENOB = \frac{SINAD_M - 1.76\,dB}{6.02}. \tag{2.51}$$

where: $SINAD_M$—is the measured or calculated value of *SINAD*. The $SINAD_M$ contains not only A/D converter error but all conversion errors (Fig. 2.48). Equation 2.51 is valid only for a full scale signal, while for a signal with amplitude less than full scale real $ENOB_R$ can be calculated by equation

$$ENOB_R = \frac{SINAD_M - 1.76\,dB - 20 \log \left( \frac{A_F}{A_{in}} \right)}{6.02}. \tag{2.52}$$

where: $A_F$ is the converter full-scale input signal amplitude, and $A_{in}$ is the input signal amplitude.

$$ENOB_R = 0.5 \log_2 \left( \frac{P_s}{P_{nd}} \right) - 0.5 \log_2 \left( \frac{2}{3} \right) - 0.5 \log_2 \left( \frac{A_F}{A_{in}} \right), \tag{2.53}$$

where: $P_{nd}$ is the power of noise and distortion.

## 2.16 A/D Converters Suitable for Power Electronics Control Circuits

Currently, the number of types of integrated circuits manufactured for A/D converters exceeds a few hundred, so the designer can be confused when choosing the best one for his application. A subjective choice of the A/D converter will be presented in this section. During the selection process, the designer should consider following features:

- sampling speed,
- accuracy and resolution,
- input voltage range,
- interface—serial or parallel,
- sampling synchronization,
- power consumption and supply voltage,
- conversion delay time,
- standalone IC or integrated with microprocessor,
- cost and availability.

Given the above sources of error, in the author's opinion the A/D converter useful for power electronics systems control circuits must meet the following requirements:

- simultaneous sampling for multichannel solution–multiple SH circuits or multiple A/D converters ,
- a number of bits greater than 12,
- minimum delay introduced by the A/D converter, the best solution is A/D converter with successive approximation (SA), most popular and cheap A/D converter with delta sigma modulator has to be carefully considered,
- the ability to synchronize the sampling time by an external signal,
- if possible coherent synchronous sampling should be used.

Despite the large number of available A/D converters, these requirements are only met by a small number of commercial integrated circuits and the choice is very limited. As leading companies in this area there can be considered Analog Devices and Texas Instruments.

### *2.16.1 A/D Converter with Successive Approximation*

An A/D converter with successive approximation (SA) is one of the best solution, for power electronics, because of its short response time. Of course there are known faster A/D converters, such as flash, pipeline etc., but typically their resolution is less than 12-bit. A block diagram of an A/D converter with successive approximation is shown in Fig. 2.49. In this A/D converter, the processed sampled input signal is compared with a signal from the D/A converter by analog comparator. The D/A

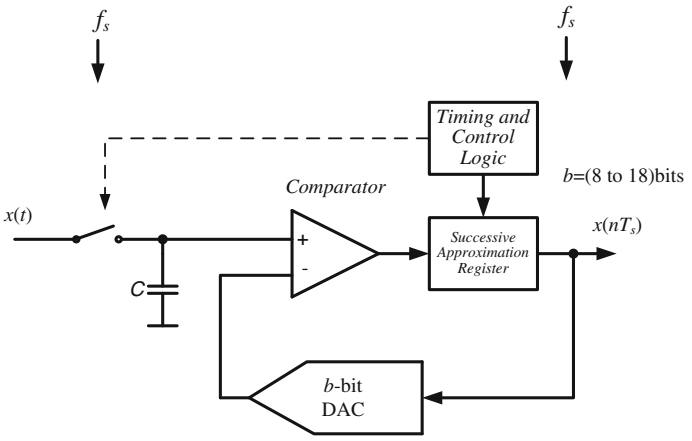



**Fig. 2.49** Block diagram of A/D converter with successive approximation

converter is controlled by the successive approximation register, which sequentially switches on the individual bits, starting from the most significant bit (MSB) to the least significant bit (LSB). During this process, a decision is made about whether to leave the bit switched on or turn it off. Hence, the number of cycles is equal to the number of bits. Maximum response time is equal

$$t_{max} = T_s + t_{cov} + t_{tran} \quad \text{and} \quad T_s > t_{cov} + t_{tran}, \tag{2.54}$$

where: $t_{cov}$—A/D converter conversion time, $t_{tran}$—data from A/D converter to microprocessor transmission time.

## *2.16.2 A/D Converter with Delta Sigma Modulator*

In recent years, the A/D converter with delta sigma modulator (DSM) is the most common A/D converter, due to its simplicity of implementation and cheapness [38, 43]. In this converter, the oversampling technique is used which allows an increase in the resolution from 1 to 24 bits. An additional advantage is the absence of SH and lower requirements for the anti-aliasing filter. A block diagram of A/D converter with delta sigma modulator is shown in Fig. 2.50. A one bit A/D converter consists of: integrator, D flip-flop, comparator and a one bit D/A converter. It produces a bit stream with sampling speed $Rf_s$. Then the signal is processed by a low-pass filter and its sampling speed is reduced to $f_s$. This filter is responsible for the signal delay. Typically, there are used finite impulse response (FIR) digital filters with an order range from one hundred to several hundred. The delay introduced by the filter FIR is approximately equal to the number of samples which is equal to half the filter order

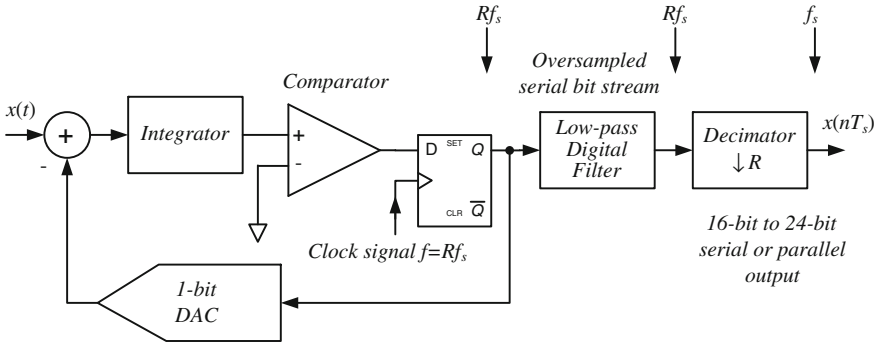



**Fig. 2.50** Block diagram of A/D converter with delta sigma modulator

$$t_{delay} = 0.5\frac{T_s}{R}N, \tag{2.55}$$

where: $N$—FIR order, $T_s/R$—conversion period. The output data are fully settled after $N$ conversion periods. Therefore, application of this kind of converter should be carefully considered. The value of $R$ is typically ranging from 64 to 2048 and it is most often a power of two.

### *2.16.3 Selected Simultaneous Sampling A/D Converters*

In this section are discussed some selected representative simultaneous sampling A/D converters.

### *2.16.4 ADS8364*

A typical AD converter with simultaneous sampling suitable for power electronics applications is IC ADS8364 from Texas Instruments. The ADS8364 includes six, 16-bit, 250 KHz AD converters with six fully differential input channels grouped into two pairs for high-speed simultaneous signal acquisition [58]. The AD converters work using a successive approximation algorithm. Inputs to the SH amplifiers are fully differential and are kept differential in respect to the input of the ADC. This provides excellent common-mode rejection of 80 dB at 50 KHz, which is important in high-noise environments. The ADS8364 offers a flexible high-speed parallel interface with a direct address mode, a cycle, and a FIFO mode. The output data for each channel is available as a 16-bit word. A simplified block diagram of the ADS8364 is shown in Fig. 2.51.

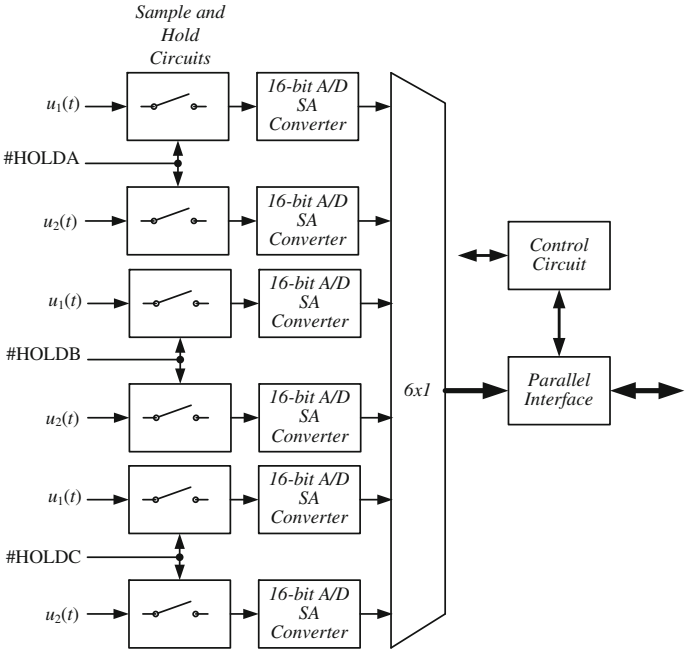



**Fig. 2.51** Simplified block diagram of AD8364: 6-channel DAS with 16-Bit ADC

Selected features of ADS8364:

- 8 simultaneously sampled inputs,
- true bipolar analog input range $\pm 2.5$ at $+2.5\,\mathrm{V}$
- 6-channel fully differential inputs,
- 6 independent 16-bit ADC,
- $4\,\mu\mathrm{s}$ total throughput per channel,
- on-chip accurate reference and reference buffer,
- testing no missing codes to 14-bits,
- 83.2 dB *SNR*, 82.5 dB *SINAD*,
- applications: motor control, 3-phase power control, multi-axis positioning system.

For the designer of a control circuit used in power electronics, it is a very comfortable arrangement and only the high cost may deter its use.

## *2.16.5 AD7608*

Particularly, noteworthy is that the IC AD7608 from Analog Devices is an 8-channel, 18-bit SA data acquisition system (DAS) [6]. It should be noticed that in one single chip there are also integrated eight programmable anti-aliasing second-order filters.

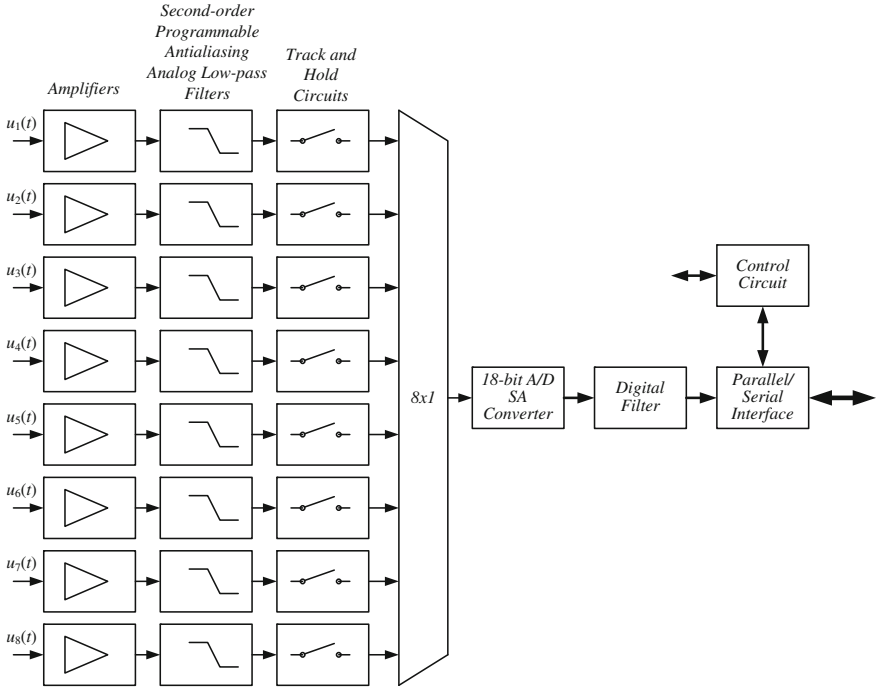



**Fig. 2.52** Simplified block diagram of AD7608: 8-channel DAS with 18-Bit, bipolar, with simultaneous sampling TH

Analog signals can be simultaneously sampled by eight track and hold (TH) circuits. A simplified block diagram of the AD7608 is shown in Fig. 2.52.

Selected features of AD7608:

- 8 simultaneously sampled inputs,
- true bipolar analog input ranges: $\pm 10$, $\pm 5$ V,
- single 5 V analog supply and 2.3 to 5 V VDRIVE,
- fully integrated data acquisition solution,
- analog input clamp protection,
- input buffer with 1 MΩ analog input impedance,
- second-order programmable antialiasing analog filter,
- on-chip accurate reference and reference buffer,
- 18-bit SA A/D converter with 200 kSPS on all channels,
- oversampling capability with digital filter,
- 98 dB *SNR*, −107 dB *THD*,
- parallel or serial interface.

For the designer of a control circuit used in power electronics, it is a very comfortable arrangement and only the high cost may deter its use.

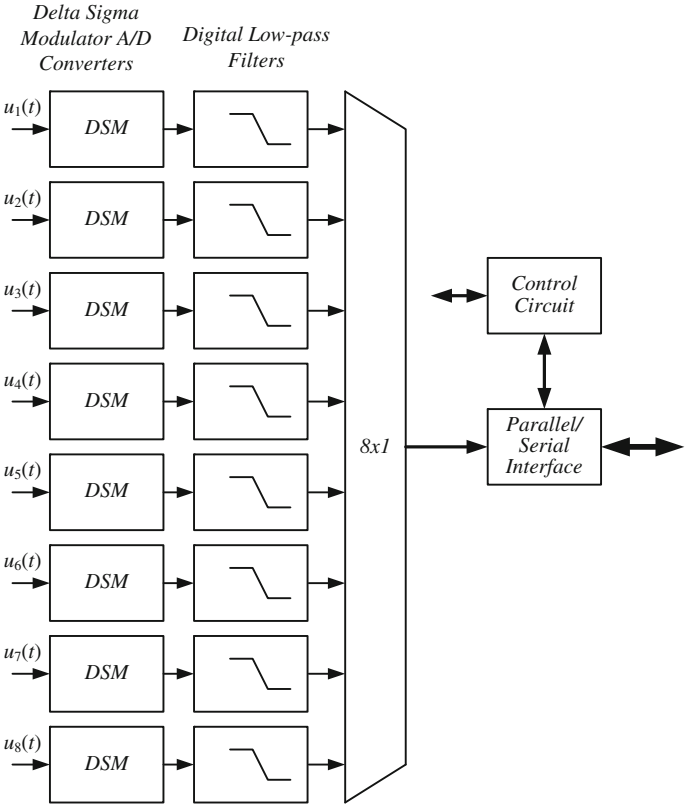



**Fig. 2.53** Simplified block diagram of ADS1278 8-channel 24-bit, DSM A/D converter

## *2.16.6 ADS1278*

ADS1278 is on octal channel 24-bit, DSM A/D converter with data rates up to 144 kSPS, allowing simultaneous sampling of eight channels [63]. The A/D converter offers the highest possible resolution of A/D converters. A simplified block diagram of the ADS1278 is shown in Fig. 2.53. The A/D converter consists of eight advanced, sixth-order chopper-stabilized, delta-sigma modulators followed by low-ripple, linear phase FIR filters. Oversampling ratio R is equal 64 or 128. After the step change on the input occurs, the output data change very little prior to 30 conversion periods. The output data are fully settled after 76 or 78 periods depending on the converter mode. For high-speed mode, the maximum clock $f_{clk}$ input frequency is 37 MHz and output signal sampling rate $f_{data}$ is equal to

$$f_{data} = \frac{f_{clk}}{4R} = 144531.25 \text{ SPS}. \tag{2.56}$$

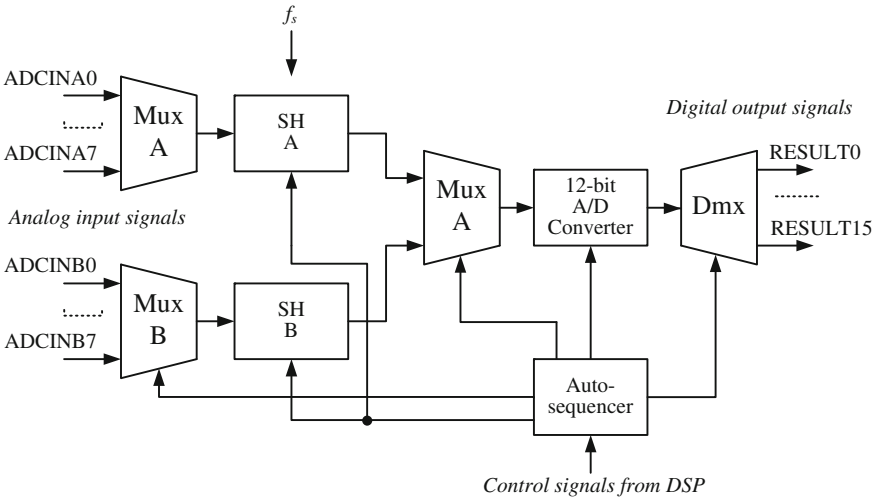



**Fig. 2.54** Simplified block diagram of TMS320F28335 A/D converter

## *2.16.7 TMS320F28335*

The rapidly growing market of microprocessors for power electronics circuits has caused manufacturers to create integrated circuits which can fully meet the needs of the control system. An example of such a system is the digital signal controller (DSC), from Texas Instruments [60, 62]. It is a complete system with many useful features in a single silicon chip. Therefore, it is especially good for power electronics applications. The core of the processor contains an IEEE-754 single-precision floating-point unit. It also consists of 16-channel 12-bit SA A/D converter, with 80 ns conversion rate and two sample and hold (SH) circuits. Therefore, the simultaneous sampling of two signals is possible. A simplified diagram of this A/D converter is shown in Fig. 2.54.

On the input of each sample and hold circuit is located an 8-channel analog multiplexer that allows sequential converting of 8-pairs of signal (sampled simultaneously). The voltage input range is equal to 0–3 V. The converter input voltage $U_in$ can be determined from the equation

$$U_{in} = \frac{\mathrm{D}(U_{ref+} - U_{ref-})}{2^b - 1} + U_{ref-}, \tag{2.57}$$

where: $D$—converter digital output, $U_{ref}$—reference voltage, $b$—number of bits. For $U_{ref+} = 3V$, $U_{ref-} = 0V$ and $b = 12$

$$U_{in} = \frac{3D}{4095}. \tag{2.58}$$

## 2.17 Conclusions

The chapter shows the most common sources of errors during conversion of analog signal to its digital form. This process is very important for the quality of the entire digital control system. However, in practical control systems the price is one of the most important limiting factors and the designer is forced to use a compromise solution. The discussion in this chapter gives better understanding of the selection of control system parameters.

## References

1. ABB (2012) ESM1000 General informations. Technical report, ABB
2. Allegro (2005) Current sensor: ACS752SCA-100. Technical report, Allegro MicroSystems Inc., ACS752100-DS Rev. 6
3. Allegro (2011) ACS756, fully integrated, hall effect-based linear current sensor IC with 3 kVRMS voltage isolation and a low-resistance current conductor. Data sheet, Allegro MicroSystems Inc.
4. Analog Devices (1996) AD215 120 kHz bandwidth, low distortion, isolation amplifier. Analog Devices Inc.
5. Analog Devices (2012) AD8210, High voltage, bidirectional current shunt monitor, Analog Devices Inc.
6. Devices Analog (2012) AD7606/AD7606-6/AD7606-4 8-/6-/4-channel DAS with 16-bit, bipolar input, simultaneous sampling ADC. Data sheet, Analog Devices Inc.
7. Attia JO (1999) Electronics and circuit analysis using Matlab. CRC Press, Boca Raton
8. Avago (2011) HCPL-7860/HCPL-786J optically isolated sigma-delta (S-D) modulator. Technical report, Avago Technologies, AV02-0409EN
9. Avago (2008) HCPL-7800A/HCPL-7800 isolation amplifier. Technical report, Avago Technologies, AV02-1436EN
10. Azeredo-Leme C (2011) Clock jitter effects on sampling: a tutorial. IEEE Circ Syst Mag 3:26–37
11. Baggini A (ed) (2008) Handbook of power quality. Wiley-Interscience a John Wiley & Sons Inc., New York
12. Bossche AV, Valchev VC (2005) Inductors and transformers for power electronics. CRC Press, Boca Raton
13. Brannon B (2004) Sampled systems and the effects of clock phase noise and jitter. Application note AN-756, Technical report, Analog Devices Inc.
14. Brannon B, Barlow A (2006) Aperture uncertainty and ADC system performance. Application note AN-501, Technical report, Analog Devices Inc.
15. Carley RL, Schreier R, Temes GC (1997) Delta-sigma ADCs with multibit internal conveters. In: Norsworthy SR, Schreier R, Temes GC (eds) Delta-sigma data converters. Theory, design, and simulation. IEEE Press, New York
16. Candy J, Temes G (eds) (1992) Oversampling delta-sigma data converters. Theory, design, and simulation. IEEE Press, New York
17. Cataltepe T, Kramer AR, Larson LE, Temes GC Walden RH (1992) Digitaly corrected multi-bit $\Sigma\Delta$ data converters. IEEE Proceedings of ISCAS'89, May 1989. In: Candy JC, Temes G C (eds) Oversampling delta-sigma data converters theory, design, and simulation. IEEE Press, New York
18. ChenYoung (2011) Closed loop precise hall current sensor CYHCS-SH. Technical report, ChenYoung

19. Cummings J, Doogue MC, Friedrich AP (2007) Recent trends in hall effect current sensing (Rev. 1). AN295045, Technical report, Allegro MicroSystems Inc.
20. Cutler C (1960) Transmission system employing quantization. United States Patent 2,927,962
21. Data Translation (2008) The battle for data fidelity: understanding the SFDR spec. Technical report, Data Translation
22. Data Translation (2009) Benefits of simultaneous data acquisition modules. Technical report, Data Translation
23. Galton I (1997) Spectral shaping of cuircuit errors in digital-to-analog converters. IEEE Trans Circ Syst II Analog Digital Signal Process 44(10):789–797
24. Hartley RVL (1928) Transmission of information. Bell Syst Tech J 7:535–563
25. Hartmann M, Biela J, Ertl H, Kolar JW (2009) Wideband current transducer for measuring ac signals with limited DC offset. IEEE Trans Power Electron (24)7:1776–1787
26. Holmes DG, Lipo TA (2003) Pulse width modulation for power converters: principles and practice. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers Inc., New Jersey
27. Honeywell (2008) Current sensors line guide. Technical report, Honeywell International Inc.
28. Kester W (2004) Analog-digital Conversion. Analog Devices Inc., Norwood
29. Kester W (2005) The Data conversion handbook. Newnes, London
30. Kester W (2009) Understand SINAD, ENOB, SNR, THD, THD + N, and SFDR so you don't get lost in the noise floor. Technical report, Analog Devices Inc.
31. Kotelnikov AV (1933) On the capacity of the 'ether' and of cables in electrical communication. In: Proceedings of the first all-union conference on the technological reconstruction of the communications sector and low-current engineering, Moscow
32. LEM (2004) Isolated current and voltage transducer, 3 edn. LEM Components, Milwaukee
33. LEM (2012) Current transducer LA 55-P. LEM Components
34. LEM (2012) Current transducer LA 205-S. Technical report, LEM Components
35. Lyons R (2004) Understanding digital signal processing, 2nd edn. Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs
36. Mota M (2010) Understanding clock jitter effects on data converter performance and how to minimize them. Technical report, Synopsis Inc.
37. Norsworthy SR (1997) Quantization errors and dithering in modulators. In: Norsworthy SR, Schreier R, Temes GC (eds) Delta-sigma data converters: theory, design, and simulation. IEEE Press, New York
38. Norsworthy SR, Schreier R, Temes GC (eds) (1997) Delta-sigma data converters, theory, design, and simulation. IEEE Press, New York
39. Nyquist H (1924) Certain factors affecting telegraph speed. Bell Syst Tech J 3:324–346
40. Nyquist H (1928) Certain topics in telegraph transmission theory. AIEE Trans 47:617–644
41. Oppenheim AV, Schafer RW (1999) Discrete-time signal processing. Prentice Hall, New Jersey
42. Orfanidis SJ (2010) Introduction to signal processing. Prentice Hall Inc., Englewood Cliffs
43. Plassche R (2003) CMOS integrated analog-to-digital and digital-to-analog converters. Springer, Dordrecht
44. Proakis JG, Manolakis DM (1996) Digital signal processing, principles, algorithms, and application. Prentice Hall Inc., Englewood Cliffs
45. Rabiner LR, Gold B (1975) Theory and application of digital signal processing. Prentice Hall Inc., Englewood Cliffs
46. Ray WF, Davis RM (1993) Wide bandwidth Rogowski current transducer: part 1—the Rogowski coil. EPE J (3)2:116–122
47. Ray WF, Davis RM (1993) Wide bandwidth Rogowski current transducer: part 2—the integrator. EPE J (3)1:51–59
48. Ray WF, Davis RM (1997) Developments in Rogowski current transducer. In: EPE conference proceedings, vol 3. Trondheim, pp 308–312
49. Redmayne D, Trelewicz E, Smith A (2006) Understanding the effect of clock jitter on high speed ADCs. Design note 1013, Technical report, Linear Technology Inc.
50. Rollier S (2012) High accuracy, high technology: the perfect choice! ITB 300-S / IT 400-S / IT 700-S current transducers. Technical report, LEM Components

51. Schreier R Temes GC (2004) Understanding delta-sigma data converters. Wiley-IEEE Press, New York
52. Shannon CE (1948) A mathematical theory of communication. Bell Syst Tech J 27:379–423, 623–656
53. Sozanski K (1999) Design and research of digital filters banks using digital signal processors. PhD thesis, Technical University of Poznan (in Polish)
54. Sozanski K, Strzelecki R, Fedyczak Z, (2001) Digital control circuit for class-D audio power amplifier. In: Conference proceedings, 2001 IEEE 32nd annual power electronics specialists conference—PESC, vol 2001, pp 1245–1250
55. Spang H, Schulthessis P (1962) Reduction of quantizing noise by use of feedback. IRE Trans Commun Syst 10:373–380
56. Strzelecki R, Fedyczak Z, Sozanski K, Rusinski J (2000) Active power filter EFA1. Technical report, Instytut Elektrotechniki Przemyslowej, Politechnika Zielonogorska (in Polish)
57. Instruments Texas (2005) ISO124 precision lowest-cost isolation amplifier. Data sheet, Texas Instruments Inc.
58. Instruments Texas (2006) ADS8364 250kSPS, 16-bit, 6-channel simultaneous sampling analog-to-digital converter. Data sheet, Texas Instruments Inc.
59. Texas Instruments (2009) ISO120, ISO121 precision low cost isolation amplifier. Technical report, ISO121.pdf, Texas Instruments Inc.
60. Instruments Texas (2008) TMS320F28335/28334/28332, TMS320F28235/28234/28232, digital signal controllers (DSCs). Data manual, Texas Instruments Inc.
61. Instruments Texas (2010) INA270, INA271 voltage output, unidirectional measurement current-shunt monitor. Data sheet, Texas Instruments Inc.
62. Texas Instruments (2010) C2000 teaching materials, tutorials and applications. SSQC019, Texas Instruments Inc.
63. Instruments Texas (2011) ADS1274, ADS1278, quad/octal, simultaneous sampling, 24-bit analog-to-digital converters.Data sheet, Texas Instruments Inc.
64. Tewksbury S (1978) Oversampled, linear predictive and noise-shaping coders of order N $>1$. IEEE Trans Circ Syst 25(7):436–447
65. Vishay (2011) Linear optocoupler, high gain stability, wide bandwidth. Data sheet, Vishay Semiconductor GmbH
66. Zolzer U (2008) Digital audio signal processing. Wiley, Hoboken
67. Zolzer U (ed) (2002) DAFX—Digital audio effects. Wiley, Chichester
68. Zumbahlen H (ed) (2007) Basic linear design. Analog Devices Inc., Norwood

# Chapter 3
# Selected Methods of Signal Filtration and Separation and Their Implementation

## 3.1 Introduction

This chapter considers selected methods of digital signal filtration, separation, and their implementation. Special attention is paid to digital filters and filter banks useful for the control circuit in power electronics. There is discussion of the author's efficient realizations of lattice wave digital filters (LWDF) and modified lattice wave digital filters (MLWDF) using digital signal processors [23]. The author has carried out implementations of modified wave digital filters for modern digital signal processors for the first- and second-order adapters [62, 63]. For systems in which linear phase shift and FIR filters require too many arithmetic operations integrated IIR filters with linear phase shift are considered. The author presents his own solutions for these filters. They are particularly useful in audio systems, and they are also used to interpolate signals in the class D amplifier. Considered too are multirate circuits and the influence of changing the signal sample rate on the quality of the signal. This chapter also presents the author's very useful implementations of an interpolator using bireciprocal LWDF. Many circuits are supplemented by the author's listings in Matlab, used for simulation of selected algorithms. The diagrams illustrating the characteristics of the presented circuits are the work of the author. One of the selected power electronics devices is the APF, for which filter banks are especially useful. The filter banks allow separation and selection of compensating harmonics. For this purpose, the author has chosen filter banks such as: strictly complementary [67], sliding DFT [64–66, 68], sliding Goertzel DFT, moving DFT and LWDF [63]. In the next part of this chapter, analysis of the features of selected digital signal processors (DSP) is presented. Presented are the same author's efficient implementations of digital filters for SHARC processor [63].

K. Sozański, *Digital Signal Processing in Power Electronics Control Circuits*, Power Systems, DOI: 10.1007/978-1-4471-5267-5_3,

## 3.2 Digital Filters

Digital filters are used to transform signal from one form to another, especially to eliminate specific frequencies in the signal. The word filter is derived from electrical engineering, and in the past a filter was primarily electrical. Therefore, mainstream filter theory was developed in electrical engineering. Digital filters are medium less, being a linear combination of the input signal $x(n)$ and possibly the output signal $y(n)$ and include many of the operations for signal processing. The digital filter is realized using LTI discrete-time circuits (see in Chap. 1). There are two basic types of digital filters:

- recursive filters, also known as infinite impulse response (IIR) filters, filters with feedback,
- nonrecursive filters, filters without feedback, called also finite impulse response (FIR) filters.

The problems of digital filter design are widely described by many authors. This author can particularly recommend a few books ("bricks") written by: Oppenheim et al. [51], Rabiner and Gold [60], Proakis and Manolakis [58], Hamming [39], Mitra [50], Zielinski [81], Chen et al. [16], Vaidyanathan [76], Wanhammar [80], Pasko [56], Izydorczyk and Konopacki [40], Dabrowski [20, 21], Venezuela and Constantindes [77], Orfanidis [52, 53], for audio application Zolcer [82, 83], and many others. Among many of the digital filters described in the above publications, the author has chosen those which in his opinion are especially well suited for use in control circuits of power electronics devices.

### *3.2.1 Digital Filter Specifications*

The filter design problem involves constructing the transfer function of a filter that meets the desired frequency response specifications. Typical response specifications for an ideal low-pass digital filter are depicted in Fig. 3.1. For an ideal digital filter with cutoff frequency $f_{cr}$, the passband is defined as $0 - f_{cr}$, stopband $f_{cr} - f_s/2$, and magnitude $D(\omega)$ for positive frequency

$$D(\omega) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } 0 \le \omega \le \omega_c \\ 0, & \text{if } \omega_c < \omega \le \omega_s/2. \end{cases} \tag{3.1}$$

Figure 3.1 also depicts the specification for an ordinary (not ideal) digital filter, and in such case: $0 \le f \le f_p$-passband, $f_p < f < f_z$-transitionband and $f_z \le f \le f_s/2$ -stopband. Additionally there are defined: $\delta_p$-ripple in the passband, $\delta_z$-ripple in the stopband. With these defined parameters of the filter specification, it is possible to find a desired transmittance for a digital circuit. In the same way specifications are defined for high pass, passband and bandstop digital filters.

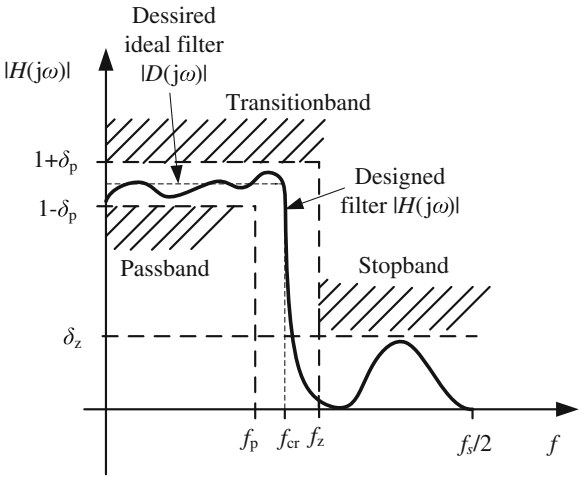



**Fig. 3.1** Magnitude response specifications of low-pass digital filter

### *3.2.2 Finite Impulse Response Digital Filters*

One of the simplest digital filters is a filter based on the moving average idea, briefly described in Chap. 1. A block diagram of such a third-order filter is shown in Fig. 3.2. This is a simple type of digital filter, which is defined by the linear formula

$$y(n) = b_0x(n) + b_1x(n-1) + b_2x(n-2) + b_3x(n-3) = \sum_{k=0}^{3} b_kx(n-k). \quad (3.2)$$

The coefficients $b_k$ are the constant of the filter (for time-invariant circuit), $x(n-k)$ is the input data (input sample) and $y(n)$ the output.

The transfer function of $N$-order FIR filter

$$H(z) = \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} = b_0 + b_1z^{-1} + b_2z^{-2} + \cdots + b_Nz^{-N} = \sum_{k=0}^{N} b_kz^{-k}. \quad (3.3)$$

The block diagram of $N$-order digital FIR filter is depicted in Fig. 3.3. Today, there are lot of microprocessors which enable the implementation of operations in parallel, which makes the implementation of algorithms determined by a time critical path. A critical path for digital signal processing circuits is a list of all sequential operations required to calculate the output signal. A typical circuit of FIR filter realization is depicted in Fig. 3.4. In the diagram, the critical path realization is marked by a dotted line, and it contains one multiplication and $N+1$ additions. The remaining operations can be performed in parallel to the operations from the critical path. The critical path is the longest necessary path through a digital circuit when taking into respect

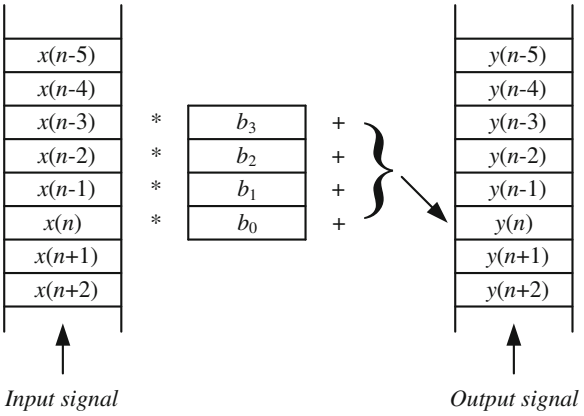



**Fig. 3.2** The block diagram nonrecursive digital filter

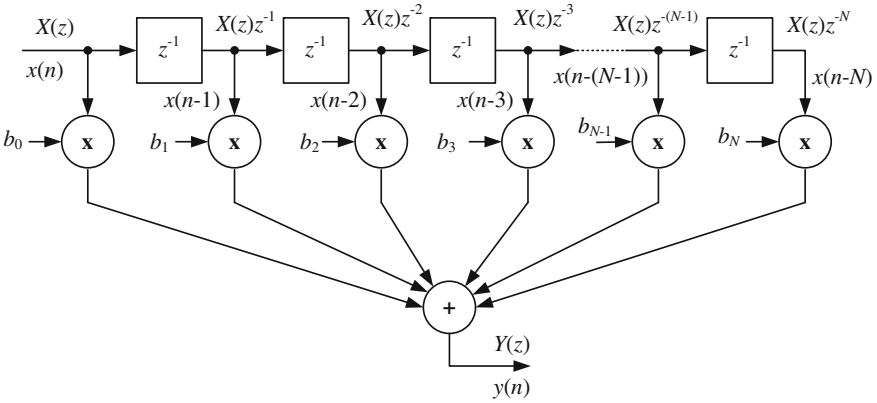



**Fig. 3.3** The block diagram of $N$-order digital FIR filter

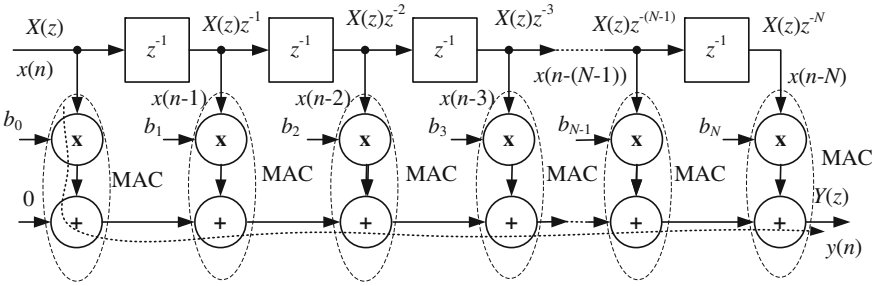



**Fig. 3.4** Realization of $N$-order digital FIR filter

its interdependencies. It should be noted, however, that modern signal processors are designed for the implementation of FIR filters, so they can execute in a single cycle multiplication, accumulation operations, and two transfer operations. Thus, the critical path can contain the full implementation of the FIR filter.

FIR filters have many advantages such as: guaranteed stability, linear phase response, simplicity, therefore they are used in many different fields. However, the main drawback of such filters is the necessity of using high order (even several hundred), finally signal delay is equal to $N$ samples.

### 3.2.3 Infinite Impulse Response Digital Filters

In infinite impulse response (IIR), digital filters not only input samples $x(n)$ are used for computing the output signal $y(n)$, but also other samples of output. This kind of filter is shown in Fig. 3.5. The output signal is calculated as follows

$$\begin{aligned} y(n) =& b_0 x(n) + b_1 x(n-1) + b_2 x(n-2) + b_3 x(n-3) \\ &+ a_1 y(n-1) + a_2 y(n-2) + a_3 y(n-3) \\ =& \sum_{k=0}^{3} b_k x(n-k) + \sum_{k=1}^{3} a_k y(n-k). \end{aligned} \tag{3.4}$$

Generally, the digital linear time-invariant circuit (system) (LTI) can be described by the transfer function

$$H(z) = \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} = \frac{b_0 + b_1 z^{-1} + b_2 z^{-2} + \cdots + b_N z^{-N}}{1 + a_1 z^{-1} + a_2 z^{-2} + \cdots + a_M z^{-M}}. \tag{3.5}$$

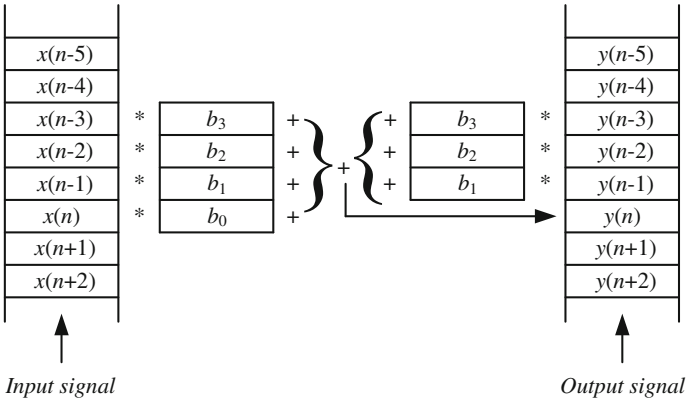



**Fig. 3.5** The block diagram of recursive digital filter

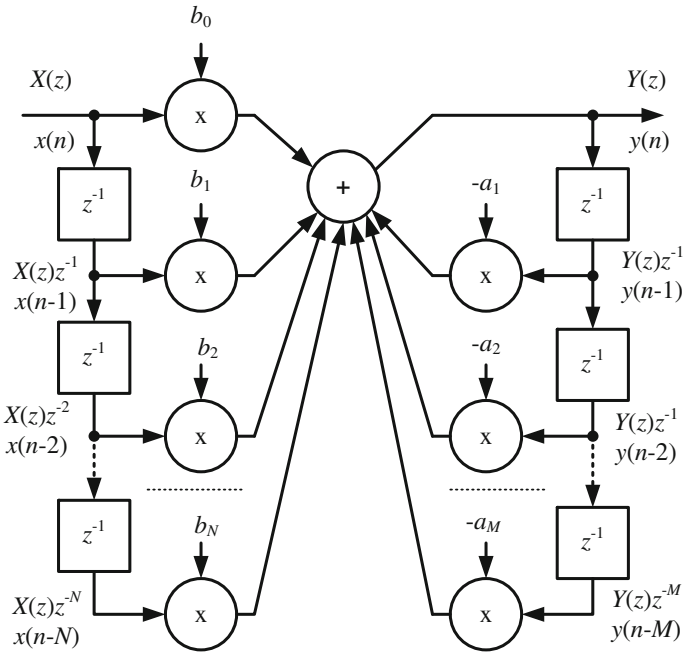



**Fig. 3.6** The block diagram of a direct form digital LTI circuit

The order of such a circuit is determined by $\max(N, M)$. The block diagram direct form of such a circuit realization is shown in Fig. 3.6. The output signal can be calculated as follows

$$\begin{aligned} Y(z) =& \left(b_0 X(z) + b_1 X(z)z^{-1} + b_2 X(z)z^{-2} + \cdots + b_N X(z)z^{n-N}\right) \\ & - \left(a_1 Y(z)z^{-1} + a_2 Y(z)z^{-2} + \cdots + a_M Y(z)z^{-M}\right) \\ =& \sum_{k=0}^{N} b_k X(z)z^{-k} - \sum_{k=1}^{M} a_k Y(z)z^{-k}, \end{aligned} \tag{3.6}$$

or using the equivalent difference equation

$$\begin{aligned} y(n) =& (b_0 x(n) + b_1 x(n-1) + b_2 x(n-2) + \cdots + b_N x(n-N)) \\ & - (a_1 y(n-1) + a_2 y(n-2) + \cdots + a_M y(n-N)) \\ =& \sum_{k=0}^{N} b_k x(n-k) - \sum_{k=0}^{M} a_k y(n-k). \end{aligned} \tag{3.7}$$

Notation $x(n)$ is a simplified form of the full form $x(nT_s)$, but it is commonly used for the sake of simplicity. However, note that $n$ represents the number of samples and that for uniform sampling systems, the distance between two samples is equal to the sampling period $T_s$. The filter structure shown in Fig. 3.6 is numerically inefficient,

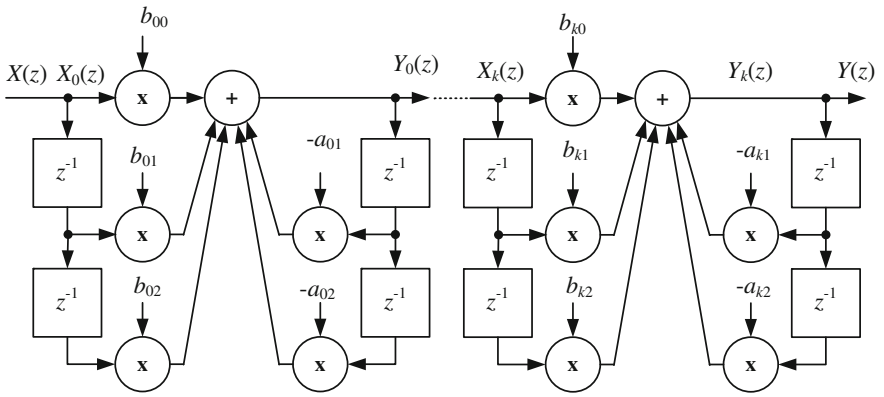



**Fig. 3.7** The block diagram of $N$-order cascade digital IIR filter

especially for higher order, therefore the structure should be transferred to the $K+1$ cascade connection of the second-order section

$$H(z) = \frac{\sum_{k=0}^{N} b_k z^{-k}}{1 + \sum_{k=1}^{N} a_k z^{-k}} = \prod_{k=0}^{K} \frac{b_{k0} + b_{k1} z^{-1} + b_{k2} z^{-2}}{a_{k0} + a_{k1} z^{-1} + a_{k2} z^{-2}}, \tag{3.8}$$

where $K = N/2$ for even value of $N$ and $K = (N+1)/2$ for odd value of $N$.

The block diagram of $N$-order digital cascade IIR filter is depicted in Fig. 3.7.

Accordingly with the occurrence of feedback in the IIR filters, they are not always stable, and therefore their stability must always be tested. Instability of IIR filters can also result from the limited precision of arithmetic, so the implementation of such a filter must be carefully checked. In Table 3.1 there is presented a comparison of FIR and IIR filters.

**Table 3.1** Comparison of digital filters

| Feature | FIR | IIR |
|---|---|---|
| Typical order $N$ | 20–500 | 1–8 |
| Stability | Always | Should be considered |
| Phase response | Linear | Nonlinear |
| Delay | $N$-samples | Moderate |
| Group delay | $N/2$-samples | Moderate |
| Length of buffer | $N$ | $2N$ |
| Limit cycles | No | Possible |
| Implementation | Very easy | Moderate |
| Parallel realization | Very easy | Possible |

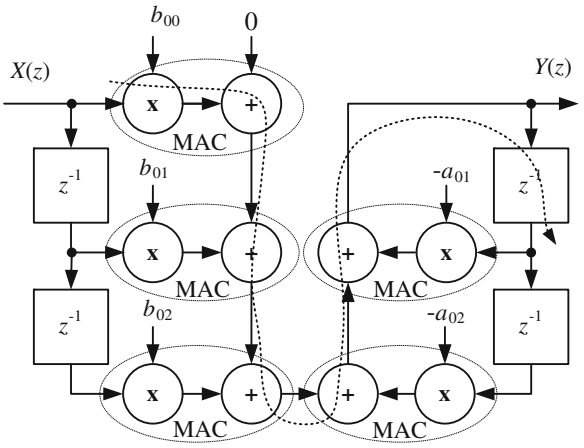



**Fig. 3.8** The realization diagram of a second-order section of IIR filter

A realization block diagram of second-order IIR filter with marked critical path is depicted in Fig. 3.8. The critical path consists of one multiplication, five additions, and one delay. Similar to the FIR filter, the remaining operations can be performed in parallel to the operations from the critical path. However, using digital signal processors it is possible to perform multiplication, accumulation (MAC), and two transfer operations in a single machine cycle.

### *3.2.4 Designing of Digital IIR Filters*

In the process of designing digital IIR filters, one of the best design methods is based on an analog filter prototype. Fortunately, today many tools are available for the design and implementation of digital filters (Filter Design Toolbox in the Matlab, QEDesign from Momentum Data System etc.), hence designers have an easier task, but it does not absolve them from the task of understanding the phenomena occurring in digital filters. The block diagram of a IIR filter design process is depicted in Fig. 3.9. There are several types of analog-to-digital transformations: backward difference approximation, forward difference approximation, impulse invariant method, bilinear transform (also known as Tustin's method), and matched Z-transformation. This transformation is widely described in the literature [48, 50, 51, 58, 70]. From among those listed the most useful and versatile is bilinear transform. The bilinear transform allows a stable continuous system mapping to a stable discrete system, with stability in the discrete domain meaning that there are no system poles that lie outside the unit circle in the z-plane. This process is illustrated in Fig. 3.10.

For bilinear transform, the first-order Pade approximation is used for $z^{-1}$ instead of a first-order series approximation, then

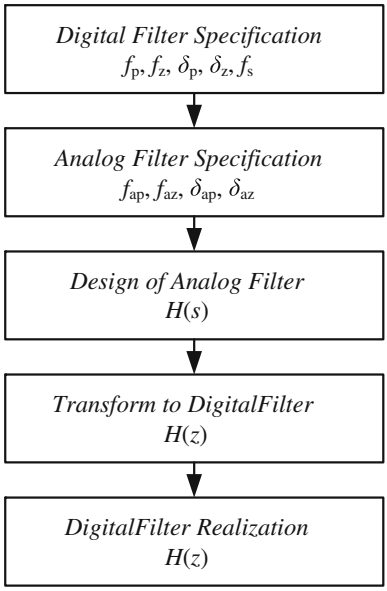



**Fig. 3.9** IIR filter design

$$z^{-1} = e^{-sT_s} \approx \frac{1 - \frac{T_s}{2}s}{1 + \frac{T_s}{2}s} \Rightarrow s = \frac{2}{T_s}\frac{1 - z^{-1}}{1 + z^{-1}}. \tag{3.9}$$

where $T_s$ is sampling period.

The bilinear transform maps the left-half of the s-plane to the entire unit circle in the z-plane. In this sense, it is a better approximation to use, although it still does not preserve the frequency response characteristics of the original z-transform.

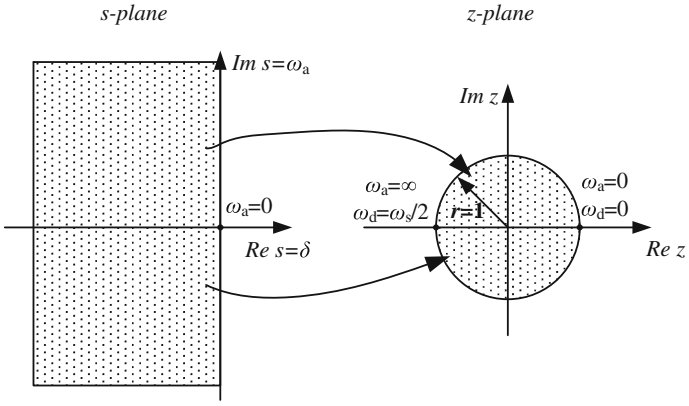



**Fig. 3.10** The bilinear transform

The nonlinear relation between analog frequency $\omega_a$ and digital frequency $\omega_d$ is determined by formula

$$\omega_d = \frac{2}{T_s} \arctan\left(\omega_a \frac{T_s}{2}\right). \tag{3.10}$$

During the design process, special attention should be paid to the nonlinear transfer of analog to digital frequency. This is especially important for higher frequency. So correction of frequency should be made.

## 3.3 Lattice Wave Digital Filters

In the 1960s, Fettweis [29, 30] developed the idea of transferring to the digital domain not only the analog transfer function but also the structure of the passive analog filter. These filters have been named wave digital filters (WDF).

WDFs are known to have many advantageous properties [19, 21, 30, 32, 34, 35, 45, 46, 80]. They have a relatively low passband sensitivity to coefficients, small rounding errors, high resistivity to parasitic oscillations (limit cycles), great dynamic range, a low level of rounding noise, and the ability to recover effective pseudopower, normally lost in the processes of interpolation and decimation, etc.

WDFs can be divided into two basic types, leader and lattice. Especially, worth considering are the lattice wave digital filters. Lattice wave digital filters are built with two blocks realizing allpass functions $S_1(z)$ and $S_2(z)$. Typically, blocks $S_1(z)$ and $S_2(z)$ are realized by a cascade of first- and second-order allpass sections (Fig. 3.11). The transfer function of a lattice WDF can be written as

$$H(z) = 0.5(S_1(z) + S_2(z)). \tag{3.11}$$

These allpass filters can be realized in several ways described in [30, 32, 37]. One approach that yields parallel and modular filter algorithms is the use of cascaded first- and second-order sections. A detailed block diagram of $N$-order lattice WDF is shown in Fig. 3.12. The lattice WDF consists of one first and a few second-order allpass sections.

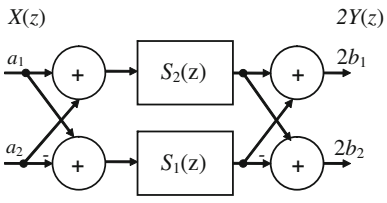



**Fig. 3.11** Simplified block diagram of lattice wave digital filter

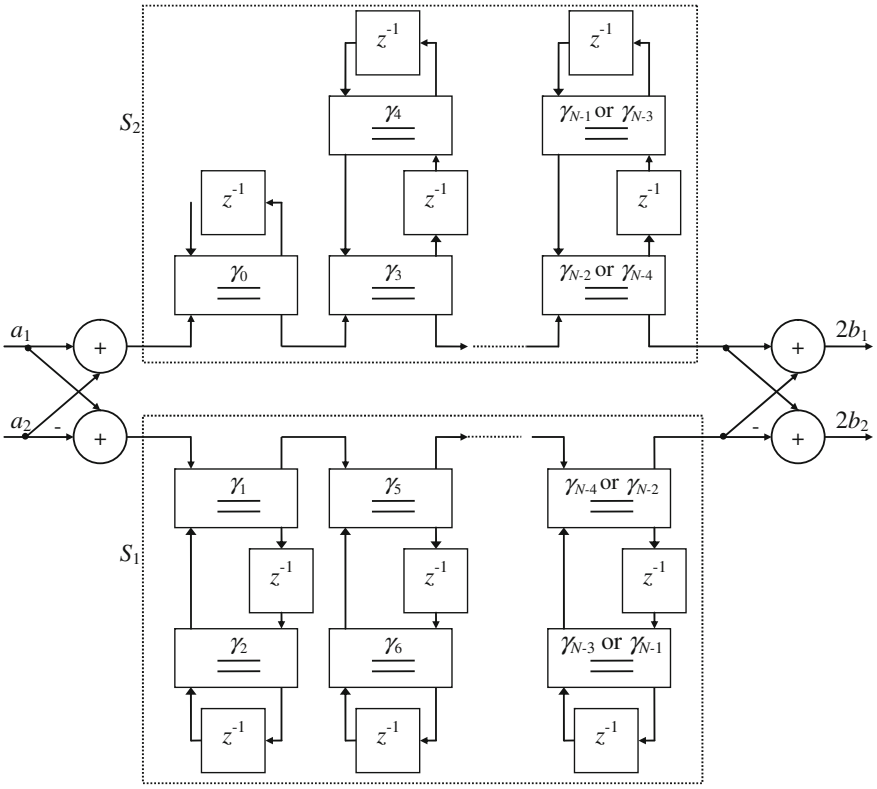



**Fig. 3.12** $N$-order lattice WDF

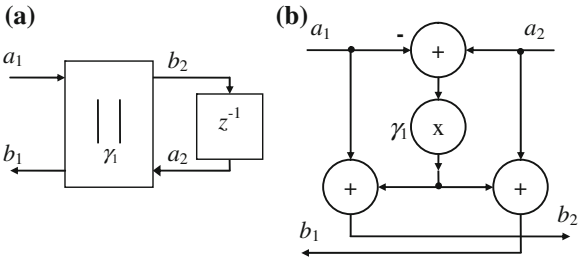



**Fig. 3.13** Block diagram of classical first-order allpass section: **a** allpass filter, **b** two-port adaptor

The first- and second-order allpass sections are here realized using symmetric two-port adaptors. Wave digital filters were proposed in 1970s when multiplication was a quite expensive operation. For this reason, they were designed with the minimum number of multipliers. A typical classical two-port adaptor is depicted in Fig. 3.13b. It requires a single multiplier and three adders. Typical classical two-port adaptors

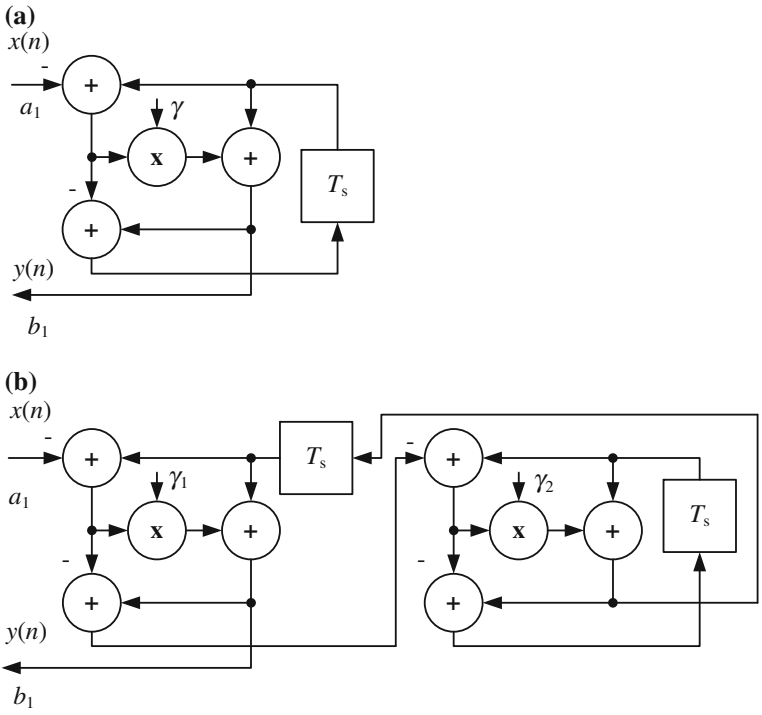



**Fig. 3.14** Allpass classic sections: **a** first-order, **b** second-order

used for building allpass sections are depicted in Fig. 3.14. Reflection signals $b_1$ and $b_2$ for first-order allpass section (Fig. 3.14a) can be calculated by

$$\begin{cases} b_1 = -\gamma_1 a_1 + (1+\gamma_1)a_2 \\ b_2 = (1-\gamma_1)a_1 + \gamma_1 + a_2\,. \end{cases} \tag{3.12}$$

The transfer function of the first-order allpass section is given by

$$H(z) = \frac{-\gamma + z^{-1}}{1-\gamma z^{-1}}. \tag{3.13}$$

The second-order allpass classical filter is shown in Fig. 3.14b. The transfer function of such a filter is given by

$$H(z) = \frac{-\gamma_1 + (\gamma_1\gamma_2 - \gamma_2)z^{-1} + z^{-2}}{1 + (\gamma_1\gamma_2 - \gamma_2)z^{-1} - \gamma_1 z^{-2}}. \tag{3.14}$$

The LWDF design methods and algorithms are very well described by Gazsi [37]. Using these methods, the Delft University of Technology has prepared a very useful tool for designing wave digital filters, (L)WDF Toolbox for the Matlab [7, 8].

### 3.3.1 Comparison of Classical IIR Filter and Lattice Wave Digital Filter

Typically, IIR digital filters are implemented by dividing them into second-order sections (Fig. 3.7). In order to compare the implementation of IIR filters, two 3-order Butterworth filters were designed with the parameters: crossover frequency $f_{cr} = 50$ Hz, sampling frequency $f_s = 10000$ Hz. A classical IIR filter was designed using the standard Matlab tools. Figure 3.15 shows the scheme of such a filter, the filter is implemented using two SOS sections. The values of the filter coefficients are shown in Table 3.2. Filter coefficients appear to be useful for fixed-point implementation. However, note the small differences between the values of $b_{00}$ and $b_{01}$, as well as the small value of the scaling factor $k$.

Using the (L)WDF Toolbox for the Matlab [7, 8, 26] an LWDF with the same parameters was also designed. A block diagram of the implementation of such a filter is shown in Fig. 3.16. The values of coefficients are shown in Table 3.3. As can be

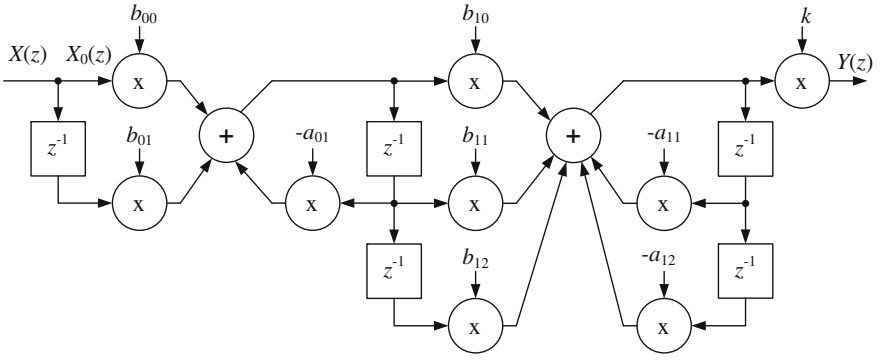



**Fig. 3.15** 3-Order IIR filter

**Table 3.2** 3-Order Butterworth digital filter coefficients

| Section | $n = 0$ | $n = 1$ |
|---|---|---|
| $b_{n0}$ | 1.000000000 | 1.000000000 |
| $b_{n1}$ | 0.999990222 | 2.000009777 |
| $b_{n2}$ | 0 | 1.000009778 |
| $a_{n1}$ | −0.969067417 | −1.968103311 |
| $a_{n2}$ | 0 | 0.969074930 |
| $k$ | $3.756838019 \times 10^{-6}$ | |

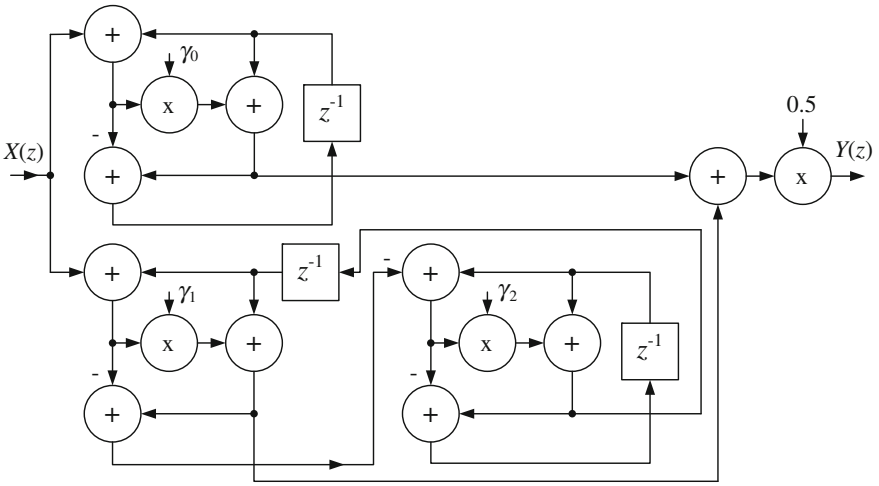



**Fig. 3.16** 3-Order LWDF

**Table 3.3** 3-Order Butterworth LWDF coefficients

| $\gamma$ | Value |
|---|---|
| $\gamma_0$ | 0.969069850 |
| $\gamma_1$ | −0.969077362 |
| $\gamma_2$ | 0.999506639 |

seen, the values of filter coefficients are aligned and are well suited for fixed-point implementation. The advantages of such implementation are revealed also in the floating-point implementation.

### *3.3.2 Realization of LWDF*

Two classic first-order allpass sections are shown in Fig. 3.17a and b. They require a single multiplication, three additions and one delay. For both allpass sections critical paths are marked.

These two versions have different lengths of critical paths. The critical path of the first-order allpass section in Fig. 3.17a consists of a single multiplication, two additions and one delay, while that in Fig. 3.17b consists of a single multiplication, three additions and one delay. So the first version is better for implementation in a digital signal processor with a parallel instruction set. Figure 3.18 shows the author's realization of classical first-order sections using SHARC DSP. For this realization, five machine cycles of SHARC DSP are needed.

The second-order allpass section in Fig. 3.19 consists of two multiplication, six addition, and two delays. The critical path of the second-order allpass section consists

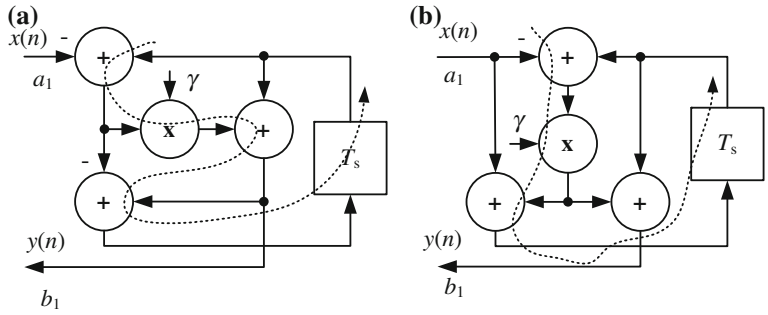



**Fig. 3.17** Critical paths of first-order allpass classic sections: **a**, **b** two realizations of a two-port adaptor

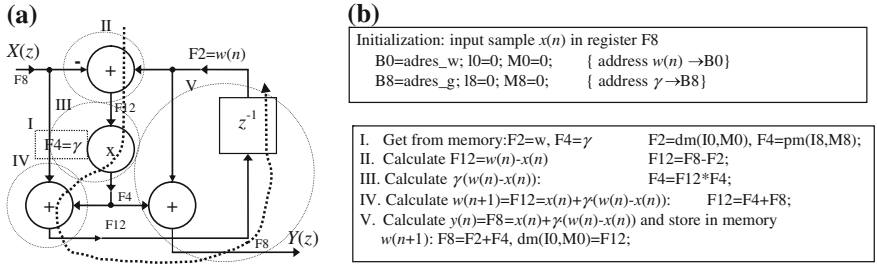



**Fig. 3.18** Realization of classical first-order sections using SHARC DSP: **a** block diagram, **b** corresponding assembler program

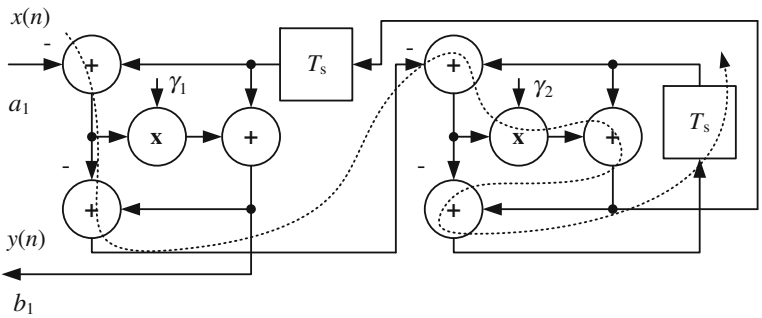



**Fig. 3.19** Critical path of second-order allpass classic section

of a single multiplication, five addition, and one delay. Looking at the block diagrams of the first- and second-order sections, it can be seen that they are not well suited for modern digital signal processors. Considerations of LWDFs effective implementation can be found in the works of Fettweis [33], the author [63, 69], author and Dabrowski [23], Vesterbacka [78, 79], Wanhammar [80].

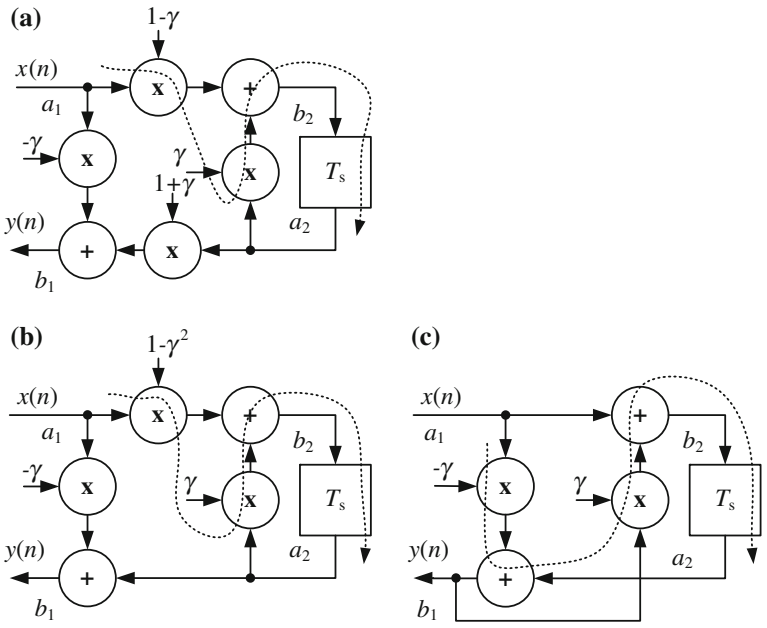



**Fig. 3.20** Modified first-order allpass section: **a** with four multiplications, **b** with three multiplications, **c** with two multiplications

Using Eq. (3.12) describing the two-port adaptor, the block diagram can be converted to the form shown in Fig. 3.20a, so that the adaptor is obtained for the realization needed to perform four multiplications and two additions. By using the identity transformation of the circuit from Fig. 3.20a 5.20 modifications are made to give an adapter with three multiplications and two additions, shown in Fig. 3.20b. The adaptor (Fig. 3.20b) requires the placement of an additional coefficient $1 - \gamma$ and is particularly suitable for the implementation of floating point. Further transformation of the structure in search of an adaptor with compensated addition and multiplication values led to an adapter for the system as in Fig. 3.20c with such goals.

Wave digital filters were proposed by Fettweis in 1970s, i.e., [30, 32, 34], when multiplication was a very expensive operation. That is why they were originally designed to minimize the number of multipliers. This is still advantageous if the filter is implemented in a simple digital hardware structure, such as μC, μP, FPGA, ASIC, etc., but can be undesirable for realizations with modern digital signal processors (DSP's). In typical DSP's, a single computing cycle consists of a multiplication combined with accumulation and to/from memory data moving operations. As a result, a single addition also requires one computing cycle. This is a disadvantage for implementing WDF's by modern digital signal processors, especially with floating-point arithmetic.

## 3.4 Modified Lattice Wave Digital Filters

Today, modern digital signal processors are designed to be able to calculate multiplication together with addition (or more) in a single operational cycle. As a result, the classical two-port adaptor structure of Fig. 3.14 is ineffective for the DSP realization, especially for floating-point arithmetic. This is why modified structures have been proposed. The idea of modified wave digital filters, i.e., those with equal numbers of additions and multiplications and with short critical paths were proposed by Fettweis in [33]. This idea has been developed by the author with implementations of modified lattice wave digital filters (MLWDF) for digital signal processors [62, 63].

### *3.4.1 First-Order Sections*

Figure 3.21a illustrates the idea of modified wave digital filters by including two additional complementary multipliers in the first-order allpass section. Signals $a_1$ and $b_1$ are modified by coefficients $k_{w1}$ and $k_{d1}$, and

$$a_1 = k_{w1} a_1', \quad b_1 = k_{w1} b_1'. \tag{3.15}$$

Signals $b_1'$ and $b_2$ of the modified two-port adaptor (Fig. 3.21c) may be expressed:

$$\begin{cases} b_1' = -\gamma_{11} a_1' + \gamma_{11} a_2 \\ b_2 = \gamma_{21} a_1 + \gamma_{22} a_2, \end{cases} \tag{3.16}$$

in which coefficients $\gamma_{ij}$ are given by

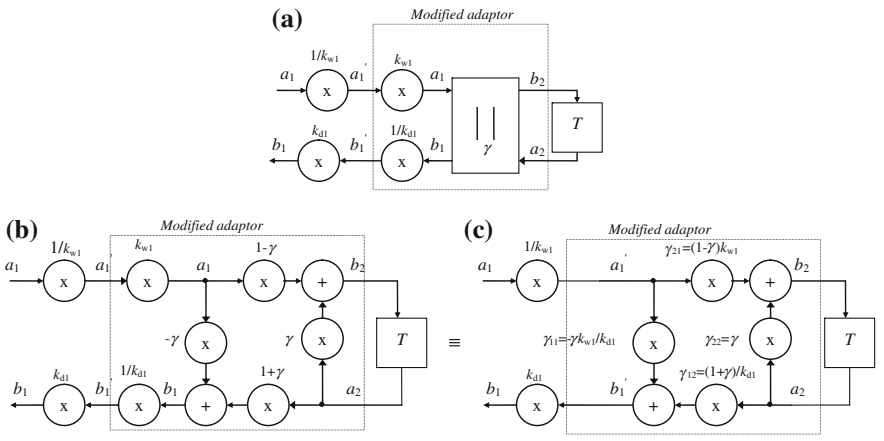



**Fig. 3.21** Diagrams of first-order modified allpass sections: **a** idea, **b** and **c** realization

$$\begin{cases} \gamma_{11} = -\gamma \dfrac{k_{w1}}{k_{d1}} \\ \gamma_{12} = \dfrac{1+\gamma}{k_{d1}} \\ \gamma_{21} = \dfrac{1-\gamma}{k_{w1}} \\ \gamma_{22} = \gamma. \end{cases} \tag{3.17}$$

For the adaptor shown in Fig. 3.21c it is possible to select the value of coefficients $k_{w1}$ and $k_{d1}$, so that the values of the two $\gamma$ coefficients are equal to one. Three cases for the realization of modified two-port adaptors are possible [62, 63]. They are described by the equations listed in Table 3.4 and they are depicted in Fig. 3.22b, c, d.

**Table 3.4** Coefficients for modified adaptor

| Case 1 for $\gamma_{21}=1, \gamma_{12}=1$ | Case 2 for $\gamma_{11}=1, \gamma_{12}=1$ | Case 3 for $\gamma_{11}=1, \gamma_{21}=1$ |
|---|---|---|
| $\begin{cases} k_{w1} = \dfrac{1}{1-\gamma} \\ k_{d1} = 1+\gamma \end{cases}$ | $\begin{cases} k_{w1} = -\dfrac{1+\gamma}{\gamma} \\ k_{d1} = 1+\gamma \end{cases}$ | $\begin{cases} k_{w1} = \dfrac{1}{1-\gamma} \\ k_{d1} = -\dfrac{\gamma}{1-\gamma} \end{cases}$ |
| $\begin{cases} \gamma_{11} = -\dfrac{\gamma}{1-\gamma^2} \\ \gamma_{12} = 1 \\ \gamma_{21} = 1 \\ \gamma_{22} = \gamma \end{cases}$ | $\begin{cases} \gamma_{11} = 1 \\ \gamma_{12} = 1 \\ \gamma_{21} = -\dfrac{1-\gamma^2}{\gamma} \\ \gamma_{22} = \gamma \end{cases}$ | $\begin{cases} \gamma_{11} = 1 \\ \gamma_{12} = -\dfrac{1-\gamma^2}{\gamma} \\ \gamma_{21} = 1 \\ \gamma_{22} = \gamma \end{cases}$ |

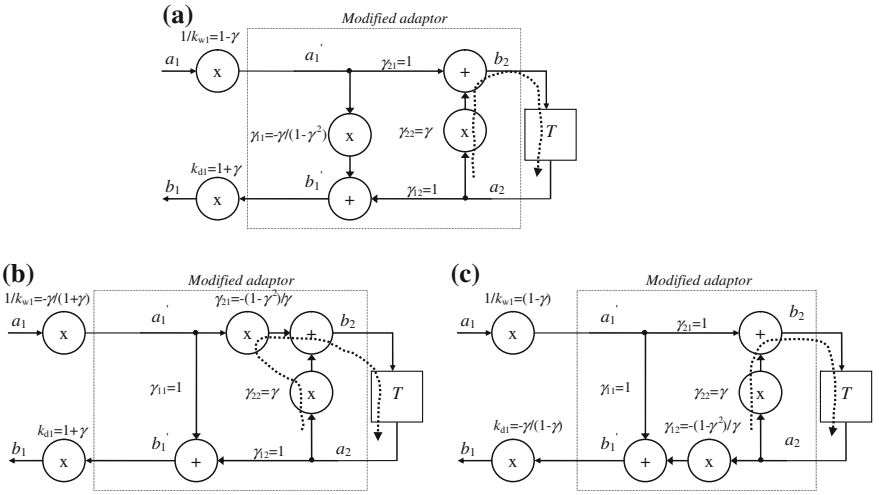



**Fig. 3.22** Diagrams of first-order modified allpass sections: **a** case 1, **b** case 2, **c** case 3

Every realization needs five operations: two multiplications, two additions, and one delay. In cases 1 and 3, the critical path consists of only two arithmetic operations and one delay. Realization of modified first-order sections using SHARC DSP is shown in Fig. 3.23.

Using this first-order section it is possible to build a branch of the lattice wave digital filter, and the realization of an $N$-order branch with modified first-order sections is depicted in Fig. 3.24 [62, 63]. The resulting value of the overall branch coefficient can be calculated as

$$\gamma_s = \prod_{n=1}^{N} \frac{k_{dn}}{k_{wn}}. \tag{3.18}$$

A block diagram of MLWDF is shown in Fig. 3.25.

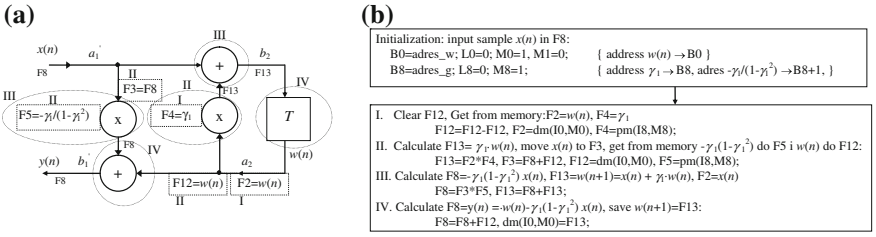



**Fig. 3.23** Realization of modified first-order sections using SHARC DSP: **a** block diagram, **b** corresponding assembler program

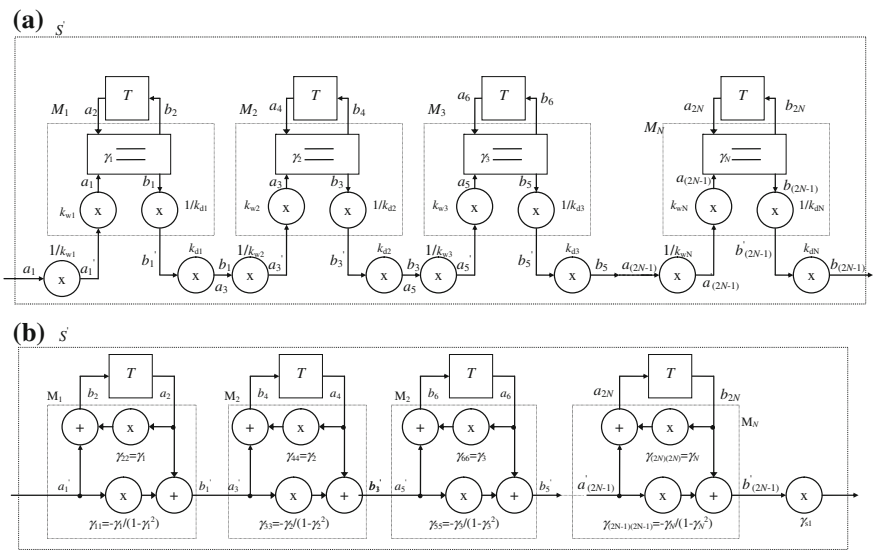



**Fig. 3.24** Diagram of the $N$-order branch of the lattice wave digital filter realized by first-order sections: **a** idea, **b** realization

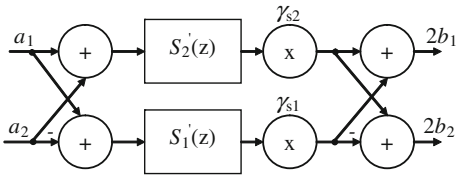



**Fig. 3.25** Block diagram of modified lattice wave digital filter

### *3.4.2 Second-Order Sections*

A second-order all-pass section is the next circuit which is necessary to build a MLWDF. A classical scheme of second-order allpass filter, consisting of a connection of two classic adapters $K_1$ and $K_2$, is shown in Fig. 3.26a. In the diagram, to preserve the symmetry, the delay block $T$ is divided between two delays $T/2$ [29]. Substituting pairs of bireciprocal coefficients (shown in Fig. 3.26b) there are obtained system of connected two modified first-order allpass sections. A detailed diagram of this connection is shown in Fig. 3.26c, in which two classical two-port adapters are used, described as follows for $K_1$

$$\begin{cases} b_1 = -\gamma_1 a_1 + (1+\gamma_{11})a_2 \\ b_2 = (1-\gamma_1)a_1 + \gamma_1 a_2, \end{cases} \tag{3.19}$$

and for $K_2$

$$\begin{cases} b_3 = -\gamma_2 a_3 + (1+\gamma_2)a_4 \\ b_4 = (1-\gamma_2)a_3 + \gamma_2 a_4. \end{cases} \tag{3.20}$$

Signals of modified $M_1$ and $M_2$ adaptors for the system shown in Fig. 3.26d are determined for $M1$ by

$$\begin{cases} a_1' = \dfrac{1}{k_{w1}} a_1 \\ b_1' = \dfrac{1}{k_{w1}} b_1, \end{cases} \tag{3.21}$$

and for $M_2$

$$\begin{cases} a_3' = \dfrac{1}{k_{w3}} a_1 \\ b_3' = \dfrac{1}{k_{d2}} b_3 \\ a_4' = \dfrac{1}{k_{w1}} a_4 \\ b_4' = \dfrac{1}{k_{d1}} b_4. \end{cases} \tag{3.22}$$

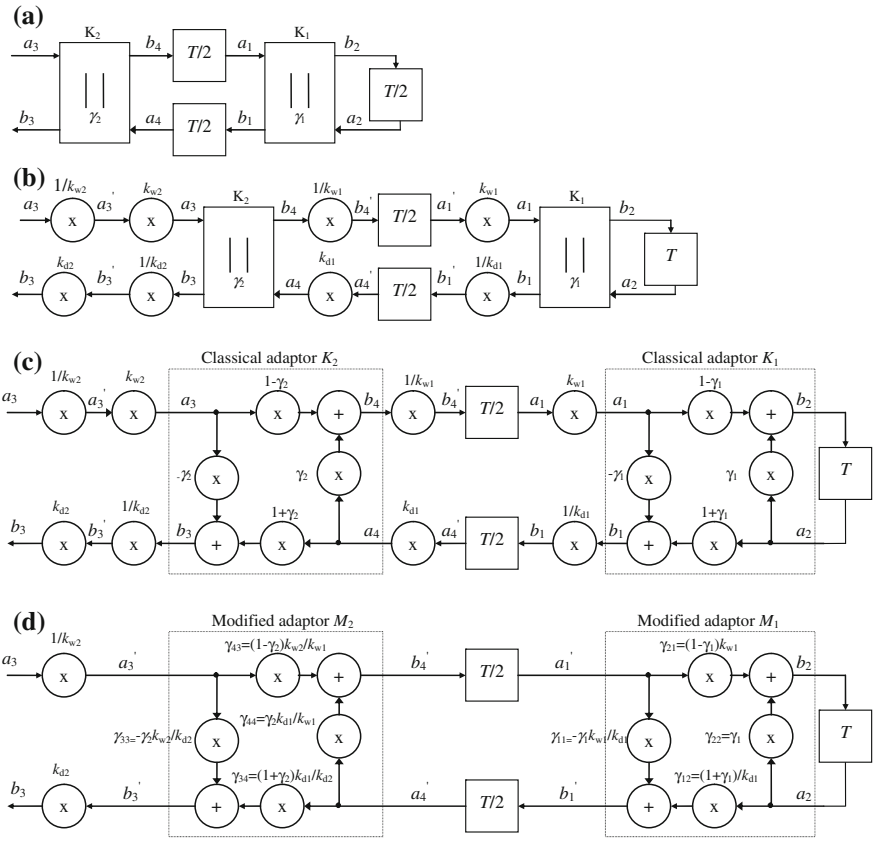



**Fig. 3.26** Block diagrams of second-order allpass sections: **a** classical, **b**, **c**, **d** modified

Substituting according to Eqs. (3.19) and (3.20), Eqs. (3.21) and (3.22) give the equations describing the modified second-order allpass sections [63, 62], and adaptor $M_1$ is defined by the relationship

$$\begin{cases} b_1' = \overbrace{-\gamma_1 \frac{k_{w1}}{k_{d1}}}^{\gamma_{11}} a_1' + \overbrace{(1+\gamma_1)\frac{1}{k_{d1}}}^{\gamma_{12}} a_2 \\ b_2 = \overbrace{(1-\gamma_1)k_{w1}}^{\gamma_{21}} a_1' + \overbrace{\gamma_1}^{\gamma_{22}} a_2, \end{cases} \tag{3.23}$$

and adaptor $M_2$

$$\begin{cases} b'_3 = \overbrace{-\gamma_2 \frac{k_{w1}}{k_{d2}}}^{\gamma_{33}} a'_3 + \overbrace{(1+\gamma_2)\frac{k_{d1}}{k_{d2}}}^{\gamma_{34}} a'_4, \\ b'_4 = \underbrace{(1-\gamma_2)\frac{k_{w2}}{k_{w1}}}_{\gamma_{43}} a'_3 + \underbrace{\gamma_2 \frac{k_{d1}}{k_{w1}}}_{\gamma_{44}} a_2. \end{cases} \tag{3.24}$$

A detailed diagram of a second-order allpass section composed of modified two-port adaptors is shown in Fig. 3.26d. The rule to eliminate two multipliers in $M_1$ adaptor is the same as for first-order. This is possible for the three cases described in Table 3.4 and is shown in Fig. 3.21. However, for $M_2$ adapter for given $k_{w1}$ and $k_{d1}$ coefficients it is possible to calculate $\gamma$ coefficients for the three cases as described in Table 3.5.

Using three choices for the adapter $M_1$ and three for adaptor $M_2$, there are obtained nine feasibility allpass sections of the second order. However, the author has realized three basic modified second-order allpass sections restricted to identical cases for $M_1$ and $M_2$. Figure 3.27 shows diagrams of modified second-order allpass sections. They need four multiplications, four additions and two delays. Equations for modified second-order allpass sections are described in Table 3.6.

## 3.5 Linear-Phase IIR Filters

In many applications it is desirable to use a linear phase shift filter, a condition which is satisfied by the typical FIR filters. However, the FIR filters require very large orders (hundreds), which result in a very large computational load. So it is attractive to use IIR filters with linear phase shift. The aim of a linear phase IIR filter is to obtain higher computational efficiency than that offered by FIR filters at similar performance levels.

**Table 3.5** Coefficients for modified adaptor $M_2$

| Case 1 for $\gamma_{34}=1, \gamma_{43}=1$ | Case 2 for $\gamma_{33}=1, \gamma_{24}=1$ | Case 3 for $\gamma_{33}=1, \gamma_{43}=1$ |
|---|---|---|
| $\begin{cases} k_{w2} = k_{w1}\dfrac{1}{1-\gamma_2} \\ k_{d2} = k_{d2}(1+\gamma_2) \end{cases}$ | $\begin{cases} k_{w1} = -k_{d1}\dfrac{1+\gamma_2}{\gamma_2} \\ k_{d1} = k_{d1}(1+\gamma_2) \end{cases}$ | $\begin{cases} k_{w2} = k_{w1}\dfrac{1}{1-\gamma_2} \\ k_{d1} = -k_{w1}\dfrac{\gamma_2}{1-\gamma_2} \end{cases}$ |
| $\begin{cases} \gamma_{33} = -\dfrac{k_{w1}}{k_{d1}}\dfrac{\gamma_2}{1-\gamma_2^2} \\ \gamma_{34} = 1 \\ \gamma_{43} = 1 \\ \gamma_{44} = \gamma_2\dfrac{k_{d1}}{k_{w1}} \end{cases}$ | $\begin{cases} \gamma_{33} = 1 \\ \gamma_{34} = 1 \\ \gamma_{43} = -\dfrac{k_{d1}}{k_{w1}}\dfrac{1-\gamma_2^2}{\gamma_2} \\ \gamma_{44} = \gamma_2\dfrac{k_{d1}}{k_{w1}} \end{cases}$ | $\begin{cases} \gamma_{33} = 1 \\ \gamma_{34} = -\dfrac{k_{d1}}{k_{w1}}\dfrac{1-\gamma_2^2}{\gamma_2} \\ \gamma_{43} = 1 \\ \gamma_{44} = \gamma\dfrac{k_{d1}}{k_{w1}} \end{cases}$ |

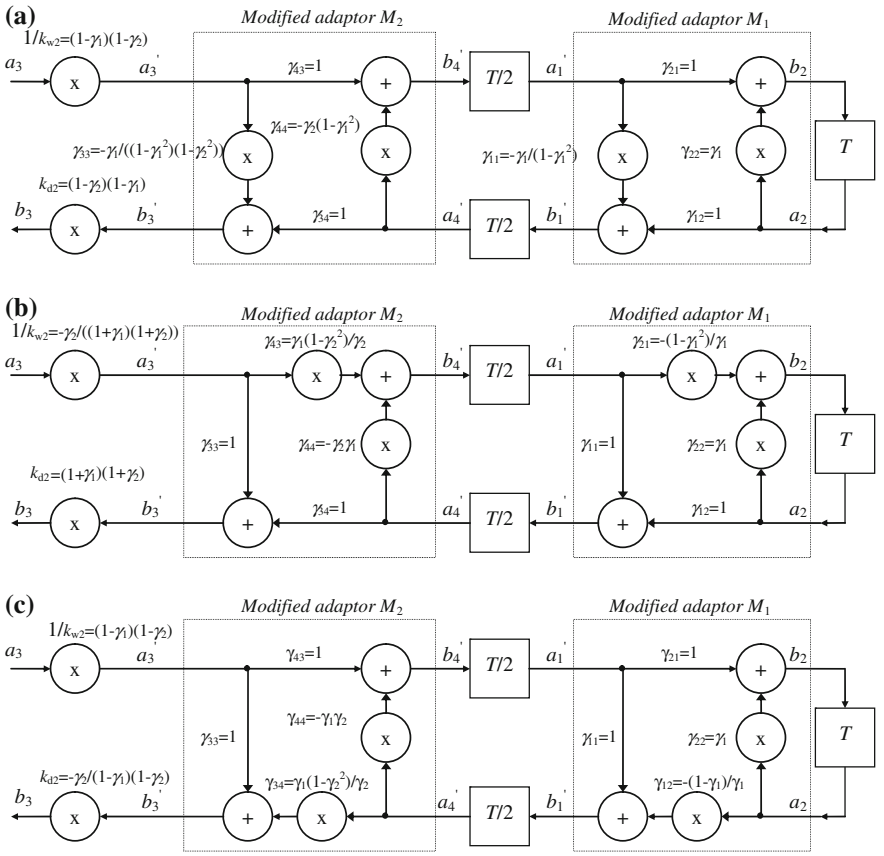



**Fig. 3.27** Block diagrams of second-order allpass sections: **a** case 11, **b** case 22, **c** case 33

**Table 3.6** Equations for modified second-order allpass sections

| Case 11 for $\gamma_{21}=1, \gamma_{12}=1$ $\gamma_{34}=1, \gamma_{43}=1$ | Case 22 for $\gamma_{11}=1, \gamma_{12}=1$ $\gamma_{33}=1, \gamma_{34}=1$ | Case 33 for $\gamma_{11}=1, \gamma_{21}=1$ $\gamma_{33}=1, \gamma_{43}=1$ |
|---|---|---|
| $\begin{cases} k_{w2}=\dfrac{1}{(1-\gamma_1)(1-\gamma_2)} \\ k_{d2}=(1-\gamma_1)(1-\gamma_2) \end{cases}$ | $\begin{cases} k_{w1}=-\dfrac{(1-\gamma_1)(1-\gamma_2)}{\gamma_2} \\ k_{d1}=(1+\gamma_1)(1+\gamma_2) \end{cases}$ | $\begin{cases} k_{w2}=\dfrac{1}{(1-\gamma_1)(1-\gamma_2)} \\ k_{d1}=-\dfrac{\gamma_2}{(1-\gamma_1)(1-\gamma_2)} \end{cases}$ |
| $\begin{cases} b_1'=-\dfrac{\gamma_1}{1-\gamma_1^2}a_1'+a_2 \\ b_2=a_1'+\gamma_1 a_2 \\ b_3'=-\dfrac{\gamma_2^2}{(1-\gamma_1)(1-\gamma_2^2)}a_3'+a_4' \\ b_4'=a_3'-\gamma_2(1-\gamma_1^2)a_4' \end{cases}$ | $\begin{cases} b_1'=a_1'+a_2 \\ b_2=\dfrac{1-\gamma_1^2}{\gamma_1^2}a_1'+\gamma_1 a_2 \\ b_3'=a_3'+a_4' \\ b_4'=\dfrac{\gamma_1(1-\gamma_2^2)}{\gamma_2}a_3'+\gamma_1\gamma_2 a_4' \end{cases}$ | $\begin{cases} b_1'=a_1'+\dfrac{1-\gamma_1^2}{\gamma_1}a_2 \\ b_2=a_1'+\gamma_1 a_2 \\ b_3'=a_3'+\dfrac{\gamma_1(1-\gamma_2^2)}{\gamma_2}a_4' \\ b_4'=a_3'-\gamma_1\gamma_2 a_4' \end{cases}$ |

In recent years, there has been a notable interest of real-time implementation of IIR filters having linear phase. Powell and Chau [57] have invented an efficient method for the design and realization of the real-time linear phase IIR filters using suitable modification of a well-known time reversing technique. This realization has been modified by Kurosu et. al to reduce signal delay [44]. Also, Azizi has patented a signal interpolator using a zero-phase filter [9, 10].

A method which allows for a simple implementation of the IIR filter with linear phase shift is a method with time reversal [18, 60] for realization of a noncausal IIR filter $H(z^{-1})$. Figure 3.28 shows two versions of the filter with linear phase shift: a filter in cascade connection (Fig. 3.28a) and a filter in parallel connection (Fig. 3.28b).

In the filter in the cascade connection input signal is passed through a filter $H(z)$, then the order of the samples is reversed and again passed through the filter $H(z)$, and then the order of samples is once again reversed. A block diagram of a filter running by this method is shown in Fig. 3.28a, the symbol TR determines time reversal. The TR circuit performs a reverse order of the signal samples. Of course, these methods of time reversal cannot be performed in real time, because we cannot reverse the flow of time. The implementation of such a system is only possible if the signal is divided into blocks of samples. However, there is a problem with connecting blocks of signal samples in the output signal. The filter $H(z)$ transient effects generate amplitude distortion at the end of signal samples blocks. To avoid this distortion an overlap technique with additional $N_{ov}$ samples can be used. If transient effects are bothersome in a given application, consider discarding $N_{ov}$ samples from the end each signal block. The first $H(z)$ filter works continuously and the second filter uses a block of samples and it is reset before every block. Figure 3.29 shows a realization diagram of such a linear phase IIR filter.

Time reversal can be described by

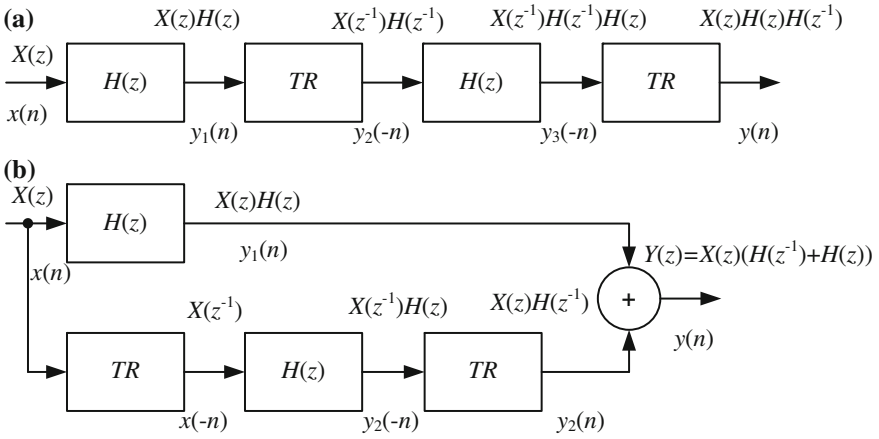



**Fig. 3.28** Two linear phase IIR filters: **a** cascade, **b** parallel

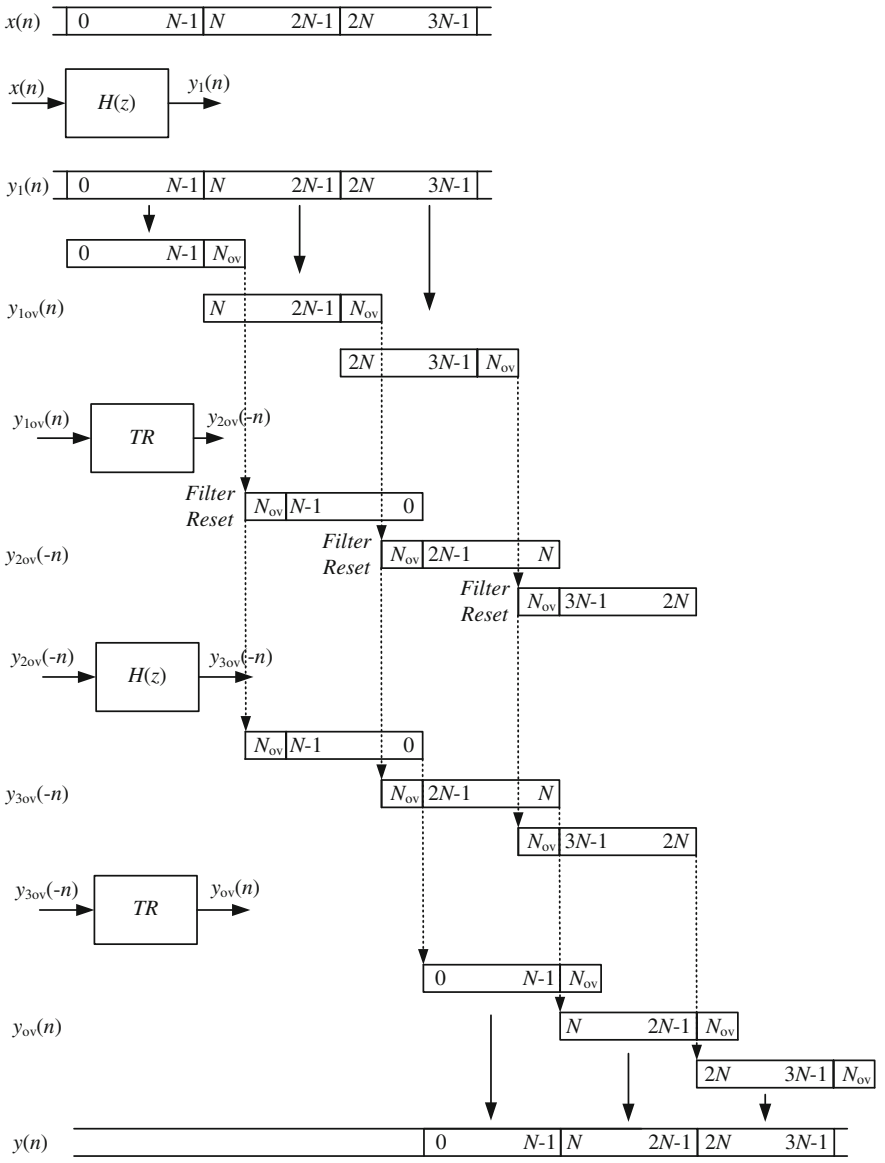



**Fig. 3.29** Realization of linear phase IIR filter

$$x(nT) \longrightarrow x(-nT), \tag{3.25}$$

and for z-transformation

$$X(z) \longrightarrow X(z^{-1}). \tag{3.26}$$

All filtration process realized by circuit from Fig. 3.28a can be described by equations: causal filter

$$Y_1(z) = X(z)H(z),$$

non-causal filter

$$\begin{aligned} Y_2(z) &= Y_1(z^{-1}) = X(z^{-1})H(z^{-1}), \\ Y_3(z) &= Y_2(z)H(z) = X(z^{-1})H(z^{-1})H(z), \\ Y(z) &= Y_3(z^{-1}) = X(z)H(z)H(z^{-1}) = X(z)|H(e^{j\omega T})|^2. \end{aligned} \tag{3.27}$$

As an example, the author made an implementation of sixth-order IIR Butterworth filter with crossing frequency $f_{cr} = 200$ Hz and sampling frequency $f_s = 10$ kHz. Input sinusoidal signal with frequency $f_{syg} = 100$ Hz is divided into blocks of length $N = 5000$ samples. That makes delay of output signal equal to $T_d = 2N/f_s = 1$ s. Below is the author's Matlab listing for the realization of a linear phase IIR filter:

```
clear all;
fs = 10 e3; % sampling frequency
  fb = 0.2 e3; % end of band of interest
  fsyg = .100 e3; % signal frequency
  ib = 6; % number of blocks
  N = 5 e3; % length of block
  Ns = N * ib; % length of input signal
  t = (0 : Ns - 1)/fs; % time vector
  y = zeros (1, Ns); % place for y in memory
  % coherent frequency of input signal
  fsyg_k = round (fsyg/(fs/Ns)) * fs/Ns;
  x = sin (2 * pi * fsyg_k * t); % input signal
  %------- Filter design ----------------
  Fg = 2 * fb/fs;
  [b a] = butter(6, Fg);
  %------ Causal filtering ----------------
  y1 = filter (b,a,x);
  %------- Noncausal filtering, time reversing ---
  N_ov = 500; % number of samples in overlap
  y3r = zeros (1, N + N_ov); % place for y3r in memory
  for nb = 1 : ib - 1
     % time reversing and filtering
     y3 = filter (b,a,y1 (nb * N + N_ov : -1 : (nb-1) * N + 1));
     % time reversing
     y3c = y3 (N + N_ov : -1 : N_ov + 1);
     % output signal synthesis
     y (1,(nb - 1) * N + 1 : nb * N) = y3c;
  end
```

Figure 3.30a shows results of connecting blocks of signal samples for linear phase filter without overlap. The graph shows visible signal amplitude distortion associated with transient effects of the filter when connecting the blocks of signal samples. Using overlap as in Fig. 3.29 it is possible to reduce this distortion. In this particular case, the overlap length used is equal $N_{ov} = 500$ samples. Figure 3.30b shows results of connecting blocks of signal samples for linear phase IIR filter with overlap. In this case, the output signal delay is longer $T_d = 2(N + N_{ov})/f_s = 1.1$ s. Additionally in Fig. 3.31, the difference between a reference signal and filter output signal for a filter and without overlap and with overlap is shown. For illustration, the dynamic range of the signal is shown in Fig. 3.32 with spectra of output signal and characteristics of the filter, for both the versions: without the overlap and with overlap.

Figure 3.33 shows the result of filtration of harmonics signal $y(n) = \sin(2\pi\,100t) - 0.05\sin(2\pi\,500t + 1.5) - 0.05\sin(2\pi\,700t - 1) + 0.07\sin(2\pi\,900t + 1)$ by the linear phase IIR filter.

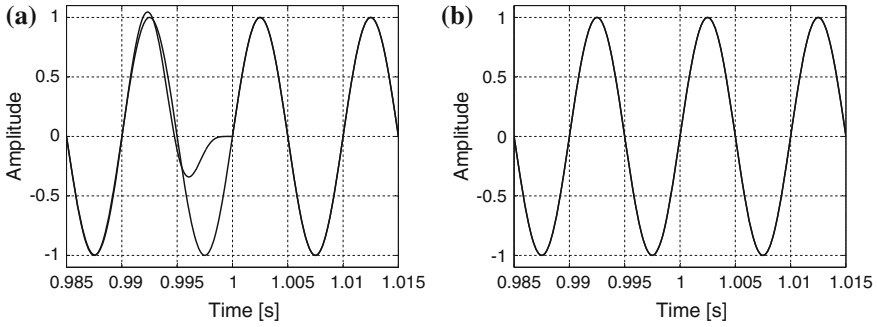



**Fig. 3.30** Waveforms of linear phase IIR filter output signal: **a** without overlap, **b** with overlap $N_{ov} = 500$

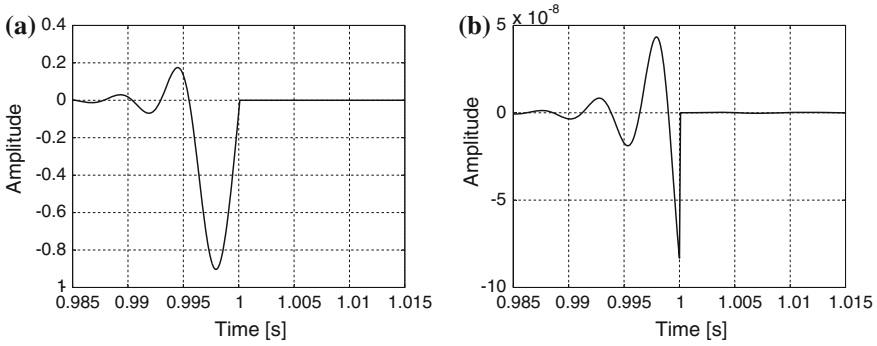



**Fig. 3.31** Difference between reference signal and linear phase IIR filter output signal: **a** without overlap, **b** with overlap $N_{ov} = 500$

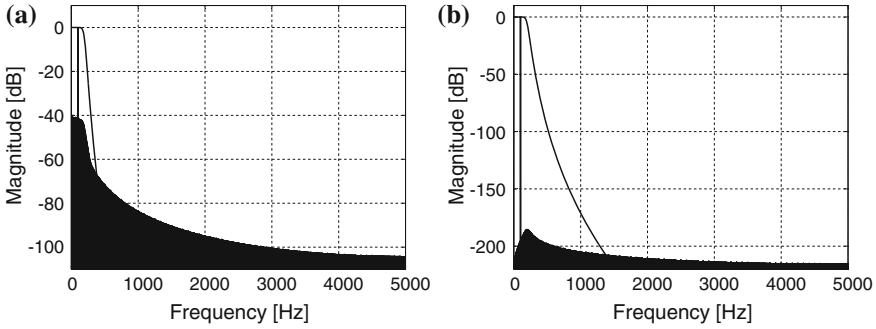



**Fig. 3.32** Spectra of linear phase IIR filter output signal and filter characteristic: **a** without overlap, **b** with overlap $N_{ov} = 500$

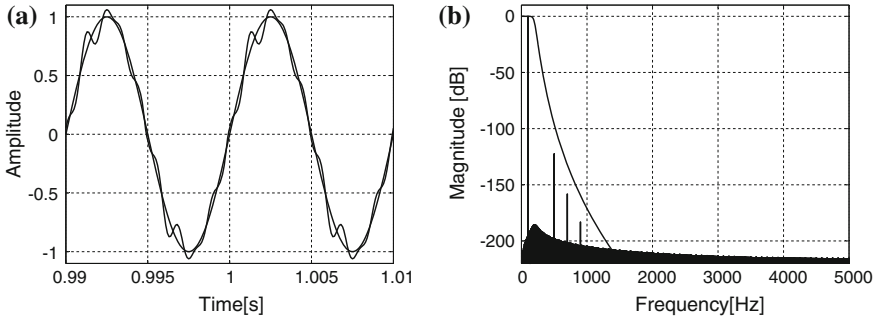



**Fig. 3.33** Filtration of harmonics signal by linear phase IIR filter: **a** waveforms of input and output signal, **b** spectrum of output signal and filter characteristic

## 3.6 Multirate Circuits

The main reason for introducing multirate circuits (systems) is the necessity to improve the quality with cost reduction of systems. The application of multirate circuits is necessary during the conversion of A/D and D/A signals, and when oversampling is used. Another reason for using the multirate circuits systems is the necessity to exchange data between systems, using different sampling rates. The process of reducing the sampling rate of a signal is commonly known as decimator, and the multirate circuit used for decimation is called decimator. The process of increasing signal sampling rate is called interpolation, and the circuit used for signal interpolation is called an interpolator. The interpolator and the decimator are the most common multirate circuits used for changing signal sampling rate. Multirate circuits are described in many publications, and this author can recommend a few books written by: Crochiere and Rabiner [17], Vaidyanathan [76], Flige [36], Proakis and Manolakis [58]. The exemplary block digram of a digital multirate control circuit is depicted in Fig. 1.12. In this section, there are presented circuits useful for power

electronics control circuits. In this case, the most important is the use of a signal interpolator for noise shaping circuits in the inverter output circuits.

### 3.6.1 Signal Interpolation

A signal interpolator made up of an upsampler and an anti-imaging low-pass filter for integer valued conversion factor $R$ is depicted in Fig. 3.34a. The $R$ is called oversampled ratio. The low-pass filter $H(z)$, also called the interpolation filter, removes the $R-1$ unwanted images in the spectra of upsampled signal $w(kTs/R)$. A illustration of interpolating process for $R = 3$ is depicted in Fig. 3.35. After the upsampling process, the out-of-band signal (unwanted images) is a potential source of interference for the input signal. The out-of-band signal (unwanted images) can dramatically decrease the signal dynamic ratio (*SINAD*). The anti-imaging filter must attenuate all unwanted images. The stopband cutoff frequency $F_z$ must be selected to limit aliasing in the input signal frequency range.

Two types of stopband criteria can be used in practice, in type 1, where aliasing is not allowed in the transition band (Fig. 3.36b), and in type 2, where aliasing is allowed in the transition band (Fig. 3.36c). The normalized stopband frequency $F_z$ for filters of type 1 and type 2 is respectively equal to

$$F_z = \frac{F_s}{2R}, \quad F_z = \frac{F_s}{R} - \frac{F_b}{R}, \tag{3.28}$$

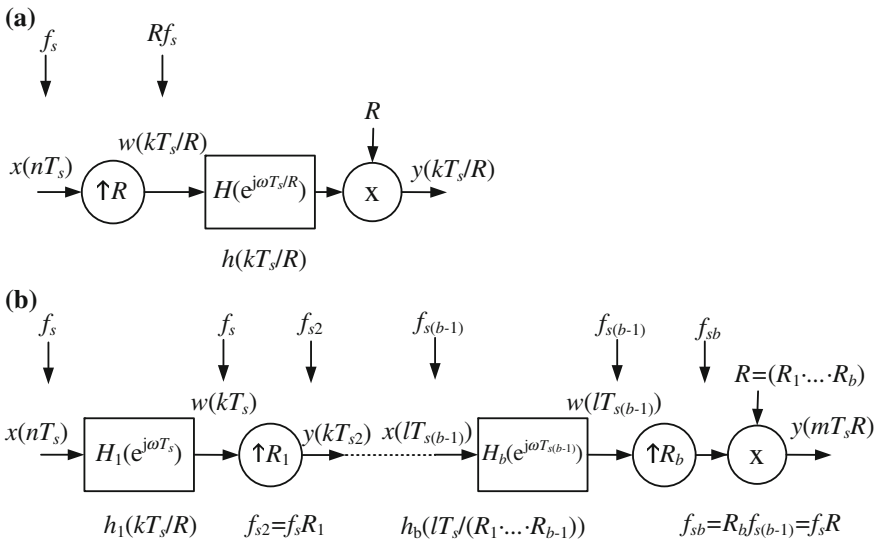



**Fig. 3.34** Interpolator made up of upsampler and an anti-imaging filter: **a** single stage version, **b** multistage version

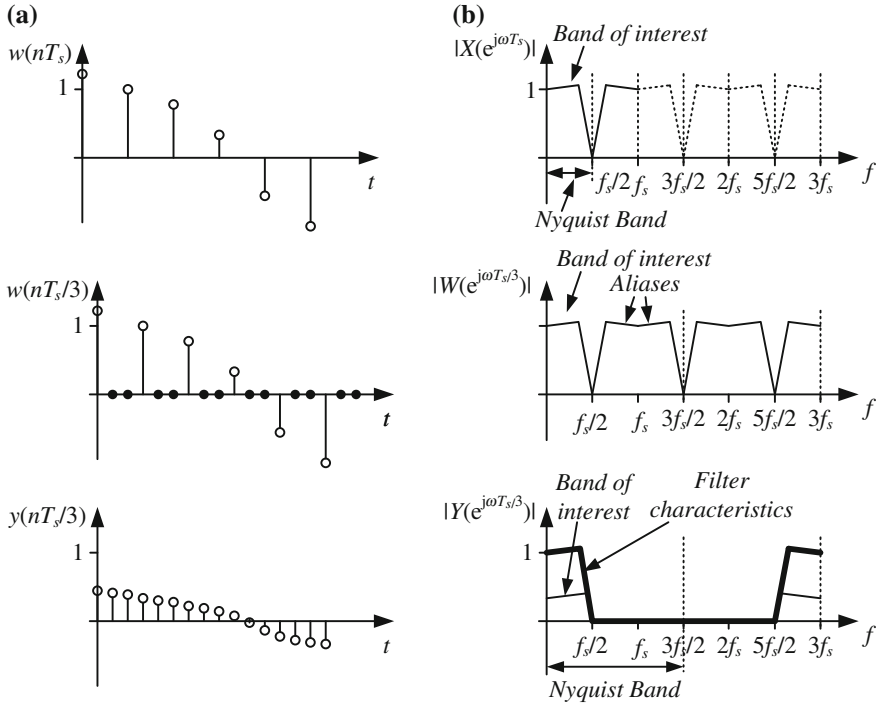



**Fig. 3.35** Illustration of signal interpolation for $R = 3$: **a** waveform, **b** spectra

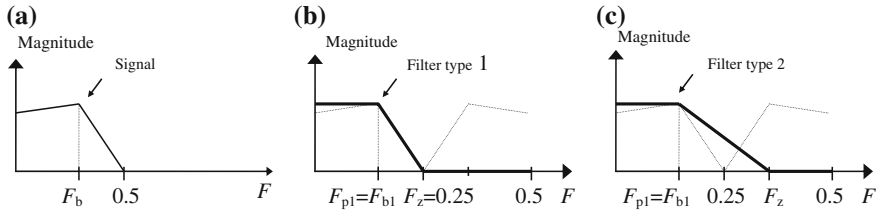



**Fig. 3.36** Filter types: **a** Input signal band width, **b** type 1 anti-imaging filter requirements with aliasing not allowed in transition band (for $R = 2$), **c** type 2 anti-imaging filter requirements with aliasing allowed in transition band (for $R = 2$)

where $F_b$ is the normalized passband frequency of the input signal, $F_s$ is the normalized sampling rate. The multistage version of the interpolator is depicted in Fig. 3.34b. In this case, a design strategy is used, in which every stage attenuates its own unwanted images. Normalized passband signal frequency on the output of every stage is given by

$$F_{bk} = \frac{F_{b(k-1)}}{R_k}, \tag{3.29}$$

where $R_k$ is interpolating ratio at stage $k$. For $k$th stage of the interpolator with a filter type 1 and type 2, the stopband frequency is given by

$$F_{zk} = \frac{F_{s(k-1)}}{2R_k}, \quad F_z k = \frac{F_s}{R_k} - \frac{F_{b(k-1)}}{R_k}, \tag{3.30}$$

respectively. Multistage interpolators are often used because of the lower number of required arithmetic operations. The author's Matlab program listing for the realization of a single stage interpolator:

```
clear all;
R = 4; % interpolator factor
fs = 3200; % sampling frequency
fs_int = fs * R; % sampling frquency after interpolation
fsig = 200; % signal frequency
fb = 500; % end of band of interest
N = 2 ^ 10; % length of samples block
N_int = N * R; % length of samples block after interpolation
t = (0 : N- 1)/fs; % time vector
% coherent frequency of input signal
fsigk = round (fsig/(fs/N)) * fs/N;
x = sin (2 * pi * fsigk * t); % input signal
%------- Upsampling ---------  --------
w = zeros (1,N_int);
w(1,1 : R : N_int) = x; % upsampled intput signal
%------- Filter design ----------------
Fg = 2 * fb/fs_int;
[b a] = butter (2,Fg);
y = filter (b,a,w) * R; % filtering
```

Using the above program, a simulation is made for a 200 Hz sinusoidal input signal with sampling rate $f_s = 3.2$ KHz, which is interpolated for $R = 4$. Used as the interpolating filter is a second-order IIR Butterworth filter for $f_{cr} = 500$ Hz. Figure 3.37 shows the spectra of signals: $x(nT_s)$, $w(nT_s/4)$, $y(nT_s/4)$ and interpolating filter amplitude response. As shown in Fig. 3.37, the aliasing and image produced during the interpolation process can degrade the dynamic range of the signal. Therefore, the choice of low-pass filter parameters is particularly important.

### 3.6.2 Signal Decimation

Another multirate circuit is the signal decimator. It is used to reduce the sampling rate. During the signal decimation process, the bandwidth of a signal must first be reduced by the low-pass filter before its sampling rate is reduced by a downsampler. A block diagram of a single stage decimator for an integer valued conversion factor $M$ is depicted in Fig. 3.38a. The decimator consists low-pass filter and downsampler.

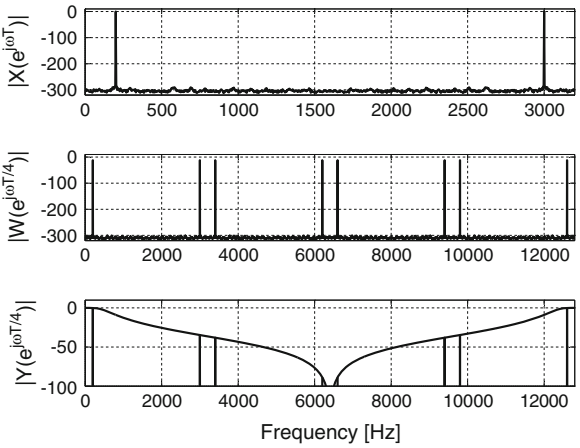



**Fig. 3.37** Spectra of interpolation process for $R = 4$

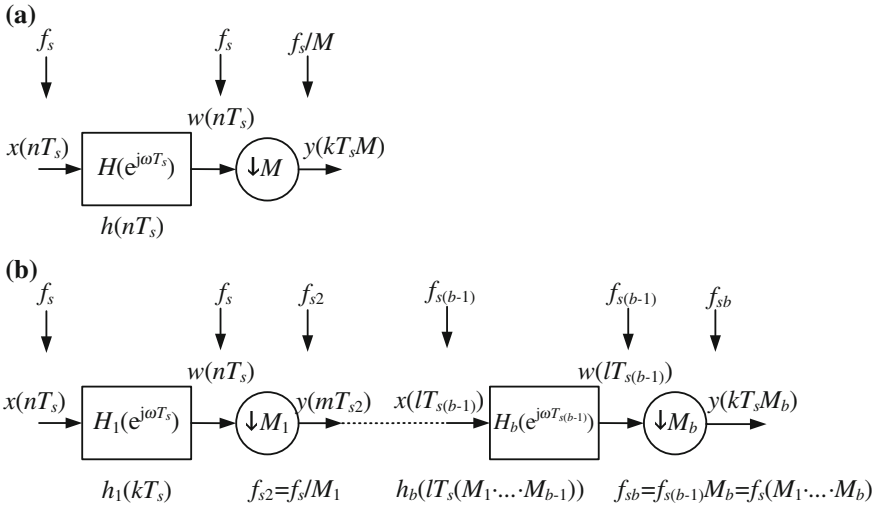



**Fig. 3.38** Decimators: **a** single stage, **b** cascaded

The bandwidth of signal should be reduced from $f_s/2$ to $f_s/(2M)$, otherwise aliasing components penetrate into usable bandwidth and deteriorate signal parameters (e.g. *SINAD*). Illustration of a signal decimation process for $M = 3$ is depicted in Fig. 3.39. As in the case of interpolation, in the decimation process two types of anti-imaging filters can be defined, such as shown in Fig. 3.36.

A multistage decimator is in depicted in Fig. 3.38b. Similar to the interpolator, a design strategy is used in which every stage attenuates its own aliasing components. A multistage version of the decimator requires typically fewer arithmetic

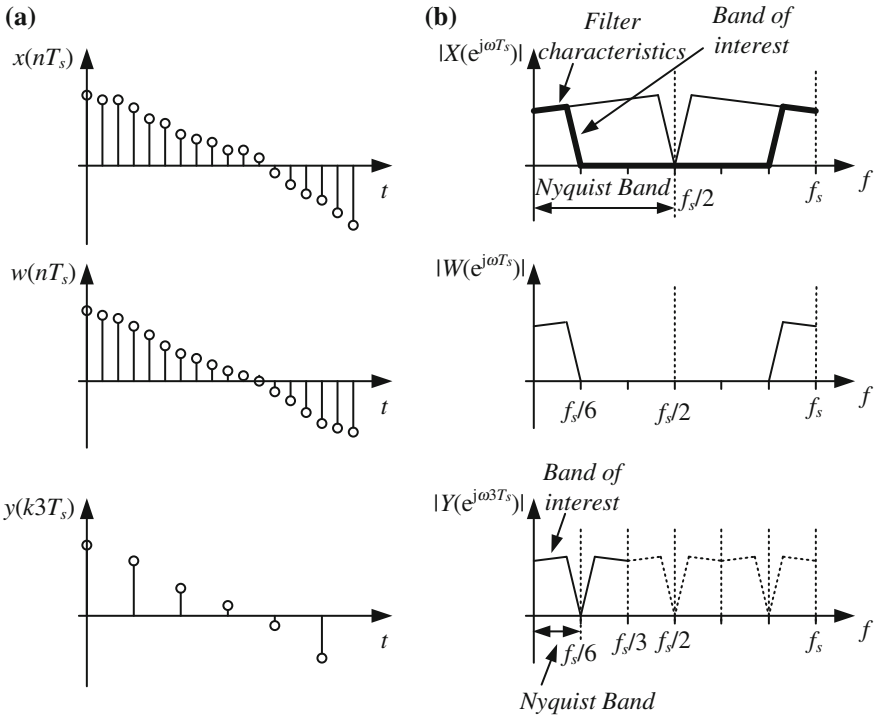



**Fig. 3.39** Illustration of signal decimation process for $M = 3$: **a** waveform, **b** spectra

operations than a single stage one, especially for high value or $M$. Therefore, multistage decimators are more frequently used.

The author's the Matlab program listing for the realization of a single stage decimator for $M = 4$:

```
clear all;
M= 4; % decimation factor
fs = 50 * 2^6; % sampling frequency
fsig = 50; % signal frequency
fb = 2.3 * fsig; % end of band of interest
N = 2 ^ 12; % length of block
t = (0 : N -1)/fs; % time vector
% coherent frequency of input signal
fsigk = round (fsig/(fs/N)) * fs/N;
% input signal
x = sin (2 * pi * fsigk * t) + 0.5 * sin(21 * pi * fsigk * t)+...
0.3 * sin (41 * pi * fsigk * t);
%------- Filter design --------------------
Fg = 2 * fb/fs;
```

```
[b a] = butter (3, Fg);
%------- Decimation ----------------------
w = filter (b,a,x); % filtering
y = w (1,1 : M : N); % downsampling
```

A simulation is made using the above program for harmonics input signal $x(t) = \sin(100\pi t) + 0.5\sin(1050\pi t) + 0.3\sin(2050\pi t)$ with sampling rate $f_s = 3.2$ KHz, which is decimated for $M = 4$. As the decimating filter there is used a 3rd IIR Butterworth filter for $f_{cr} = 115$ Hz. Figure 3.40 shows the result of such a simulation, with the spectra of signals: $x(nT_s)$, $w(n4T_s)$, $y(n4T_s)$ and decimating filter amplitude response. As in the case of interpolation, during the signal decimation the aliasing image can degrade the dynamic range of the signal. Therefore, the choice of low-pass decimator filter parameters is particularly important and affects the dynamics range of the signal.

### 3.6.3 Multirate Circuits with Wave Digital Filters

A special class of lattice wave digital filters, referred to as bireciprocal, are suitable for the realization of interpolators. The characteristic function $K(\psi)$ of bireciprocal filters satisfies the equation

$$K(\psi) = \frac{1}{K\left(\frac{1}{\psi}\right)}, \text{ where } \psi = \frac{z-1}{z+1}. \tag{3.31}$$

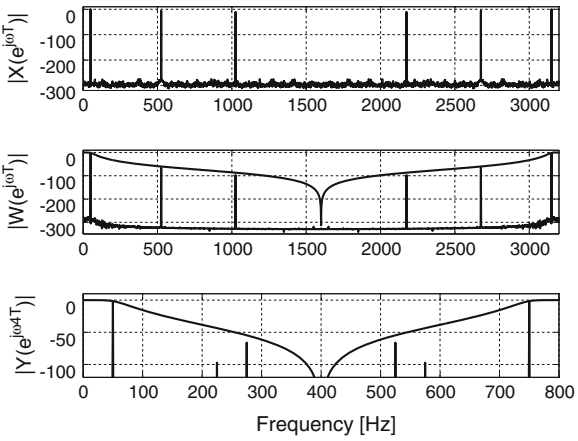



**Fig. 3.40** Spectra of decimation process for $M = 4$

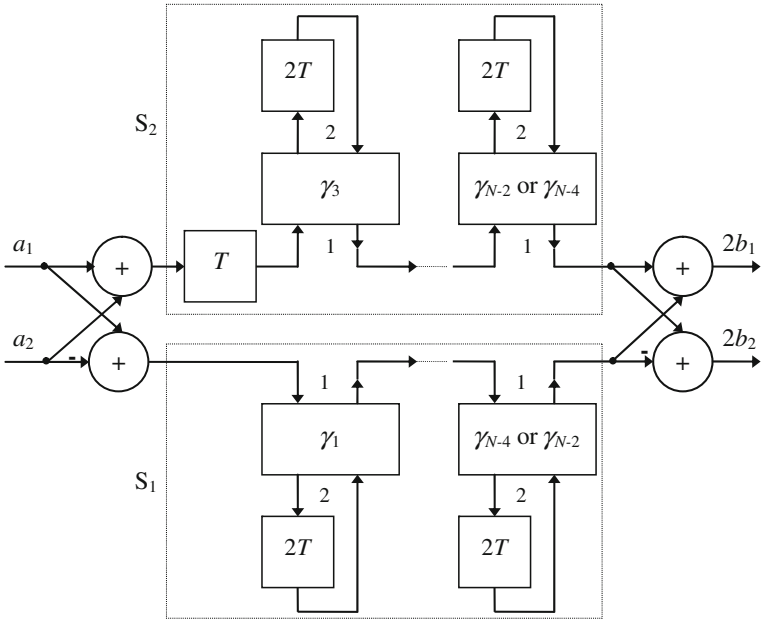



**Fig. 3.41** Block diagram of bireciprocal lattice wave digital filter

For low-pass bireciprocal filters the passband is from 0 to $fs/4$, and for high-pass bireciprocal filters the passband is from $fs/4$ to $fs/2$. For this type of filter, all even filter coefficients $\gamma_k$ are equal to zero and the filter circuit can be simplified to the circuit shown in Fig. 3.41, so that the number of filter elements is halved. Bireciprocal lattice wave digital filters of this kind are very useful for building multirate circuits. The first-order allpass section of branch $S_2$ is replaced by a unit delay and the second-order allpass sections are replaced by two-port adaptors with double delay. Branches of bireciprocal filters work at two times lower speed. Therefore, the output filter summing block can be replaced by the switch while reducing the speed of the filter to half. Figure 3.42a shows a signal interpolator for $R = 2$. In the same way, it is possible to build a signal decimator for $M = 2$. The block diagram of the decimator is depicted in Fig. 3.42b. A cascaded version of such an interpolator with bireciprocal lattice wave digital filters is shown in Fig. 3.43. As in the case of a cascade signal interpolator a cascade signal decimator may be created.

Of course, in multirate circuits there can also be successfully used a modified LWDF. Examples of such applications made by the author are shown in Chap. 5.

### *3.6.4 Interpolators with Linear-Phase IIR Filters*

In the depicted signal interpolators, low-pass filters are used to suppress the aliasing components. Filters introduce signal delay and in the case of IIR filters they have nonlinear phase response. Therefore, in order to obtain linear phase response, the FIR

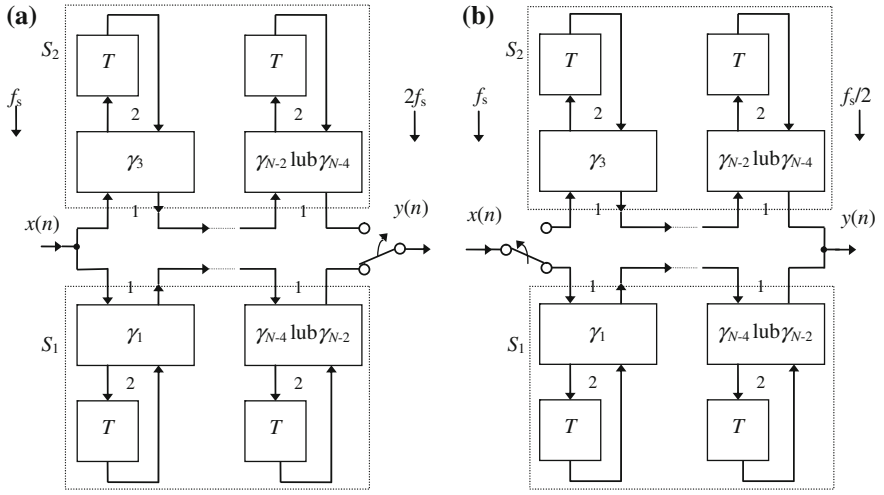



**Fig. 3.42** Block diagram of multirate circuit using bireciprocal lattice wave digital filter: **a** signal interpolator, **b** signal decimator

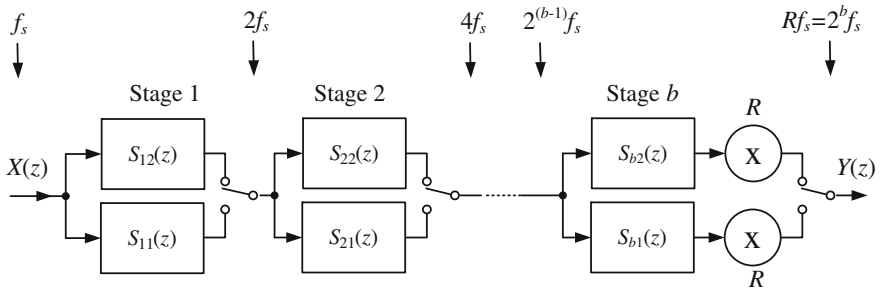



**Fig. 3.43** Block diagram of cascade signal interpolator using bireciprocal lattice wave digital filter

filters should be used. An alternative may be application of linear phase IIR filters. An example of such a solution is presented by Azizi [9, 10]. Also, this author has designed an interpolator with a linear phase IIR filter. The block diagram of a signal interpolator with linear phase IIR filter proposed by the author is depicted in Fig. 3.44. The first filter works in pipeline mode and the second in block mode, as shown in Fig. 3.29.

## 3.7 Digital Filter Banks

For separation of signals filter banks can be used. They can be used for harmonics separation for APF and for signal separation in digital crossover for class D audio amplifiers. The author has selected filter banks suitable for these applications.

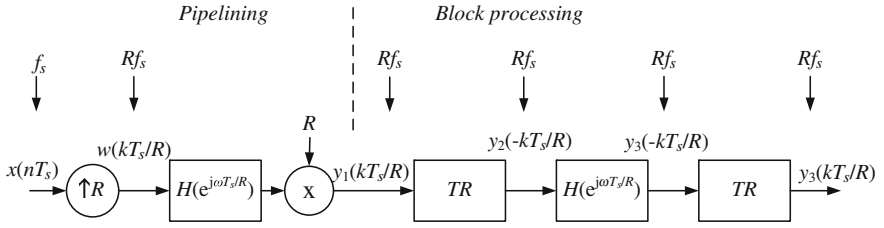



**Fig. 3.44** Interpolator with linear phase IIR filter

A filter bank is a set of bandpass filters that separates the input signal into subbands, each one carrying a single frequency subband of the original signal. The process of decomposition performed by the filter bank is called analysis (meaning analysis of the signal in terms of its components in each subband); the output of analysis is referred to as a subband signal with as many subbands as there are filters in the filter bank. The set of filters for signal separation is called an analysis filter bank. The reconstruction process is called synthesis, meaning reconstitution of a complete signal resulting from the filtering process. The set of filters for signal reconstruction is called a synthesis filter bank. Using analysis filter banks, it is possible to decompose signal spectra into a number of directly adjacent frequency bands and recombine the signal spectra by means of a synthesis filter bank. In most cases signals are separated into more than two subband signals. The background of filter banks is described in the digital signal processing literature, in particular the following books can be recommended [17, 36, 76]. The general form of the $M$-channel filter bank is shown in Fig. 3.45, where: $M$ is the number of subbands. The output signal of filter bank $Y(z)$ can be calculated by the equation

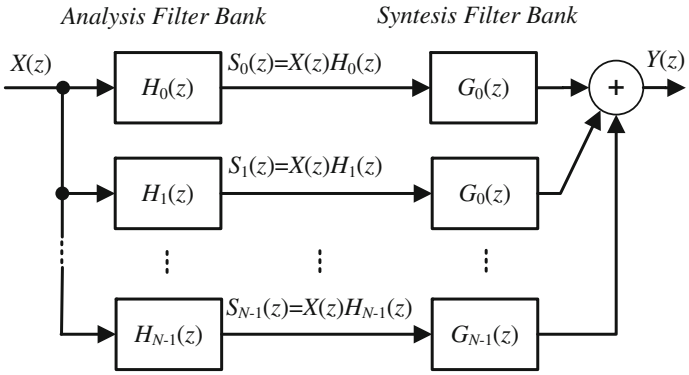



**Fig. 3.45** An $M$-channel band analysis and synthesis filter bank

$$Y(z) = X(z) \sum_{k=0}^{M-1} (H_k(z) G_k(z)). \tag{3.32}$$

It is possible to simplify this equation to

$$Y(z) = X(z) F(z), \tag{3.33}$$

where $F(z)$ denotes the quality of signal reconstruction.

If $|F(e^{j\Omega}| = 1$ for all frequencies, the filter bank is without amplitude distortion. When $F(e^{j\Omega})$ has linear phase (constant group delay), the filter bank is without phase distortion. If $F(z)$ is pure delay, the filter bank is called perfect reconstruction. A filter bank with amplitude and/or phase distortion which can be kept arbitrarily small is called a filter bank with almost perfect reconstruction. Another function important for the discussed filter banks is power complementary. This ensures representation of the whole input signal spectrum in subbands. For an $M$-channel power complementary filter bank, the square sum of transfer functions $H_k(z)$ module is equal to one

$$\sum_{k=0}^{M-1} H_k(z) = 1. \tag{3.34}$$

The typical frequency responses of M-channel overlapping uniform band analysis and synthesis filter banks are shown in Fig. 3.46. The theory of filter banks is well described by Vaidyanathan [76], Fliege [36] and many others.

### 3.7.1 Strictly Complementary Filter Bank

For the strictly complementary (SC) FIR filter bank the sum of the set of transfer functions $[H_0(z), H_1(z), \ldots, H_{M-1}(z)]$ is equal to pure delay

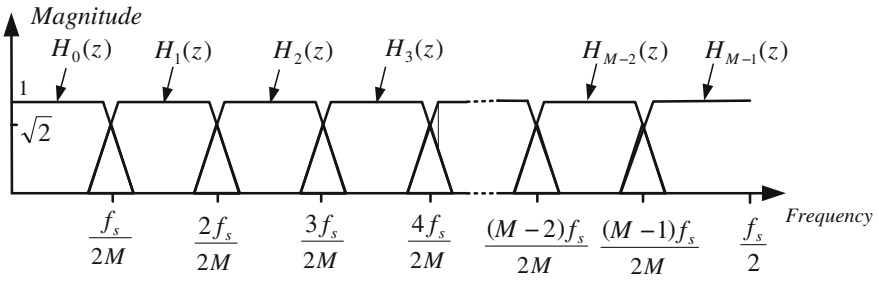



**Fig. 3.46** Frequency responses of M-channel uniform band analysis and synthesis filter banks

$$\sum_{k=0}^{M-1} H_k(z) = cz^{n_0}, \quad c \neq 0, \tag{3.35}$$

where $c$ is a constant. In this case, the synthesis filter bank is simplified to a simple sum. It is a good solution for the system under consideration, where synthesis is performed by adding two acoustic waves, one from the tweeter and the second from the woofer/midrange. For a two channel ($M = 2$) strictly complementary linear phase FIR filter bank the design procedure is very simple. If the low-pass filter $H_0(z)$ is a transfer function of linear phase filter type 1 (order of filter $N$ is even) then

$$H_0(z) + H_1(z) = z^{N/2}. \tag{3.36}$$

Transfer functions of both filters $H_0(z)$ and $H_1(z)$ can be described by equations

$$\begin{cases} H_0(z) = b_{00} + \cdots + b_{0N/2}z^{-N/2} + \cdots + b_{0N}z^{-N} \\ H_1(z) = b_{10} + \cdots + b_{1N/2}z^{-N/2} + \cdots + b_{1N}z^{-N}, \end{cases} \tag{3.37}$$

then by substitution in equation 4 this becomes

$$\begin{aligned} &b_{00} + \cdots + b_{0N/2}z^{-N/2} + \cdots + b_{0N}z^{-N} + \cdots \\ &+ b_{10} + \cdots + b_{1N/2}z^{-N/2} + \cdots + b_{1N}z^{-N} = z^{-N/2}. \end{aligned} \tag{3.38}$$

High-pass filter $H_1(z)$ coefficient can be calculated by the formula (3.38)

$$\begin{cases} b_{10} = -b_{00} \\ \cdots \\ b_{1N/2} = 1 - b_{0N/2} \\ \cdots \\ b_{1N} = -b_{0N}, \end{cases} \tag{3.39}$$

Although the strictly complementary linear phase FIR two-channel filter bank can be realized by two separate FIR filters, another solution is possible using directly the equation

$$H_0(z) = H(z) \quad \text{and} \quad H_1(z) = z^{N/2} - H(z). \tag{3.40}$$

A block diagram of such a solution is depicted in Fig. 3.47.

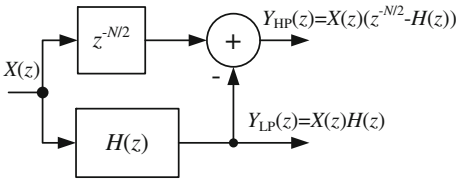



**Fig. 3.47** Block diagram of two-channel strictly complementary analysis filter bank

### 3.7.2 DFT Filter Bank

Spectrum analysis of signal in power electronics is an important measuring technique. The usual method for spectrum analysis is the DFT and its efficient implementation, the fast Fourier transform (FFT). For real discrete signal $x(n)$, the DFT $k$th spectrum bin is described by the equation

$$X(k) = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \left( x(n) W_N^{kn} \right), \tag{3.41}$$

where $N$ is the length of the signal block, typically equal to signal period, $k$ is the number of frequency bin, $k = 0, 1, \ldots, N-1$, $W_N = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{j}2\pi/N}$.

$$\begin{aligned} X(k) &= \Re(X(k)) + \mathrm{j} \cdot \Im(X(k)) \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} (x(n) \cos(2\pi kn/T)) - \mathrm{j} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} (x(n) \sin(2\pi kn/T)), \end{aligned} \tag{3.42}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} |X(k)| &= \sqrt{\Re(X(k))^2 + \Im(X(k))^2}, \\ \varphi(k) &= \arctan\left( \frac{\Im(X(k))}{\Re(X(k))} \right). \end{aligned} \tag{3.43}$$

The DFT can be used as an analysis filter bank. A block diagram of this bank is depicted in Fig. 3.48. Typically, for every sample of input signal $N$-point, DFT is calculated as shown in Fig. 3.49. Simplified magnitude characteristics of this filter bank are shown in Fig. 3.50.

The common drawbacks of the DFT filter bank include:

- $N^2$ complex multiplication—can be decreased by using FFT to $N \log N$,
- poor frequency response,

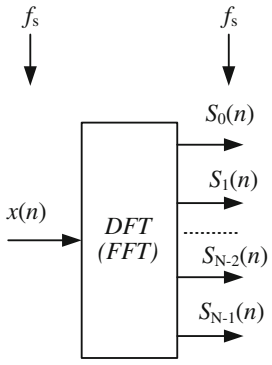



**Fig. 3.48** DFT filter bank

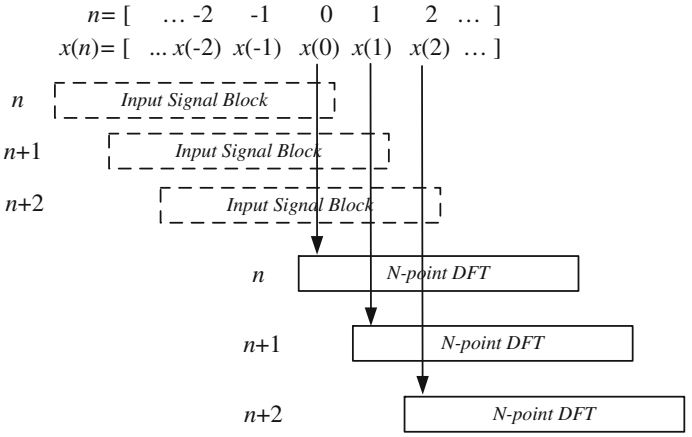



**Fig. 3.49** Block diagram of signal flow for typical DFT

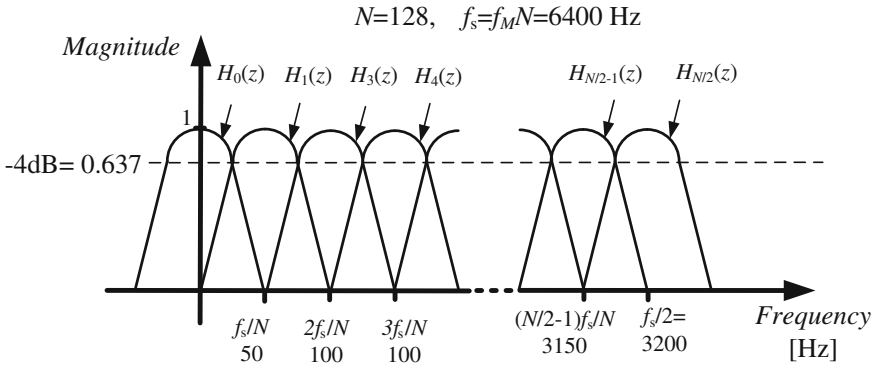



**Fig. 3.50** Simplified frequency responses of $N$-channel band analysis DFT filter bank

- large computation power required for the DSP,
- need for coherent sampling.

In many applications, it is not necessary to evaluate all the bands of the spectrum $X(k)$ of the analyzed signal $x(n)$. This occurs for example in harmonic compensation systems in which it is necessary to evaluate one or more harmonics. Thus, setting all the bands of the spectrum is superfluous when you need only designate one or more. In this case, it is useful to employ the so-called Goertzel algorithm [38]. Discussion of this algorithm can be found in many publications, among others by Oppenheim et al. [51] and by Zielinski [81].

### 3.7.3 Sliding DFT Algorithm

In control systems, there is often a need to determine the spectrum for the upcoming sequence of the samples. Therefore, in this case, the application of the iterative determination of the spectrum seems to be a good solution. The current value of a single $k$th bin of the spectrum is determined by the formula

$$X_k(0) = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} (x(n) W_N^{kn}), \tag{3.44}$$

where $k = 0, 1, \ldots, N-1$, and value of the next sample is determined by

$$X_k(1) = \sum_{n=1}^{N} (x(n) W_N^{k(n-1)}). \tag{3.45}$$

Equation (3.45) can be rewritten to

$$\begin{aligned} X_k(1) &= \frac{1}{N}\left[\sum_{n=1}^{N} (x(n) W_N^{kn}) W_N^{-k} + x(N) W_N^{k(N-1)}\right] \\ &= \frac{1}{N}\left[x(0) - x(0) + \sum_{n=1}^{N-1} (x(n) W_N^{kn}) W_N^{-k} + x(N) \overbrace{W_N^{kN}}^{=1} W_N^{-k}\right] \\ &= \frac{W_N^{-k}}{N}\left[\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} (x(n) W_N^{kn}) + x(N) - x(0)\right] \\ &= W_N^{-k}\left[\frac{1}{N}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} (x(n) W_N^{kn}) + \frac{1}{N}(x(N) - x(0))\right] \\ &= W_N^{-k}\left[X_k(0) + \frac{1}{N}(x(N) - x(0))\right]. \end{aligned} \tag{3.46}$$

Hence, Eq. (3.46) allows the iterative calculation of the spectrum for each sample of the input signal $x(n)$. Leaving aside the scaling factor $1/N$ this equation can be written as

$$X_k(n) = W_N^{-k}\left[X_k(n-1) + x(n) - x(n-N)\right]. \tag{3.47}$$

This algorithm is called recursive DFT or sliding DFT, and is well described by Jacobsen and Lyons [41, 42] and many others [13, 28, 49, 50, 60, 81]. For calculating a few bins, the sliding DFT algorithm is more effective than ordinary DFT. It is very simple and efficient, especially in a coherent sampling case. The $z$-domain transfer function for the $k$th bin of the sliding DFT filter is described by the equation

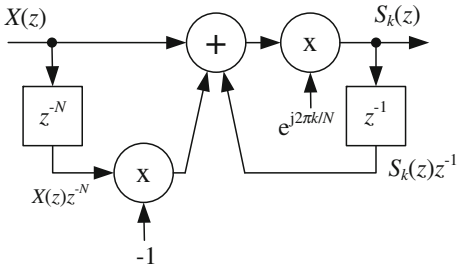



**Fig. 3.51** Block diagram of single-bin sliding DFT filter

$$H_{SDFT}(z) = \frac{W_N^{-k} - W_N^{-k} z^{-N}}{1 - W_N^{-k} z^{-1}} = \frac{e^{j2\pi k/N} - e^{j2\pi k/N} z^{-N}}{1 - e^{j2\pi k/N} z^{-1}}. \tag{3.48}$$

The block diagram of a single-bin sliding DFT filter is depicted in Fig. 3.51. The harmonic spectral of one component of input signal is calculated thus

$$\begin{aligned} S_k(n) &= e^{j2\pi k/N}(x(n) - x(n-N) + S_k(n-1)) \\ &= (\cos(2\pi k/N) + j\sin(2\pi k/N))(x(n) - x(n-N) \\ &\quad + \mathrm{Re}(S_k(n-1)) + j\mathrm{Im}(S_k(n-1))) \\ &= \cos(2\pi k/N)(x(n) - x(n-N) + \mathrm{Re}(S_k(n-1))) \\ &\quad - \mathrm{Im}(S_k(n-1))\sin(2\pi k/N)) \\ &\quad + j(\sin(2\pi k/N_M))(x(n) - x(n-N) + \mathrm{Re}(S_k(n-1)) \\ &\quad + \mathrm{Im}(S_k(n-1))\cos(2\pi k/N)). \end{aligned} \tag{3.49}$$

Unfortunately, the typical microprocessor does not have a built-in complex numbers arithmetic, hence Eq. (3.49) is transformed into a system of equations

$$\begin{cases} S_{kr}(n) = \cos(2\pi k/N)(x(n) - x(n-N) + S_{kr}(n-1)) - S_{ki}(n-1)\sin(2\pi k/N) \\ S_{ki}(n) = \sin(2\pi k/N)(x(n) - x(n-N) + S_{kr}(n-1)) + S_{ki}(n-1)\cos(2\pi k/N), \end{cases} \tag{3.50}$$

where $S_{kr}(n) = \mathrm{Re}(S_k(n))$ and $S_{ki}(n) = \mathrm{Im}(S_k(n))$.

The realization diagram of a $k$th single-bin sliding DFT filter is presented in Fig. 3.52.

The magnitude frequency characteristic of a single-bin sliding filter for $N = 20$ and $k = 1$ is shown in Fig. 3.53a. The passband and stopband are very poor, but they are adequate for coherent sampled signals. The sliding DFT filter is only marginally stable, because its pole resides on the $z$-domain's unit circle as shown in Fig. 3.53b. By using damping factor $r$ it is possible to force the pole to be at a radius of $r$ inside the unit circle. The transfer function of this solution is described by equation

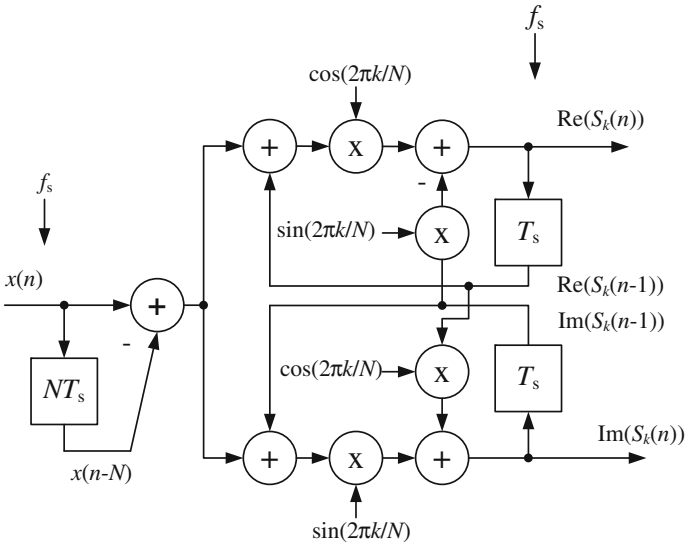



**Fig. 3.52** Block diagram of realization of a $k$th single-bin sliding DFT filter

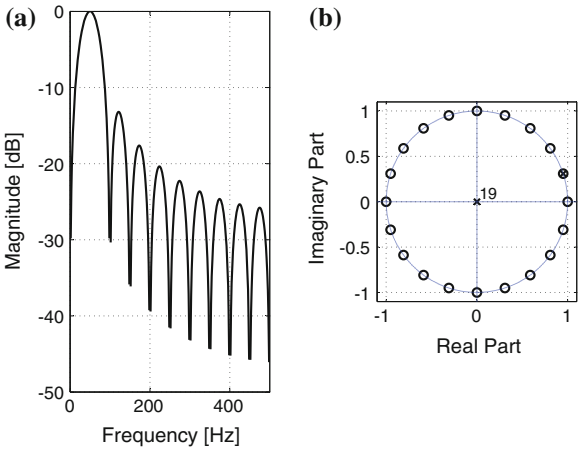



**Fig. 3.53** Sliding DFT characteristics for $N = 10$, $k = 1$ and $f_s = 1000$ Hz: **a** magnitude, **b** $z$-domain pole/zero location

$$H_{SDFT}(z) = \frac{1 - r^N z^{-N}}{1 - re^{j2\pi k/N} z^{-1}}, \tag{3.51}$$

Guaranteed-stable sliding DFT filter structure is depicted in Fig. 3.54. It is useful for low resolution fixed-point calculation, for example in fixed-point digital signal processors (DSP) and field programmable gate array (FPGA) circuits. For floating-point DSP, such as SHARC, it is possible using the circuit in Fig. 3.51.

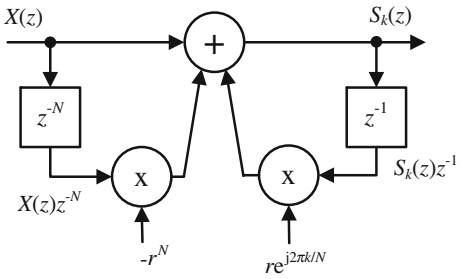



**Fig. 3.54** Block diagram of guaranteed-stable sliding DFT filter

Using the single-bin SDFT filter, it is possible to build an analysis filter bank for selected frequency bins. A block diagram of the analysis filter bank is shown in Fig. 3.55. Of course, implementation of such a bank for all DFT frequencies has no sense. However, for selected frequencies (such as power line harmonics) application of the filter bank can be very effective. The simplified frequency characteristic is shown in Fig. 3.50.

### *3.7.4 Sliding Goertzel Algorithm*

Another similar algorithm-based directly on the Goertzel algorithm allowing the computation of the spectrum recursive is defined as

$$H_{SG}(z) = \frac{(1 - \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{j}2\pi k/N} z^{-1})(1 - z^{-N})}{1 - 2\cos(2\pi k/N) z^{-1} + z^{-2}}. \tag{3.52}$$

A block diagram of such a single bin $k$th sliding Goertzel DFT (SGDFT) filter is depicted in Fig. 3.56. The computational workload of the sliding Goertzel DFT filter is less than that of the SDFT.

### *3.7.5 Moving DFT Algorithm*

Another idea for the simple filter bank is based on the Fourier series. Periodic signal can be represented as the sum of an infinite number of sinusoidal components, which is described by equation

$$x(t) = X_0 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} X_k \sin(2\pi kt + \varphi_k), \tag{3.53}$$

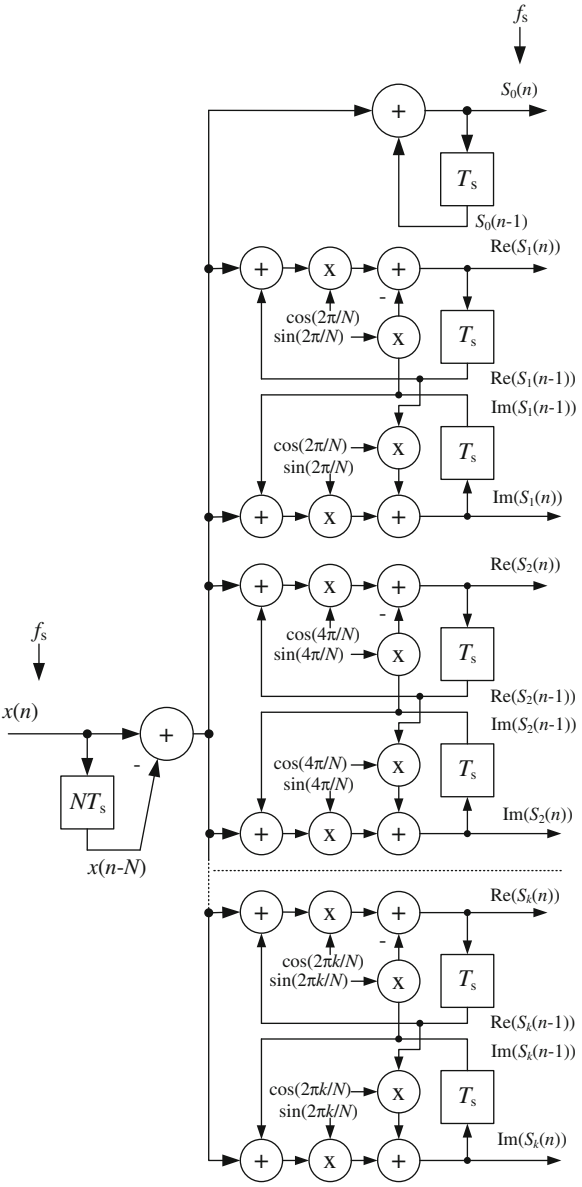



**Fig. 3.55** Block diagram of SDFT analysis filter bank

where $X_0$ is the DC component, $X_k$ the amplitude of $k$th component, $\varphi_k$ is the phase (argument) of $k$th component. Equation (3.53) can be rewritten

$$x(t) = X_0 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (A_k \cos(2\pi kt) + B_k \sin(2\pi kt)), \tag{3.54}$$

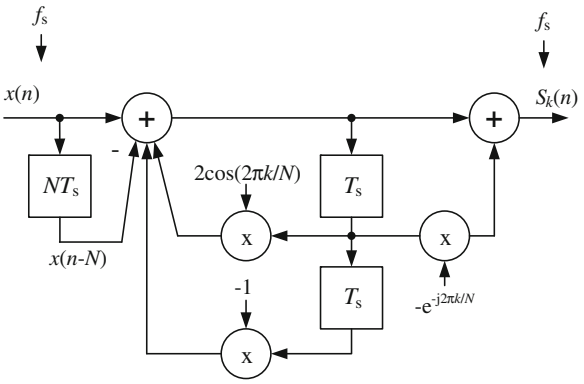



**Fig. 3.56** Single bin $k$th sliding Goertzel DFT filter

and

$$\begin{aligned} X_0 &= \frac{1}{T}\int_0^T x(t)\mathrm{d}t \\ X_k &= \sqrt{A_k^2 + B_k^2} \\ \varphi_k &= \arctan\frac{B_k}{A_k}. \end{aligned} \tag{3.55}$$

Coefficients $A_k$ and $B_k$ are determined by equations

$$\begin{cases} A_k = \dfrac{2}{T}\displaystyle\int_0^T x(t)\cos(2\pi kt)\mathrm{d}t \\ B_k = \dfrac{2}{T}\displaystyle\int_0^T x(t)\sin(2\pi kt)\mathrm{d}t, \end{cases} \tag{3.56}$$

Moving Fourier transform

$$x(t) = X_0 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} X_k(t)\sin\left(2\pi kt + \varphi_k(t)\right), \tag{3.57}$$

where $X_0$ is the DC component, $X_k(t)$ the amplitude of $k$th component, $\varphi(t)_k$ is the phase (argument) of $k$th component.

$$x(t) = X_0 + \sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\left(A_k(t)\cos\left(2\pi kt\right) + B_k(t)\sin\left(2\pi kt\right)\right), \tag{3.58}$$

where:

$$\begin{cases} A_k(t) = \dfrac{2}{T}\int\limits_{t-T}^{t} x(t)\cos(2\pi k\tau)\mathrm{d}\tau \\ B_k(t) = \dfrac{2}{T}\int\limits_{t-T}^{t} x(t)\sin(2\pi k\tau)\mathrm{d}\tau, \end{cases} \tag{3.59}$$

Discrete version of moving DFT transform (MDFT)

$$x(n) = X_0 + \sum_{k=1}^{N} X_k(n)\sin\left(2\pi kn/N + \varphi_k(n)\right), \tag{3.60}$$

and

$$\begin{cases} A_k(n) = \dfrac{2}{N}\sum\limits_{n=k-N+1}^{k} \cos\left(2\pi kn/N\right) \\ B_k(n) = \dfrac{2}{N}\sum\limits_{n=k-N+1}^{k} \sin\left(2\pi kn/N\right), \end{cases} \tag{3.61}$$

The value of coefficients $A_k(n)$ and $B_k(n)$ can be calculated by recursive equations

$$\begin{cases} A_k(n) = A_k(n-1) + \dfrac{2}{N}(x(n) - x(n-N))\cos\left(2\pi kn/N\right) \\ B_k(n) = B_k(n-1) + \dfrac{2}{N}(x(n) - x(n-N))\sin\left(2\pi kn/N\right). \end{cases} \tag{3.62}$$

Finally, the $k$th component is determined by

$$y_k(n) = A_k(n)\cos\left(2\pi kn/N\right) + B_k(n)\sin\left(2\pi kn/N\right). \tag{3.63}$$

A block diagram of a moving DFT analysis filter bank for one component is depicted in Fig. 3.57. Frequency response for such a filter for $k = 1$, $N = 32$ and $f_s = 1600$ Hz is shown in Fig. 3.58. In this case the passband center frequency is 50 Hz, the gain is equal to 1, the phase shift of 50 Hz is equal to 0. Just like the previous filter banks based on the DFT algorithm, the circuit does not have very good filtration properties and is better suited for harmonic filtering in systems with coherent sampling.

Using the filter in Fig. 3.57, it is possible to build an analysis filter bank for selected components. A block diagram of a moving DFT analysis filter bank is depicted in Fig. 3.59.

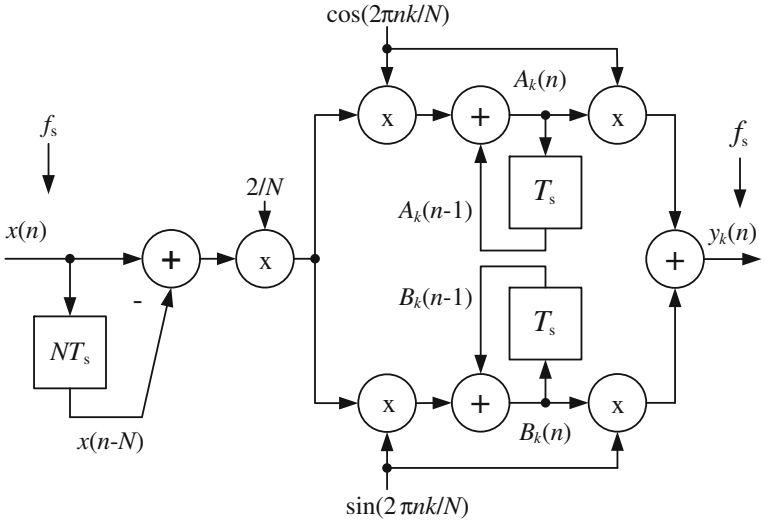



**Fig. 3.57** Block diagram of moving DFT filter

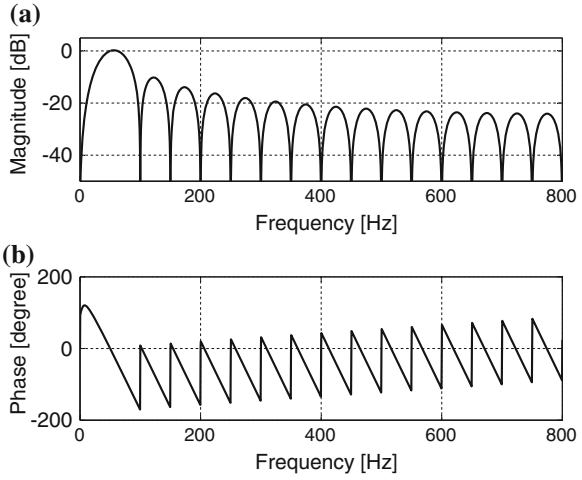



**Fig. 3.58** Frequency response of MDFT filter for: $k = 1$, $N = 32$, $f_s = 1600$ Hz: **a** magnitude, **b** phase

### *3.7.6 Wave Digital Lattice Filter Bank*

Lattice wave digital filters are very well suited for building a filter bank. Figure 3.60 depicts analysis and synthesis filter banks. A potential connection between the filter banks is indicated by a dotted line. Especially, attractive are filter banks using bireciprocal lattice wave digital filters. A two-channel analysis filter bank is used

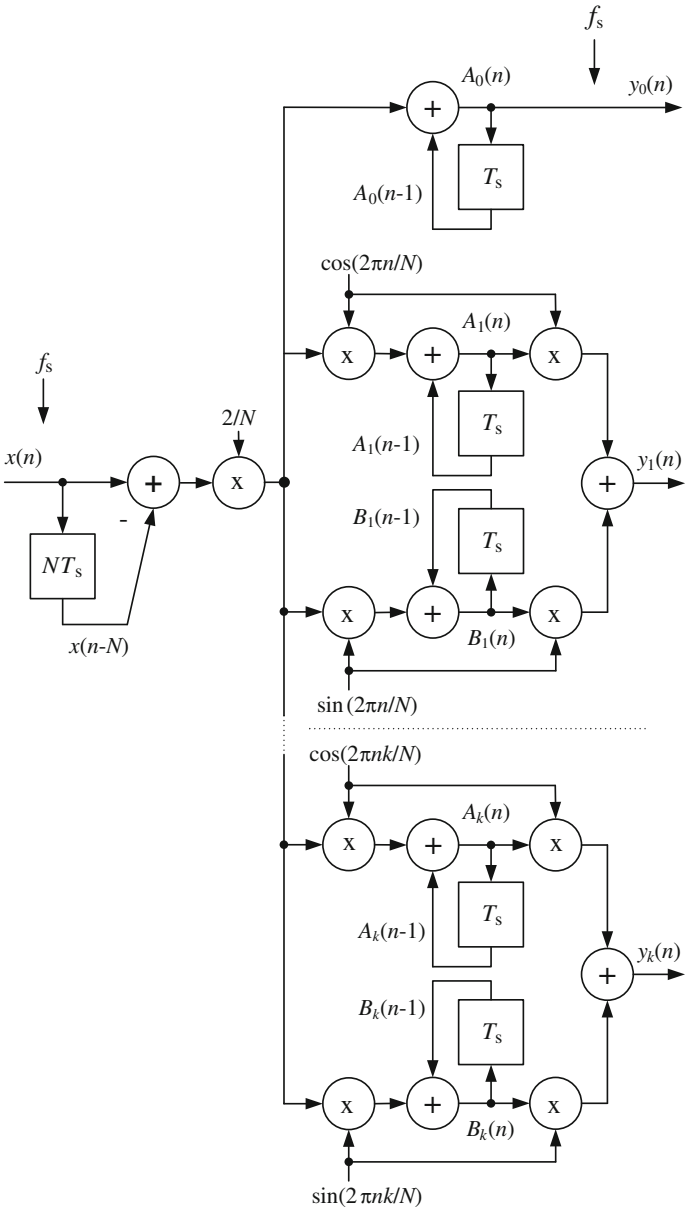



**Fig. 3.59** Block diagram of moving DFT analysis filter bank

to separate signal into two subband signals for $f/f_s = 0.25$. A subband coding filter bank consists of an analysis filter bank followed by a synthesis filter bank. The analysis and synthesis filter banks are maximally decimated filter banks.

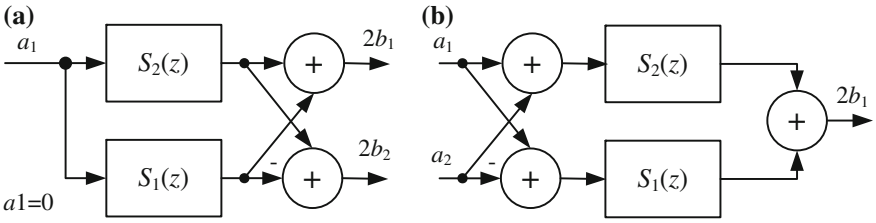



**Fig. 3.60** Lattice wave digital filter banks: **a** analysis filter bank, **b** synthesis filter bank

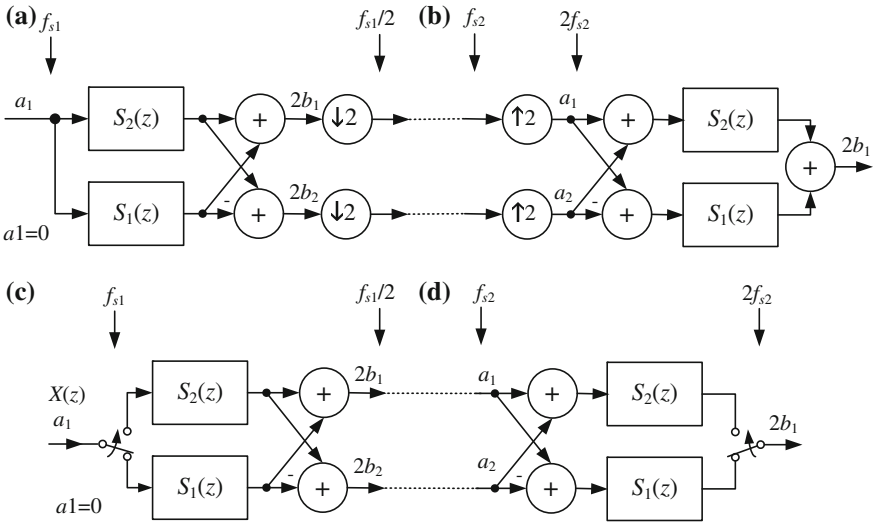



**Fig. 3.61** Filter banks with bireciprocal lattice wave digital filters: **a** analysis filter bank with decimation, **b** synthesis filters with interpolation, **c** polyphase analysis filter bank, **d** polyphase synthesis filter bank

Figure 3.61a, b shows the two-channel version, also called the quadrature mirror filter (QMF) bank. If the filter banks are connected there is a relation between sampling rates as follows $f_{s1}/2 = f_{s2}$. The corresponding synthesis filter bank recombines the subband signals to obtain the origin signal again. The lattice wave digital filter bank with recovery of effective pseudopower [22] has additional advantages: greater dynamic range, low level of rounding noise, and broader singing margin under looped conditions. The pairs of two complementary filters are shown in Fig. 3.61.

Figure 3.61c, d shows polyphase implementation of the filter banks. In these filters, downsampler and upsampler are realized by simple switches.

Using the methods presented by Gazsi [37], it is possible to design bireciprocal lattice wave digital filter with coefficients useful for implementation for low resolution fixed point arithmetic. For example seventh-order elliptic filter with binary values of coefficients $\gamma_1 = 0.01011001\text{b}$, $\gamma_3 = 0.010001\text{b}$, $\gamma_5 = 0.00011\text{b}$, and

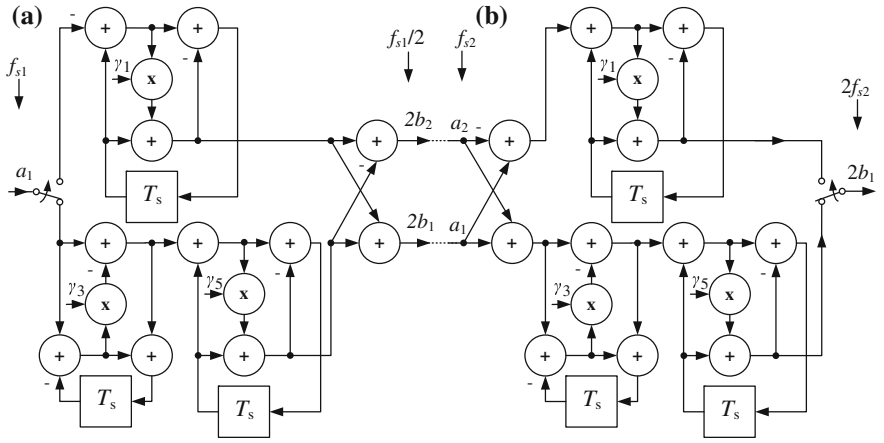



**Fig. 3.62** Block diagram of the filter banks using BWDF: **a** analysis filter bank, **b** synthesis filter bank

$\gamma_1 = 0.34765625$, $\gamma_2 = 0.09375$, $\gamma_3 = 0.265625$ in decimal code, respectively. This filter is used for building analysis and synthesis filter banks. A diagram with full details of the filter banks with recovery of effective pseudopower are shown in Fig. 3.62. The transfer functions of filter branches are:

$$S_2(z) = \frac{\gamma_1 + z^{-1}}{1 + \gamma_1 z^{-1}}, \quad S_1(z) = \frac{\gamma_3 + z^{-1}}{1 + \gamma_3 z^{-1}} \frac{1 - \gamma_5 + z^{-1}}{1 + (1 - \gamma_5) z^{-1}}. \tag{3.64}$$

The main advantages of the filter are: simplicity, the filter speed is decreased by the decimation fold $M = 2$. For realization of the complete lattice filter bank only 7 multipliers and 22 adders are needed. Two main versions of the filter realization are possible: fixed point and floating point. Using filter coefficients in the binary form in the fixed-point version, it is possible to replace the multiplier by a shifter, making it very simple and quick. For these filter banks, the author made a simulation using the Matlab program. A block diagram of the synthesis digital lattice filter is shown in Fig. 3.62b. For measuring filter frequency response, the unit impulse method was applied. The impulse responses for both of the filter inputs were calculated. In the low-pass input checking procedure on the filter input $a_2$, a block with zero samples was applied and on the second input $a_1$ a block with unit impulse signal (a single nonzero sample). During the high-pass input checking procedure the input was swapped. For every response $N = 2048$ samples were stored and after that, the FFT of both results was calculated. The results of these are in Fig. 3.63. The amplitude characteristics of both inputs are shown in Fig. 3.63a, and passband characteristics are shown in Fig. 3.63d. The amplitude frequency responses are mirror images of each other about $f/f_s = 0.25$. The passband losses are very small, close to 0.003 dB.

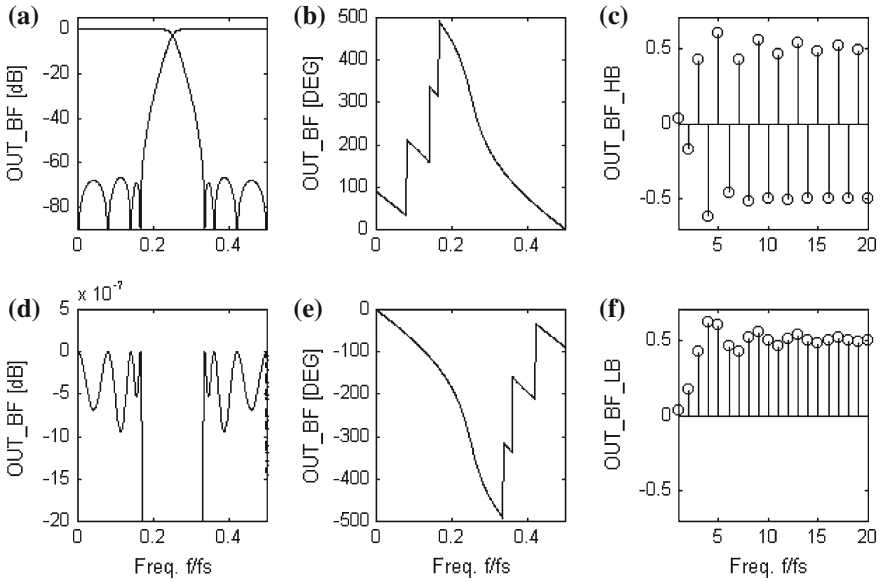



**Fig. 3.63** Frequency responses of the synthesis lattice filter: **a** amplitude characteristics of low-pass and high-pass inputs **d** passband low-pass and high-pass inputs, **b** phase characteristics of high-pass input, **e** phase characteristics low-pass input, amplitude responses on unit step input signal: **c** high-pass input, **f** low-pass input

The phase characteristics of the high-pass input is shown in Fig. 3.63b, and of the low-pass input, in Fig. 3.63e.

To prepare the amplitude synthesis filter response for a unit step, one of the synthesis inputs was excited with a unit step pulse signal and another with zero samples. For preparing a second response the inputs were swapped. The results of this are shown in Fig. 3.63. The result of low-pass input (Fig. 3.63f) is typical but the response of the high-pass input (Fig. 3.63c) is different than that expected, after transient responses to the filter output, signal with frequency $f = 0.5\,f_s$ occurs. This effect is explained in Fig. 3.64 in which the frequency amplitude responses of the synthesis filter bank on high-pass and on low-pass sinusoidal input signals are shown. In the first row are the FFT of input signals, in the second row are FFT of the responses of high-pass input and in the third row are FFTs of the responses of low-pass input. The block diagram of the analysis digital filter bank is shown in Fig. 3.62a. This filter was implemented in the program MATLAB too. For the analysis filter bank, the quickest measuring method consisting in the application of an impulse input signal cannot be used, because the downsampler is placed in this case in front of the other filter elements and the impulse would affect only one branch of the filter. For checking filter characteristics, a method with sinusoidal signal on the input and maximum amplitude detector on the output was used. This method was applied to the frequency range $f/f_s = 0 - 0.5$ with step 2/N using $N = 1024$ sample block.

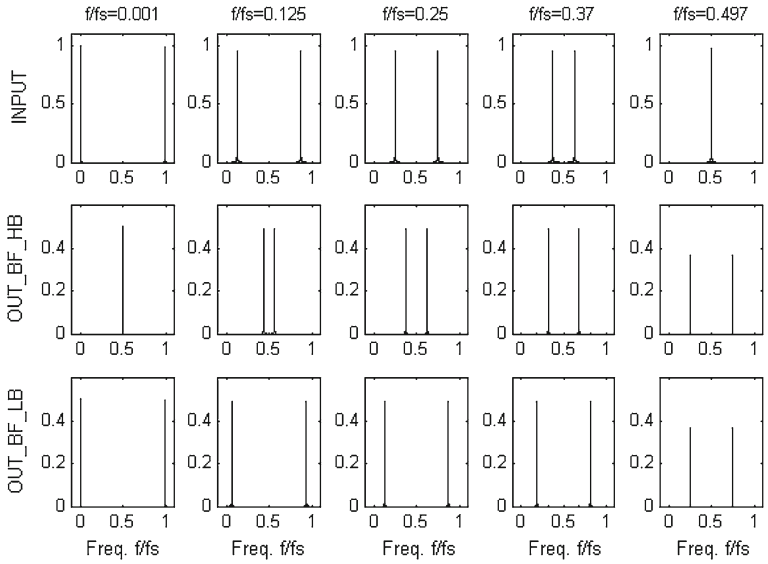



**Fig. 3.64** Frequency amplitude responses of the synthesis filter bank on high-pass and on low-pass sinusoidal input signals with frequencies $f/f_s$: 0.001, 0.125, 0.25, 0.37, 0.497

The first 50 samples of every response were zeroed for damping transient distortion. The obtained amplitude characteristics are shown in Fig. 3.65. The characteristics of the analysis filter outputs are shown in Fig. 3.65b. The amplitude frequency responses are similar to synthesis filter characteristics, and are mirror images of each other about the $f/f_s = 0.5$. The passband characteristics are shown in Fig. 3.65d, the passband losses are near to 0.0001 dB. In Fig. 3.65c, the output signal of the synthesis filter is a reconstructed version of the input signal. The reconstruction error in this method is less than 0.005 dB. In the second method the same input signal was applied, but the amplitude detector was replaced by a FFT. For every sinusoidal signal, the maximum amplitude of a FFT response was found. This method was applied for the frequency range $f/f_s = 0 - 0.5$ with step 4/N using $N = 2048$ sample block. The characteristics obtained (Fig. 3.66) are similar to those in the above methods. Analysis filter bank can be tested by unit impulse if the test circuit will use a version of the bank without the input switch, as shown in Fig. 3.61a and Fig. 3.41.

## 3.8 Implementation of Digital Signal Processing Algorithms

Many power electronics control circuits have constraints on latency; that is, for the system to work, the control circuit operation must be completed within some fixed time, and deferred processing is not viable. Therefore for such application, the requirements for the control system are the highest. A specifically optimized

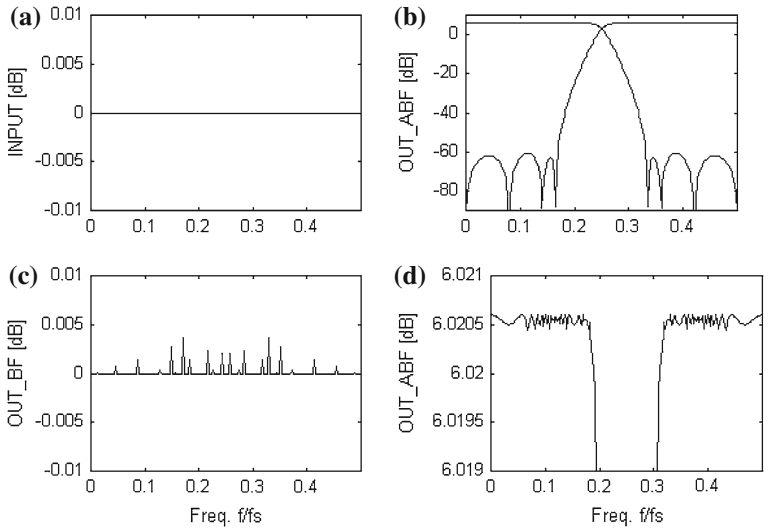



**Fig. 3.65** Frequency characteristics of the digital lattice filter bank obtained in sinusoidal input signal with amplitude detector on the outputs. **a** Input signal, **b** amplitude of analysis filters, **c** amplitude of the filter bank output, **d** passband of analysis filters

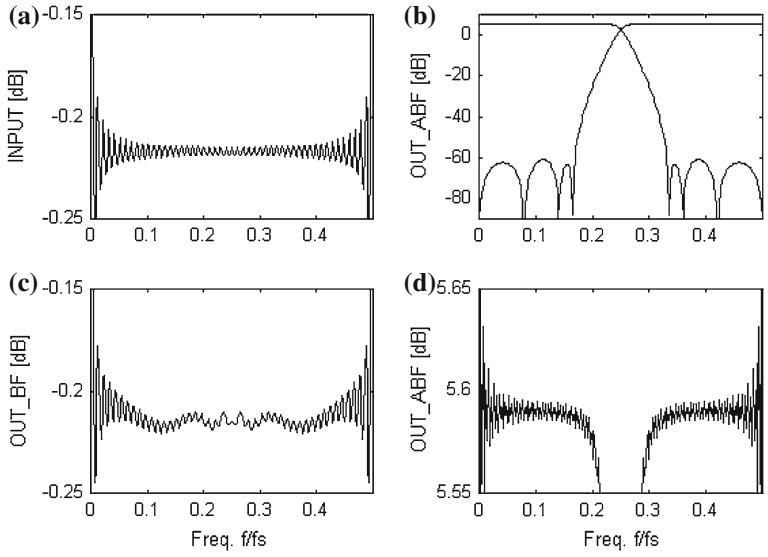



**Fig. 3.66** Frequency characteristics of the digital lattice filter bank obtained in sinusoidal input signal with FFT on the outputs: **a** input signal, **b** amplitude of analysis filters, **c** amplitude of the filter bank output, **d** passband of analysis filters

architecture for digital signal processing calculation is a feature of the digital signal processor (DSP). Most general-purpose microprocessors can execute digital signal processing algorithms successfully, but they are not designed for the intensive calculations and use of them requires much greater hardware and software resources than using a DSP. However, manufacturers of microprocessors are continually modifying their products to approaching the capabilities of digital signal processors. Some important features of a DSP are described below. Currently for digital signal processing computation, it is possible to consider five main types of digital devices:

- general-purpose microprocessors (μP) and microcontrollers (μC),
- fixed-point digital signal processors,
- floating-point digital signal processors,
- programmable digital circuits, field programmable gate array (FPGA),
- special-purpose devices such as application-specific integrated circuits (ASIC).

The main algorithms for DSP hardware are described in Table 3.7.

C language is the most popular high-level tool for evaluating digital signal processing algorithms and developing real-time software for practical applications. Implementation of digital signal processing using C language is presented by Embree and Kimble [27], Press et al. [59]. Many aspects of digital algorithm implementations using digital signal processors are considered by: Wanhammar [80], Oshana [54], Orfanidis [53], Bagci [11].

Table 3.8 shows the main features of the processors. In an application-specific integrated circuit the algorithm is implemented in the hardware only. These devices are designed to perform a fixed-function or set of functions. These devices run exceedingly fast in comparison to a programmable solution, but they are not as flexible. If the algorithm is a stable and well-defined function that needs to run really fast with low power consumption, an ASIC may be a good solution.

Field-programmable gate arrays are programmable digital devices and it is possible to reprogram them in the field. These devices are not as flexible as

**Table 3.7** Main DSP algorithms

| Algorithm | Formula |
|---|---|
| FIR filter | $y(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{N} b_k x(n-k)$ |
| IIR filter | $y(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{N} b_k x(n-k) + \sum_{k=1}^{M} a_k y(n-k)$ |
| Discrete convolution | $y(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} x(k)h(n-k)$ |
| Correlation | $y(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} w(k)x(n+k)$ |
| DFT | $Y(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} x(k)(\cos(2\pi nm/N) - \mathrm{j}\sin(2\pi nm/N))$ |

**Table 3.8** Summary of DSP hardware implementation

| | μP and μC | Fixed-point DSP | Floating-point DSP | FPGA | ASIC |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Flexibility | Programming | Programming | Programming | Programming | None |
| Processing speed | Low-medium | High | High | High | High |
| Support for multiplication and accumulation | None-rare | Yes | Yes | Possible | Possible |
| Reliability | Medium-high | High | High | Medium | High |
| Resolution | Low | Low-medium | Medium-high | Low-medium | Medium |
| Additional peripheries: | | Possible | Possible | Yes | Yes |
| counters, PWMs, A/Ds | Yes | | | | |
| Design time | Medium-long | Short | Short | Medium | Long |
| Power consumption | Low | Low | Medium-high | Low-medium | Low |
| Design cost | Low-medium | Low | Low | Medium | High |
| Unit cost | Low-medium | Low-medium | Medium-high | Low-medium | Low |

microprocessors. FPGA producers have prepared special libraries for the implementation of digital signal processing algorithms.

General purpose microprocessors and microcontrollers are the most versatile solution. Such a solution is now available for a lot of μP and μC families, as are many integrated software tools for their programming. The disadvantage of universal processors is their poor computing performance for signal processing applications. Among the many publications on DSPs and implementation of digital signal processing algorithms, special mention can be given to books written by: Chassaing [14, 15], Kuo and Lee [43], Dahnoun [24], Wanhammar [80], Orfandis [52, 53], Dabrowski [20]. Below the features of digital signal processors will be further presented.

### *3.8.1 Basic Features of the DSP*

In this section are discussed the major hardware components which allow a very efficient implementation of digital signal processing algorithms. These elements are not usually found in universal microprocessors and must be replaced by additional software.

### 3.8.1.1 Multiplication and Accumulation

In respect, A/D converter for a fixed-point DSP the number of bits determines the dynamic range of signal processing. Figure 3.67 shows the dynamic range of a typical fixed-point DSP. The main task for DSP hardware is described by equation

$$y(n+1) = a(n)x(n) + y(n). \tag{3.65}$$

The block diagram of a typical DSP multiplier with accumulator (MAC) is shown in Fig. 3.68, with input operands $x(n)$ and $a(n)$ having $b$-bit resolution, and the output having $2b$-bit resolution. Accumulation is made using 2b-bit resolution and finally this makes it possible to calculate the basic equation (3.65) with better accuracy than $b$-bit

$$\overbrace{y(n+1)}^{2b-bit} = \overbrace{\overbrace{a(n)}^{b-bit}\overbrace{x(n)}^{b-bit} + \overbrace{y(n)}^{2b-bit}}^{2b-bit}. \tag{3.66}$$

This is a method which extends the dynamic range while keeping the cost of the system and its power consumption within reasonable limits. This kind of multiplication with accumulation is a typical solution in DSP and it is rare in microprocessors and microcontrollers. It is also possible to implement it with FPGA and ASIC circuits. In DPSs, parallel architecture is used with DSPs executing instructions in stages, so more than one instruction can be executed at a time. For example, while one instruction is doing a multiplication and accumulation another instruction can be moving data and other resources on the DSP chip.

### 3.8.1.2 Circular Addressing

In most digital signal processing algorithms convolution is one of the major algorithms, and therefore moving samples in the buffer is one of the basic operations.

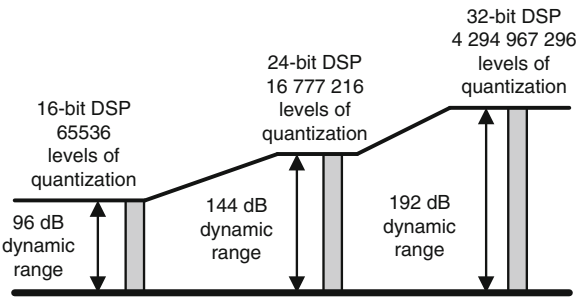



**Fig. 3.67** Dynamic ranges of fixed-point digital signal processors

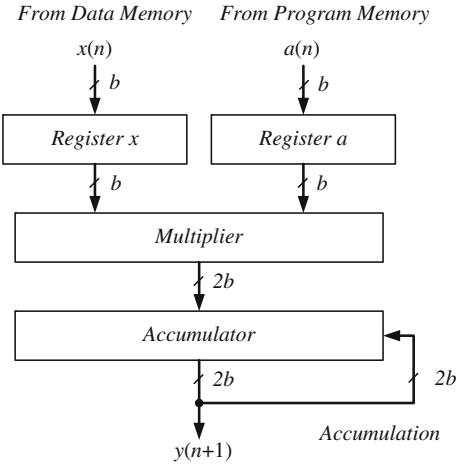



**Fig. 3.68** Block diagram of multiplier with accumulator

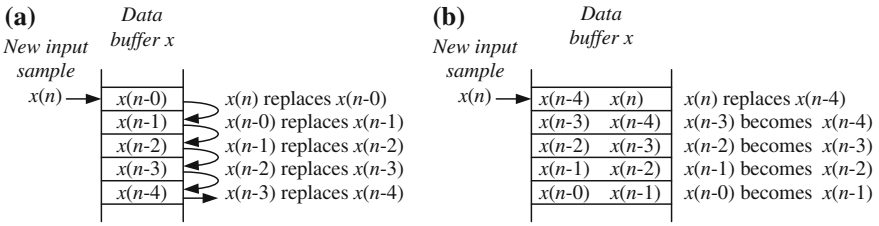



**Fig. 3.69** Implementation of delay line: **a** with shifting of samples, **b** with pointer manipulation using circular addressing

Figure 3.69 shows the two basic variants of such an operation. In the first one (Fig. 3.69a), all samples are shifted in the data buffer. This is a very uneconomical solution, because in moving the samples the operation consumes processor time unproductively. In a better solution (Fig. 3.69b) only the pointer of the beginning of the buffer is modified, without having to move the samples. Circular addressing uses pointer manipulation to add the new samples to the buffer by overwriting the oldest available samples hence reusing the memory buffer. When the pointer reaches the last location of the delay line, it needs to wrap back to the beginning of the line. This solution is widely used in digital signal processors and it is supported by appropriate hardware that allows the performing of operations on the addresses in the background, parallel to the main program. This type of addressing is called circular addressing and the buffer is called a circular buffer. For example, the buffer is described in [61] for DSP TMS320C6000 family and in [5] for DSP SHARC family.

#### 3.8.1.3 Barrel Shifter

The next type of operation is to shift digital bits in a word. In a typical microprocessor it is performed by a shift register, with the consequence that for each shift of one bit one clock cycle is needed. Thus for instance, a shift of 12 bits requires 12 clock cycles, this is too much. Therefore, the DSP is equipped with a matrix shift system also called a Barrel shifter which allows the shifting or rotating of a data word by any number of bits in a single machine cycle. This is implemented like a multiplexer, and each output can be connected to any input, depending on the shift distance.

#### 3.8.1.4 Hardware-Controlled Loop

For subsequent operations necessary to implement convolution the loop is necessary for the implementation of the repetitions. In a typical microprocessor operations are carried out by repetition software, which makes it necessary to add additional cycles to handle the loop. In the DSP, there is added additional hardware which allows execution of the procedural loops in the background with no additional CPU load. As a result, in the loop there are executed only digital signal processing operations without additional losses associated with handling machine cycles of the loop. This feature is also called zero overhead looping—using dedicated hardware to take care of counters and lattices in loops.

#### 3.8.1.5 Saturation Arithmetic

Another important feature of the calculation unit used in control systems is saturation arithmetic. This is important for fixed-point arithmetic. The system should behave like an analog one, when the signal reaches the lower or upper limit. In analog circuits, the lower and the upper limit is equal with respect to negative and positive supply voltages. In typical ALU, a change of the signal sign can occur when the signal overflows, which may result in serious consequences for the control circuit. Therefore, programmers must ensure that the signal limit is not exceeded, which often requires extra programming effort. Below is a simple program for adding two variables by checking overflows and limiting the signal output

```
# define max 0 x 7fff
# define min 0 x 8000
int x,u,y;
long y_temp;
...
y_temp = x + u;
if y_temp > max
    y = max;
else if y_temp < min
```

```
    y = min;
else
    y = (int) y_temp;
```

The DSP has additional hardware for arithmetic saturation, typically controlled by a bit in a special control register. Therefore, when arithmetic saturation is switched on, the programmer does not have to worry about checking the signal overflows and the processor does not need any additional program for checking overflows. The program for adding two variables is simple

```
# define max 0 x 7fff
# define min 0 x 8000
int x,u,y;
...
y = x + u;
```

Figure 3.70 shows a signal for incrementing $y = y + 1$, for a 16-bit two's complement binary code (U2), when the signal value does not exceed the value 7FFF. It is similar with a decrementing signal $y = y - 1$, when the value of the signal does not exceed the value 8,000.

### 3.8.1.6 Pipelined Architecture

In typical processors, instruction execution consists in three phases: fetch, decode, and execute. This process is shown in Fig. 3.71a, where execution of the instruction needs three processor cycles. In the DSP, there is a well-developed operational

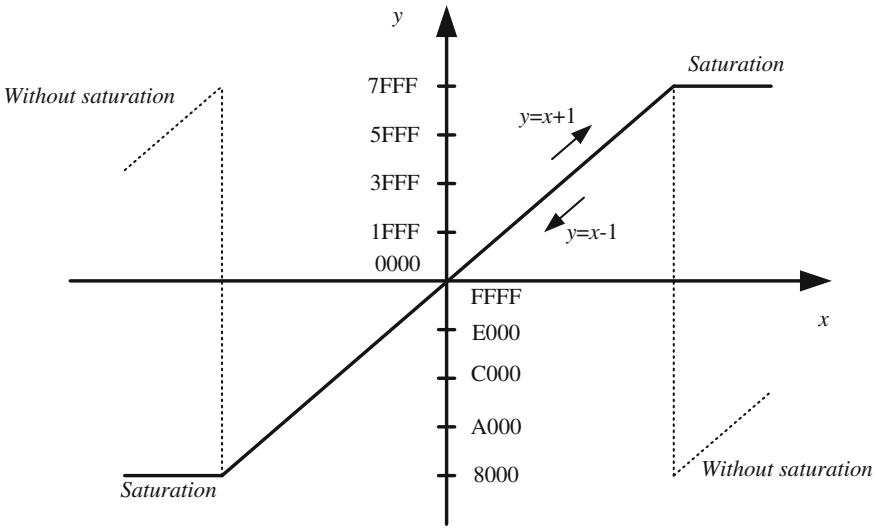



**Fig. 3.70** Arithmetic saturation

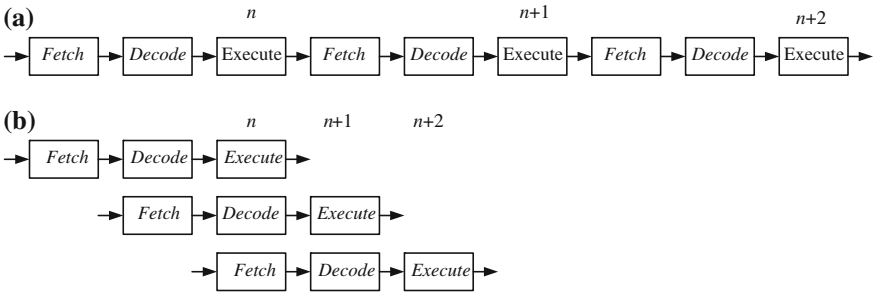



**Fig. 3.71** Instruction execution: **a** without pipeline, **b** with pipeline

parallelism, to accelerate the processor operations, with simultaneously performed fetch, decode and execute operations as shown in Fig. 3.71b. With this modification processors can work three times faster, for the linear flow of the program. Of course, in the event of a program branch, the whole effect is lost. Therefore, in the digital signal processor, delayed branches have been introduced, which allow the use of fetched and decoded instructions. The DSP pipelines are even more sophisticated and powerful, in that they allow also reduction of efficiency losses in the processor due to branches, hardware-controlled loop, interrupts etc.

On the market, there are now many different processors and it is very hard to choose the right one. In the author's opinion, the most important are the following features:

- separate program and data memories (Harvard architecture) allows the DSP to fetch code without affecting the performance of the calculations,
- pipelined architecture, with DSPs executing instructions in stages so more than one instruction can be executed at a time. For example, while one instruction is doing a multiply with another instruction can be fetching data with other resources on the DSP chip.
- single cycle operation,
- multiplier with extended resolution of accumulation, multiplier-accumulator (MAC unit),
- barrel shifter–single cycle matrix shifter,
- hardware-controlled looping, to reduce or eliminate the overhead required for looping operations,
- memory-address calculation unit, hardware-controlled circular addressing,
- saturation arithmetic, in which operations that produce overflows will accumulate at the maximum (or minimum) values,
- parallel architecture, parallel instruction set,
- support for fractional arithmetic.

In contrast to what general purpose processors provide, the above features enable the rapid execution of calculations and with adequate precision. Table 3.9 shows the selected DSP useful for the implementation of a control circuit for power electronics circuits.

**Table 3.9** Selected DSP suitable for power electronics control circuit

| Name | TMS320F283x | TMS320C67x | SHARC | MC56F84xxx |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Architecture | Harvard | Floating-point VLIW | Enhanced Harvard | Dual Harvard |
| Fixed-point | 32-bit | 32-bit | 32/64-bit | 32-bit |
| Floating-point | IEEE single-precision | IEEE double-precision | 32/40-bit IEEE | No |
| PWM | 18 PWM, 150 ps | Yes | 16 PWM | 24 PWM, 312 ps |
| A/D | 2 × 12-bit, 80 ns, 2 × SH | None | None | 2 × 12-bit high speed |
| MAC | 32 × 32 bit or dual 16 × 16 bit MAC | Two ALUs fixed-point, 32-bit<br>fixed-point multipliers with 64-bit product | 80-bit accumulation | 32 × 32-bit with 32-bit or 64-bit result |
| Shifter | Barrel | Barrel | Barrel | 32-bit |
| Signal processing performance | 300 MHz 600 MFLOPS | 350 MHz 2100 MFLOPS | 450 MHz 2700 MFLOPS | 100 MHz 100 MIPS |
| ROM | 256 k × 16 flash memory | No | Up to 4 Mb | 256 kB |
| RAM | 34 k × 16 | 256 k | 1-4 Mb | Up to 32 kB |
| Input/output | 88 GPIO pins | Yes | Up to 16-bit | General purpose I/O |
| Special addressing modes | Circular addressing | Yes | 32 hardware circular buffer | Parallel instruction set with unique DSP addressing modes |
| Hardware loop | Yes | Yes | Six nested levels of zero-overhead looping in hardware | Hardware DO and REP loops |
| Producer | Texas Instruments | Texas Instruments | Analog Devices | Freescale |

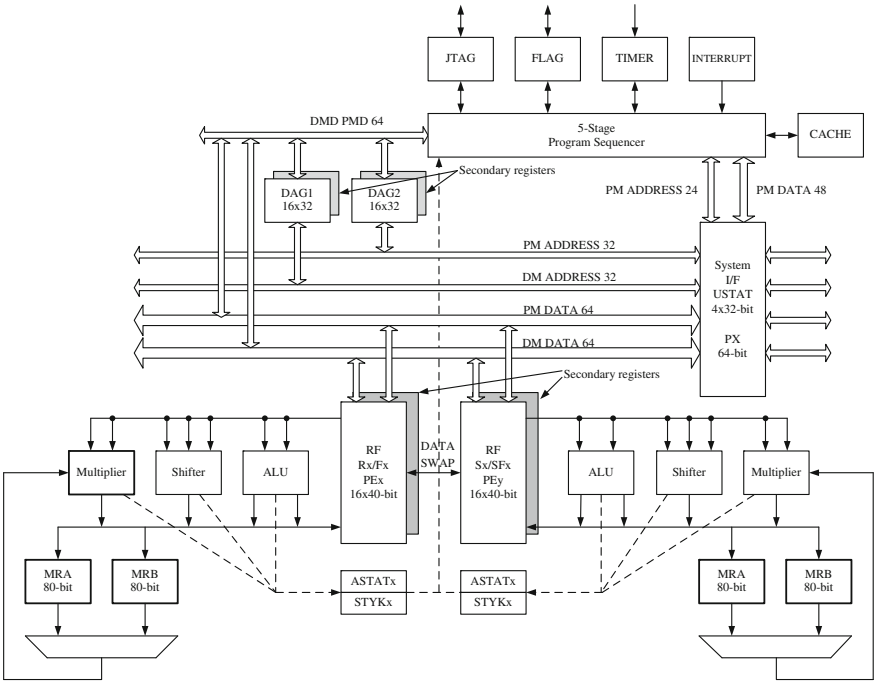



**Fig. 3.72** Simplified block diagram of SHARC DSP core ADSP-21367/8/9

### *3.8.2 Digital Signal Processors: SHARC Family*

In the author's opinion, a classic and probably the most programmer-friendly is the SHARC DSP family from Analog Devices [1–4]. This is because these processors have a very logical and clear structure. The assembler is a very simple and effective so-called algebraic assembler. A block diagram of the SHARC core is shown in Fig. 3.72 [5, 6]. The processor structure uses enhanced Harvard architecture, and consists of two sets of buses, one for data memory (DM) and a second for program memory (PM). PM and DM buses are capable of supporting $2 \times 64$-bit data transfers between memory and the core at every processor cycle.

Address buses are controlled by two address calculators (arithmometers) DAG 1 and DAG2. The DAGs are used for indirect addressing and implementing circular data buffers in hardware. Circular buffers allow efficient programming of delay lines and other data structures required in digital signal processing, and are commonly used in digital filters (Table 3.7) and Fourier transform (Table 3.7). The two DAGs contain sufficient registers to allow the formation of up to 32 circular buffers (16 primary register sets, 16 secondary). The DAGs automatically handle address pointer wraparound, reduce overheads, increase performance, and simplify implementation. The SHARC has two computation units (PEx, PEy), each of which comprises: an

**Table 3.10** SHARC pipeline

| Cycles | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Execute | | | | | n | n+1 | n+2 | n+3 | n+4 |
| Adress | | | | n | n+1 | n+2 | n+3 | n+4 | n+5 |
| Decode | | | n | n+1 | n+2 | n+3 | n+4 | n+5 | n+6 |
| Fetch2 | | n | n+1 | n+2 | n+3 | n+4 | n+5 | n+6 | n+7 |
| Fetch1 | n | n+1 | n+2 | n+3 | n+4 | n+5 | n+6 | n+7 | n+8 |

ALU, multiplier with Barrel shifter, and 16 × 40-bit data register file. These computation units support IEEE 32-bit single precision floating point, 40-bit extended precision floating point, and 32-bit fixed-point data formats. These units perform all operations in a single cycle. The three units within each processing element are arranged in parallel, maximizing computational throughput. Single multifunction instructions execute parallel ALU and multiplier operations. The processor includes an instruction cache that enables a three-bus operation for fetching an instruction and four data values. The cache is selective and only the instructions whose fetches conflict with PM bus data accesses are cached. The cache allows full-speed execution of core. Unlike other DSPs, SHARC has a programmer-friendly assembler, so it can very easily program the assembler code mixed with C language. The author considers that for standalone application, the SHARC processor family should have a flash memory. Table 3.10 illustrates how the instructions starting at address n are processed by the pipeline. While the instruction at address n is being executed, the instruction n + 1 is being processed in the address phase, n + 2 in the Decode phase, n + 3 in the Fetch2 phase, and n + 4 in the Fetch1 phase.

Using the processor hardware resources it is possible to write simple and effective programs in assembler. A sample program for the implementation of IIR filter second-order section

```
/* IIR Biquad Stage */
/* DM(I0,M1), DM(I1,M1) - data buffers in RAM */
/* PM(I8,M8) - buffer for coefficients in
program memory */
B1=B0;
/* first data */
F12=F12-F12, F2 = DM(I0,M1), F4 = PM(I8,M8);
Lcntr=N, do (pc,4) until lce; /* loop body */
/* parallel instructions */
F12=F2*F4, F8=F8+F12, F3 = DM(I0,M1), F4 = PM(I8,M8);
/* parallel instructions  */
F12=F3*F4, F8=F8+F12, DM(I1,M1)=F3, F4 = PM(I8,M8);
/* parallel instructions  */
F12=F2*F4, F8=F8+F12, F2 = DM(I0,M1), F4 = PM(I8,M8);
/* parallel instructions  */
F12=F3*F4, F8=F8+F12, DM(I1,M1)=F8, F4 = PM(I8,M8);
/* last MAC, delayed return */
```

```
RTS(db), F8=F8+F12,
Nop;
Nop;
```

SHARC processors are equipped with a comprehensive PWM modulators, so they can be used for controlling power electronics output circuits. However, acquisition of analog input signals should be realized by external modules.

### *3.8.3 Digital Signal Controller: TMS320F28xx family*

One of the most interesting DSP families is the TMS320F28x family, also called digital signal controller (DSC), from Texas Instruments [71, 72]. A typical representative of this family is the TMS320F28335 system. It is a complete system with many useful features in a single silicon chip. Therefore, it is especially good for power electronics applications. The core of the processor consists of an IEEE-754 single-precision floating-point unit. Especially, useful features for power electronics applications are: 16-channel 12-bit A/D converter with 80-ns conversion rate and two sample-and-hold circuits, 18 PWM outputs, clock and system control with dynamic PLL ratio changes, 256 K×16 flash memory, and 34 K×16 SARAM memory. The instruction cycle of the processor is equal to 6.67 ns for a processor clock equal to 150 MHz. For simplifying the design process a ControlCARD module with TMS320F28335 is used. The ControlCARD is a small 100 pin DIMM (dual in line "memory module") style vertical plug-in board based on the F28335. These ControlCARDs have all the necessary circuits: clock, supply LDO, decoupling, pull-ups, etc., to provide reliable operation for the DSC device (Fig. 3.73). This reference design is very robust and is meant for operation in noisy electrical environments (especially important in power electronics). It includes the following features:

- all general purpose input/output (GPIO), A/D converter and other key signal routed to gold edge connector fingers,
- clamping diode protection at A/D converter input pins,
- anti-aliasing filter (noise filter) at A/D converter pins,
- galvanic isolated UART communications.

The docking station is a very small basic mother board which accepts any member of the plug-in control card family. It provides the required 5 V power supply and gives the user access to all the GPIO and ADC signals. The system for developing software is shown in Fig. 3.73. It consists of F28335 control card, CC28xxx docking station and USB2000 Controller—JTAG emulator. Thanks to using the emulator, it is possible to develop the software comfortably. The emulator has access to all the processor registers and memories and its use makes it possible to program internal flash memory. For software development Code Composer Studio v4 is used. Additionally, Texas Instruments have prepared a lot of supporting tools, such as, Baseline Software Setup, DSP2833x Header Files, etc. For this processor family there have been created very useful teaching tools [72].

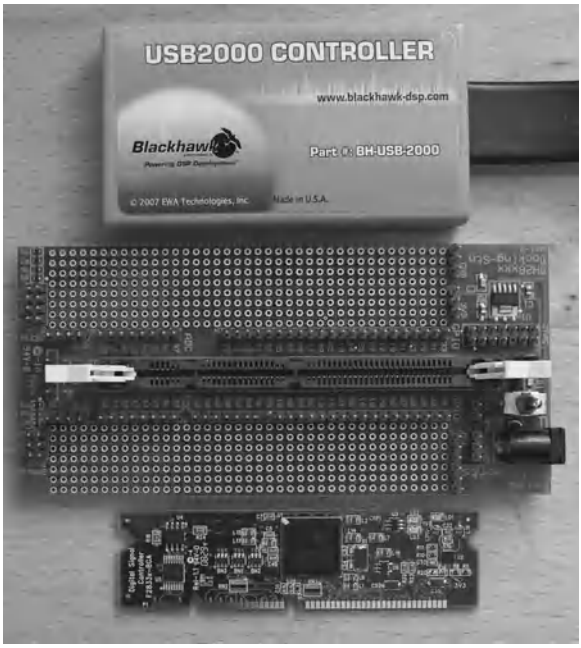



**Fig. 3.73** System for developing software and hardware: F28335 control card, CC28xxx docking station and USB2000 Controller

### *3.8.4 Digital Signal Processor: TMS320C6xxx Family*

The Texas Instruments TMS320C6000 family is a high performance fixed and floating-point DSP range. Implemented in these processors, there is a combination of high speed and multiple arithmetic units which can operate simultaneously. As a result they achieve high performance. For example, a low cost member of this family with fixed/floating point achieves 3648 MIPS (million instructions per second) at 456 MHz and 2746 MFLOPS (million floating-point instructions per second) at 456 MHz [73]. This high speed of calculation is possible to obtain through the use of parallel arithmetic units and the use of very long instruction words (VLIW), 256 bits. The DSP core consists two data paths with four functional units. So there are eight parallel functional units. To take advantage of all the arithmetic units great care is needed to write programs. Creating programs in assembly language is quite complex and in principle for this family programs are written in C. For this purpose, there has been developed a Code Composer Studio, a highly efficient C compiler and an assembly optimizer, an environment for creating optimal programs for parallel arithmetic units. However, programming these processors is more complicated in comparison to the SHARC processors. The TMS320C6000 family is described in Texas Instrument publications [73, 74], a very useful teaching manual [75], and in

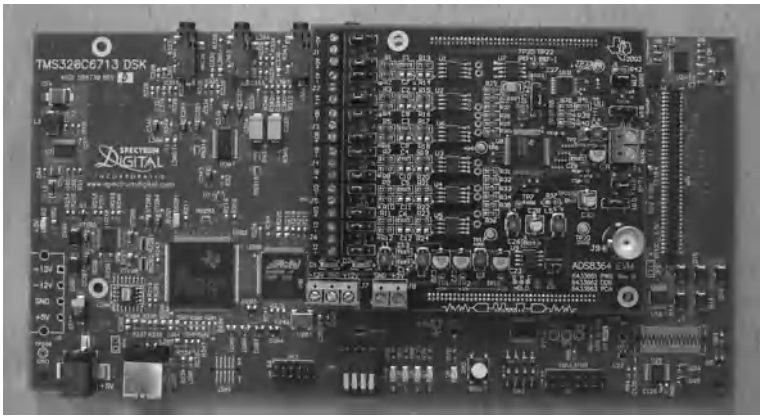



**Fig. 3.74** DSP TMS320C6713 evaluation module with 16-bit A/D converter ADS8364 evaluation module

independent books [12, 14, 24]. Typically, the TMS320C6000 family does not have particularly useful peripherals power electronic applications, so their use is possible only together with external peripherals. In the author's opinion, there is no big problem for input signal acquisition. It is possible to find prepared modules from Texas Instruments. For example, Fig. 3.74 shows the DSP TMS320C6713 family evaluation module with a 6-channel, 16-bit simultaneous sampling A/D converter–ADS8364 evaluation module. This solution is supported by Texas Instruments software.

## 3.9 Conclusions

This chapter has considered selected digital signal processing algorithms useful for a power electronics control circuit. Special attention has been paid to implementation aspects using digital signal processors. The author has presented an overview of the characteristics of microprocessors useful for implementing digital signal processing. The chapter has included descriptions of wave digital filters and a modified wave digital filter with the author's modifications. There has also been shown an effective application of wave digital filters in multirate circuits. In spite of the good features of the type of filters described in this chapter they are not commonly used. The presented methods and circuits are used in an application described in Chaps. 4 and 5.

## References

1. Analog Devices (1994) ADSP-21000 family application handbook, vol 1. Analog Devices, Inc., Norwood
2. Analog Devices (2004) ADSP-2106x SHARC Processor user's manual. Analog Devices, Inc., Norwood
3. Analog Devices (1999) Interfacing the ADSP-21065L SHARC DSP to the AD1819A AC-97 soundport codec. Analog Devices, Inc., Norwood

4. Analog Devices (2003) ADSP-21065L EZ-KIT lite evaluation system manual. Analog Devices, Inc., Norwood
5. Analog Devices (2005) ADSP-2136x SHARC processor hardware reference. Rev 1.0. Analog Devices Inc., Norwood
6. Analog Devices (2007) ADSP-21364 Processor EZ-KIT lite evaluation system manual. Rev 3.2, Analog Devices Inc., Norwood
7. Arriens HL (2006) (L)WDF Toolbox for MATLAB reference guide. Technical report, Delft University of Technology, WDF Toolbox RG v1 0.pdf.
8. Arriens HL (2006) (L)WDF Toolbox for MATLAB, user's guide. Technical report, Delft University of Technology, WDF Toolbox UG v1 0.pdf.
9. Aziz SA (2004) Efficient arbitrary sample rate conversion using zero phase IIR. In: Proceedings of AES 116th Convention, Berlin, Germany Audio Engineering Society
10. Aziz SA (2007) Sample rate converter having a zero phase filter. US Patent, US 7,167,113 B2
11. Bagci B (2003) Programming and use of TMS320F2812 DSP to control and regulate power electronic converters. Master's thesis, University of Applied Science Cologne
12. Bateman A, Paterson-Stephens I (2002) The DSP handbook: algorithms, applications and design techniques. Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs
13. Bruun G (1978) Z-transform DFT filters and FFT's. IEEE Trans Acoust Speech Signal Process 26(1):56–63
14. Chassaing R (2005) Digital signal processing and applications with the C6713 and C6416 DSK. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York
15. Chassaing R, Reay D (2008) Digital signal processing and applications with the C6713 and C6416 DSK. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York
16. Chen WK (ed.) (1995) The circuits and filters handbook. IEEE Press, New York
17. Crochiere RE, Rabiner LR (1983) Multirate digital signal processing. Prentice Hall Inc., Upper Saddle River
18. Czarnach R (1982) Recursive processing by noncausal digital filters. IEEE Trans Acoust Speech Signal Process 30(3):363–370
19. Dabrowski A (1988) Pseudopower recovery in multirate signal processing (Odzysk pseudomocy użtecznej w wieloszybkościowym przetwarzaniu sygnlów), vol 198. Wydawnictwo Politechniki Poznanskiej, Poznan (in Polish)
20. Dabrowski A (1997) Multirate and multiphase switched-capacitor circuits. Chapman & Hall, London
21. Dabrowski A (ed) (1997) Digital Signal Processing Using Digital Signal Processors. Wydawnictwo Politechniki Poznañskiej, Poznañ (in Polish)
22. Dabrowski A, Fettweis A (1987) Generalized approach to sampling rate alteration in wave digital filters. IEEE Transa. Circuit Syst Theory 34(6):678–686
23. Dabrowski A, Sozanski K (1998) Implementation of multirate modified wave digital filters using digital signal processors. XXI Krajowa Konferencja Teoria Obwodów i Uklady Elektroniczne, KKTUIE98, Poznan
24. Dahnoun N (2000) Digital signal processing implementation using the TMS320C6000 DSP platform. Pearson, Boston
25. Translation Data (2009) Benefits of simultaneous data acquisition modules. Technical report, Data Translation
26. Delft University of Technology (2012) (L)WDF toolbox for Matlab. Delft University of Technology, Technical report
27. Embree PM, Kimble B (1991) C language algorithms for digital signal processing. Prentice Hall Inc., Upper Saddle River
28. Farhang-Boroujeny B, Lee Y, Ko C (1996) Sliding transforms for efficient implementation of transform domain adaptive filters. Signal Processing, Elsevier 52(1):83–96
29. Fettweis A (1971) Digital filter structures related to classical filter networks. AEU, Band 25. Heft 2:79–89
30. Fettweis A (1972) Pseudo-passivity, sensitivity, and stability of wave digital filters. IEEE Trans. Circuit Theory 19(6):668–673

31. Fettweis A (1982) Transmultiplexers with either analog conversion circuits, wave digital filters, or SC filters: a review. IEEE Trans Commun 30(7):1575–1586
32. Fettweis A (1986) Wave digital filters: theory and practice. Proc IEEE 74(2):270–327
33. Fettweis A (1989) Modified wave digital filters for improved implementation by commercial digital signal processors. Signal Process 16(3):193–207
34. Fettweis A, Levin H, Sedlmeyer A (1974) Wave digital lattice filters. Int J Circuit Theory Appl 2(2):203–211
35. Fettweis A, Nossek J, Meerkotter K (1985) Reconstruction of signals after filtering and sampling rate reduction. IEEE Trans Acoust Speech Signal Process 33(4):893–902
36. Flige N (1994) Multirate digital signal processing. John Wiley & Sons, New York
37. Gazsi L (1985) Explicit formulas for lattice wave digital filters. IEEE Trans Circuits Syst 32(1):68–88
38. Goertzel G (1958) An algorithm for the evaluation of finite trigonometric series. Am Math Monthly 65:34–35
39. Hamming R (1989) Digital filters. Dover Publications Inc., New York
40. Izydorczyk J, Konopacki J (2003) Analog and digital filters. Wydawnictwo Pracowni Komputerowej, Gliwice (in Polish)
41. Jacobsen E, Lyons R (2003) The sliding DFT. IEEE Signal Process Mag 20(2):74–80
42. Jacobsen E, Lyons R (2004) An update to the sliding DFT. IEEE Signal Process Mag 21: 110–111
43. Kuo S M, Lee B H (2001) Real-time digital signal processing, implementation, applications, and experiments with the TMS320C55X. John Wiley & Sons, New York
44. Kurosu A, Miyase S, Tomiyama S, Takebe T (2003) A technique to truncate IIR filter impulse response and its application to real-time implementation of linear-phase IIR filters. IEEE Trans Signal Process 51(5):1284–1292
45. Lawson S (1995) Wave digital filters. In: Chen W-K (ed) The circuits and filters handbook. IEEE Press, New York, pp 2634–2657
46. Lawson S, Mirzai A (1990) Wave digital filters. Ellis-Horwood, New York
47. Ledger D, Tomarakos J (1998) Using The low cost, high performance ADSP-21065L digital signal processor for digital audio applications. Revision 1.0, Analog Devices, Norwood
48. Lyons R (2004) Understanding digital signal processing, 2nd edn. Prentice Hall, Upper Saddle River
49. Lyons R, Bell A (2004) The swiss army knife of digital networks. IEEE Signal Process Mag 21(3):90–100
50. Mitra S (2006) Digital signal processing: a computer-based approach. McGraw-Hill, New York
51. Oppenheim AV, Schafer RW (1999) Discrete-time signal processing. Prentice Hall, New Jersey
52. Orfanidis SJ (1996) ADSP-2181 experiments. http://www.ece.rutgers.edu/orfanidi/ezkitl/man.pdf. Accessed December 2012
53. Orfanidis SJ (2010) Introduction to signal processing. Prentice Hall, New Jersey
54. Oshana R (2005) DSP software development techniques for embedded and real-time systems. Newnes, London
55. Owen M (2007) Practical signal processing. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge
56. Pasko M, Walczak J (1999) Signal theory. Wydawnictwo Politechniki Slaskiej, Gliwice (in Polish)
57. Powell SR, Chau PM (1991) A technique for realizing linear phase IIR filters. IEEE Trans Signal Process 39(11):2425–2435
58. Proakis JG, Manolakis DM (1996) Digital signal processing, principles, algorithms, and application. Prentice Hall Inc., New Jersey
59. Press WH, Teukolsky SA, Vetterling WT, Flannery BP (2007) Numerical recipes: the art of scientific computing, 3rd edn. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge
60. Rabiner LR, Gold B (1975) Theory and application of digital signal processing. Prentice Hall Inc., New Jersey
61. Rao D (2001) Circular buffering on TMS320C6000. Application Report, SPAR645A, Texas Instruments

62. Sozanski K (1999) Design and research of digital filters banks using digital signal processors. PhD thesis, Technical University of Poznan (in Polish)
63. Sozanski K (2002) Implementation of modified wave digital filters using digital signal processors. In: Conference proceedings, 9th international conference on electronics. circuits and systems, ICECS 2002, pp 1015–1018
64. Sozanski (2003) Active power filter control algorithm using the sliding DFT. In: Workshop proceedings, signal processing 2003, Poznan, Poland, pp 69–73
65. Sozański K (2004), Harmonic compensation using the sliding DFT algorithm. In: Conference proceedings, 35rd annual IEEE power electronics specialists conference, PESC 2004, Aachen, Germany
66. Sozanski K (2008) Improved shunt active power filters. Przeglad Elektrotechniczny (Electrical Review) 45(11):290–294
67. Sozanski K (2010) Digital realization of a click modulator for an audio power amplifier. Przeglad Elektrotechniczny (Electric Review) 2010(2):353–357
68. Sozanski K (2012) Realization of a digital control algorithm. In: Benysek G, Pasko M (eds) Power theories for improved power quality. Springer-Verlag London, pp 117–168
69. Sozanski K, Strzelecki R, Fedyczak Z (2001) Digital control circuit for class-D audio power amplifier. In: Conference proceedings, 2001 IEEE 32nd annual power electronics specialists conference-PESC 2001, pp 1245–1250
70. Tantaratana S (1995) Design of IIR filters. In: Chen WK (ed) The circuits and filters handbook. IEEE Press, New York
71. Instruments Texas (2008) TMS320F28335/28334/28332, TMS320F28235/28234/28232 digital signal controllers (DSCs). Data manual, Texas Instruments Inc
72. Texas Instruments (2010) C2000 Teaching materials, tutorials and applications. SSQC019, Texas Instruments Inc
73. Texas Instruments (2011) TMS320C6745/C6747 DSP technical reference manual. SPRUH91A, Texas Instruments Inc
74. Texas Instruments (2011) TMS320C6746 Fixed/floating-point DSP, Data Sheet, SPRS591, Texas Instruments Inc
75. Texas Instruments (2012) C6000 Teaching materials. SSQC012, Texas Instruments Inc
76. Vaidyanathan PP (1992) Multirate systems and filter banks. Prentice Hall Inc., New Jersey
77. Venezuela RA, Constantindes AG (1982) Digital signal processing schemes for efficient interpolation and decimation. IEE Proc Part G(6):225–235
78. Vesterbacka M (1997) On implementation of maximally fast wave digital filters. Dissertations no. 487, Linköping University
79. Vesterbacka M, Palmkvist K, Wanhammar L (1996) Maximaly fast, bit-serial lattice wave digital filters. In: Proceedigs DSP Workshop '96 IEEE, Loen, Norway, pp 207–210
80. Wanhammar L (1999) DSP integrated circuit. Academic Press, New York
81. Zielinski T (2005) Digital signal processing: from theory to application. Wydawnictwo Komunikacji i Lacznosci, Warsaw (in Polish)
82. Zolzer U (2008) Digital audio signal processing, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York
83. Zolzer U (ed) (2002) DAFX-Digital audio effects. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York

# Chapter 4
# Selected Active Power Filter Control Algorithms

## 4.1 Introduction

In the early days of active filters, at the end of the 1980s and early 1990s, hybrid control circuits were used, which consisted of both analog and digital components. For example, an integrated circuit AC vector processor AD2S100 from Analog Devices [1] was used by the author in such control circuits [49]. In subsequent years, there occurred a slow transition to fully digital control systems which are currently widely used. The use of digital control systems made it possible to use more complex digital signal processing algorithms. Therefore, this chapter is devoted to the selected digital signal processing algorithms designed to control APFs.

In this chapter, the author's modifications of selected APF control algorithms are described [44]. To begin with, harmonic detectors are considered: IIR filter, LWDF, sliding DFT [35, 37] and sliding Goertzel, moving DFT. Then the author's implementation of a classical control circuit based on modified instantaneous reactive power theory is discussed (IPT) [45].

Dynamic distortion in APF makes it impossible to fully eliminate line harmonics. In some cases, the line current *THD* ratio for systems with APF compensation can reach a value of a dozen or so percent. So the problems of active power filter dynamics should be investigated. The power loads can be divided into two main categories: predictable loads and noise-like loads. Most loads belong to the first category. For this reason, it is possible to predict current values in subsequent periods, after a few periods of observation. The author has proposed APF models suitable for analysis and simulation of this phenomena. The author has found a solution to these problems [37, 40, 43, 44]. For predictable line current changes, it is possible to develop a predictable control algorithm that allows for significant reduction in APF dynamics compensation errors. The following sections describe the author's modification using a predictive circuit to reduce dynamic compensation errors [37, 40, 44].

K. Sozański, *Digital Signal Processing in Power Electronics Control Circuits*, Power Systems, DOI: 10.1007/978-1-4471-5267-5_4,

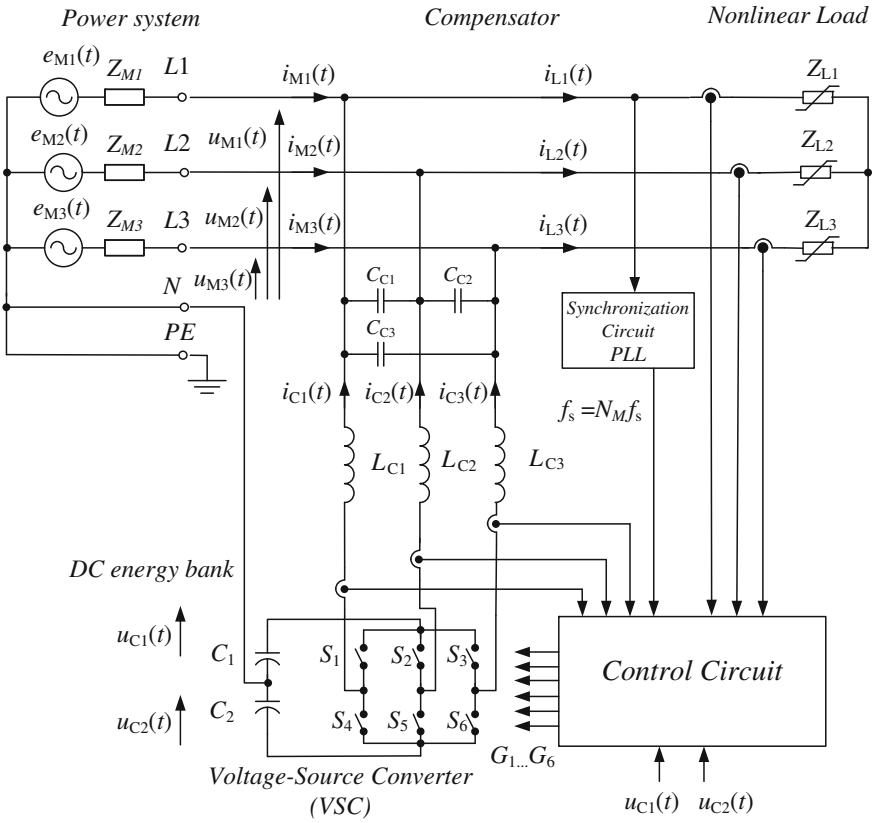



**Fig. 4.1** Three-phase shunt APF compensator

Subsequent sections include control circuits with filter banks which allow the selection of compensated harmonics. The considered filter banks are based on moving DFT and instantaneous power theory algorithms [46, 47].

For unpredictable line current changes, the author has developed a multirate APF [40, 44]. The presented multirate APF has a fast response to sudden changes in the load current. Therefore using multirate APF, it is possible to decrease *THD* ratio of line current even for unpredictable loads.

## 4.2 Control Circuit of Shunt APFs

A three-phase shunt APF compensator is depicted in Fig. 4.1. This circuit corresponds to the circuit from Fig. 1.14a, without feedback (with unity gain). The shunt APF injects the compensation current $i_C(t)$ into the power network and offers a notable compensation for harmonics and reactive power. The compensation current can be

determined by

$$i_C(t) = i_L(t) - I_{H1}\sin(2\pi f_M t), \tag{4.1}$$

where: $I_{\mathrm{H1}}$—amplitude of first harmonic, $f_{\mathrm{M}}$—frequency of first harmonic.

In the case when harmonics compensation is perfect, the line current $i_{\mathrm{M}}(t)$ consists of the first harmonic line current only

$$i_M(t) = I_{\mathrm{H1}}\sin(2\pi f_M t). \tag{4.2}$$

When the phase angle between line voltage $u_1(t)$ and line current $i_M(t)$ is equal to zero, the reactive power is compensated too.

In the APF (Fig. 4.1) three load currents $i_{L1}(t)$, $i_{L2}(t)$, $i_{L3}(t)$ are measured, and then used to determine the instantaneous values of compensation currents $i_{C1}(t)$, $i_{C2}(t)$, $i_{C3}(t)$. To generate compensation currents, a three-phase inverter is applied. Due to the fact that the inverter is like a voltage source, it is necessary to use output inductors $L_{C1}$, $L_{C2}$, $L_{C3}$ and a current controller with feedback ($i_{C1}(t)$, $i_{C2}(t)$, $i_{C3}(t)$) to obtain the qualities of a current source. The three-phase inverter is supplied from a DC energy bank consisting of two electrolytic capacitors $C_1$ and $C_2$. The capacitors are charged from power lines through a three-phase inverter using an additional voltage controller implemented in the APF's main control algorithm.

The shunt APF multirate control circuit is depicted in Fig. 4.2, but it should be noted that in this figure the controller of the capacitor voltage and the circuits for sample rate conversion are omitted.

There are many APF control methods, among which the following can be cited: Gyugyi and Strycula [21], the instantaneous reactive power theory by Akagi [2–6], by Fryze [17, 18] and by Czarnecki [14–16], $p-q-r$ theory by Kim et al. [27], a review of first harmonic detection by Asiminoaei et al. [10], Aredes [7], Singh et al. [34], closed loop harmonic detection by Mattavelli [13, 30], Ghosh and Ledwich [20] and sliding DFT by the author [35, 37, 38, 44]. An interesting set of methods for improved power quality is presented by Benysek et al. [11]. A review of the principles of electrical power control is also described by Pasko and Maciazek in [33].

### *4.2.1 Synchronization*

Figure 4.3 presents an analog synchronization circuit used by the author in the APF control circuits. In this circuit, the voltage of the three phases is supplied through isolation transformers to the inputs of the active low-pass filters (LPF). Fourth-order Butterworth with passband frequency 0–50 Hz is used here. For frequency $f_{cr} = 50$ Hz, the phase response is equal to $-180°$ and it can be easily compensated by the inverting amplifier. Sinusoidal signals from the filters are converted to square wave by comparators. Then, the signal from one phase is connected to the phase detector input of an analog PLL. The PLL generates sampling signal frequency

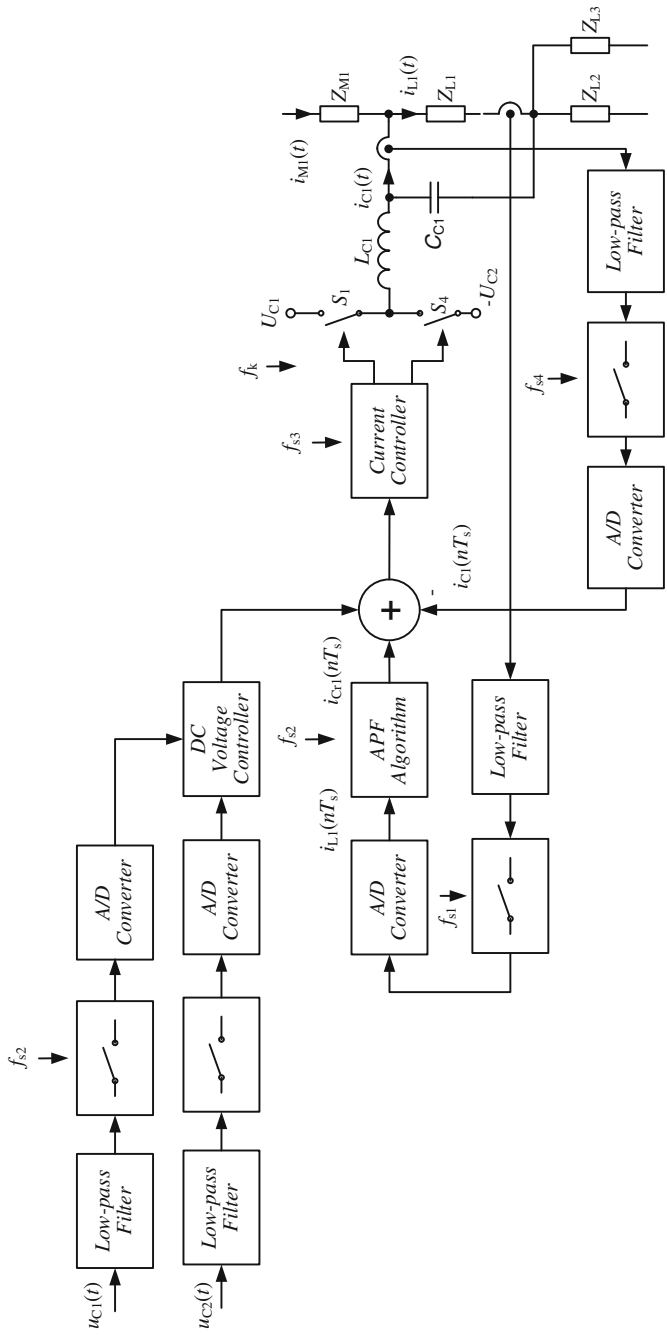



**Fig. 4.2** APF multirate control circuit

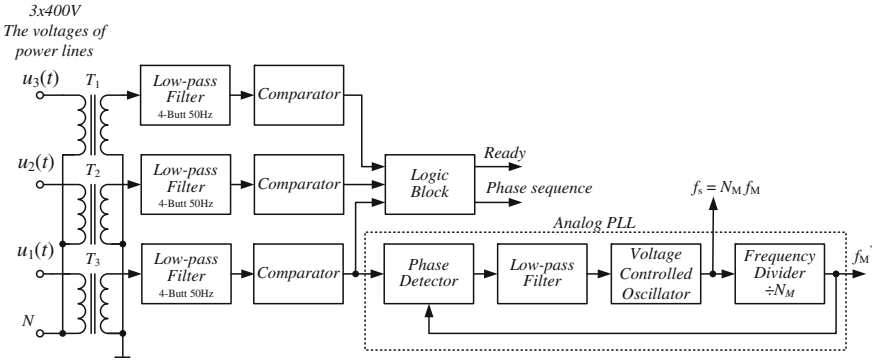



**Fig. 4.3** APF analog synchronization circuit with PLL

$$f_s = N_M f_M, \tag{4.3}$$

where: $f_M$—power line frequency, $N_M$—number of samples per power line period $T_M = 1/f_M$. Another function of the circuit is detecting the presence of all phases and the phase sequence.

In order to avoid beat frequency between the power line frequency and the compensation current modulation frequency, a fully synchronized control system should be applied. Preferably, the modulation frequency should be a multiple of line frequency. The block diagram of such a solution is depicted in Fig. 4.4. In this circuit the DSP, PWM, and A/D converter are synchronized with the power line by common PLL circuit.

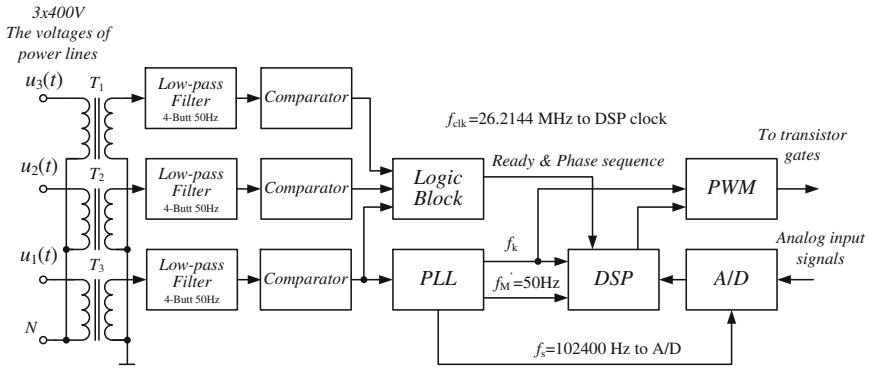



**Fig. 4.4** Digital control system with full synchronization

## 4.3 APF Control with First Harmonic Detector

A three-phase APF for compensation of higher harmonics is depicted in Fig. 4.5. In this compensator, three first harmonic detectors (FHD) are used for calculating compensation currents $i_C(t)$. From the signal representing load current $i_L(n)$ there is subtracted the signal representing the first harmonic component $i_{H1}(n)$. The compensation reference signal $i_{Cr}(n)$ is used as a reference signal for the output current controller, which together with the PWM controls the output inverter transistors.

A block diagram of an APF digital control circuit with bandpass filter tuned for the first harmonic is depicted in Fig. 4.6. By using such a circuit, it is possible to compensate only higher harmonics, while reactive power cannot be compensated. Compensation reference current signal $I_{Cr}(z)$ can be calculated by the equation

$$I_{Cr}(z) = I_L(z)(1 - H_1(z)H_p(z)), \tag{4.4}$$

where: $H_1(z)$—transfer function of digital filter, $H_p(z)$—transfer function of digital filter for phase correction, and $I_L(z)$—signal of load current. In such a circuit, a low-pass filter with crossover frequency $f_{cr} = f_M$ or bandpass filter with pass frequency $f_p = f_M$ can be used. In the second case, it is also possible to compensate lower subharmonics. A phase shift equalizer $H_p(z)$ is applied for phase correction.

In the following subsections, two basic methods of first harmonic detection are considered: one using a digital filter and the other one based on a DFT. The common drawbacks of the DFT Fourier-based harmonic detection methods are their imprecise results in transient conditions and high requirements: proper design of the antialiasing filter, synchronization between the sampling and fundamental frequency, careful application of the windowing function, proper usage of the zero-padding to achieve the power of two series of samples, large memory requirements to store the achieved samples, and large computational power required for the DSP.

In the following sections, the author presents his own solution for the first harmonic detection circuits. The author has examined these circuits using simulation and experimental tests.

### *4.3.1 Control Circuit with Low-Pass 4-Order Butterworth Filter*

When using a circuit with a low-pass filter, the Butterworth digital filter of the order of four or eight may be applied in particular, and in this case the phase shift for crossover frequency (50 Hz/60 Hz) is equal to −180 and −360° respectively, which means that the phase shift can be easily compensated. The digital filter coefficients for floating-point implementation were designed using Matlab. Table 4.1 presents the values of filter coefficients. The gain coefficient $k$ is multiplied by $\sqrt{2}$ in order to get the unit gain for crossover frequency. Frequency responses of the filter are shown in Fig. 4.7. In Table 4.2, the filter magnitudes of attenuation for harmonics are shown. For the second harmonic (100 Hz), the magnitude of attenuation is equal to

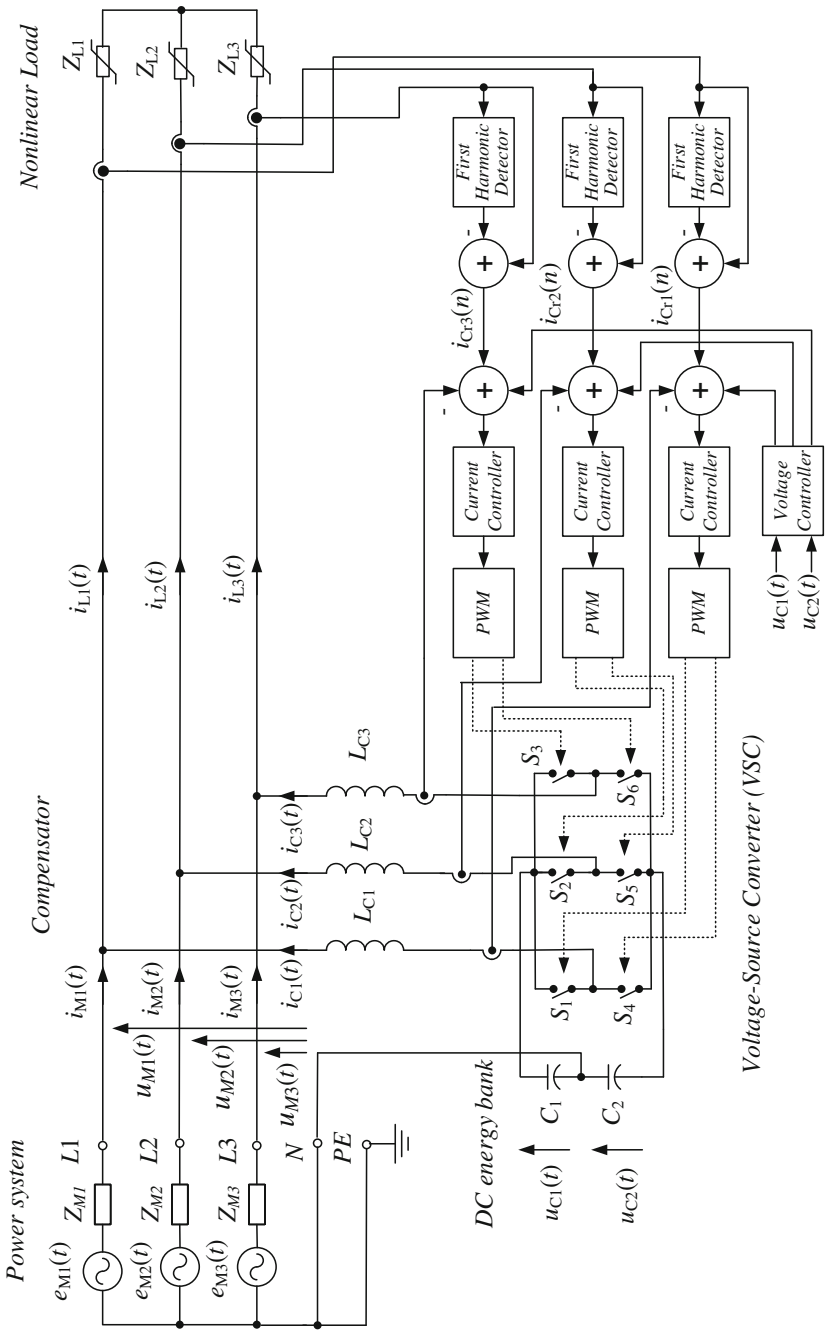



**Fig. 4.5** Three-phase APF with FHD control circuit

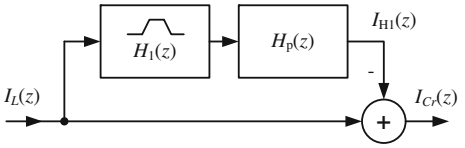



**Fig. 4.6** APF control circuit with FHD bandpass digital filter

**Table 4.1** 4-order Butterworth digital filter floating-point coefficients

| Section | $n = 0$ | $n = 1$ |
|---|---|---|
| $b_{n0}$ | 1.000000000000 | 1.000000000000 |
| $b_{n1}$ | 2.000000057757 | 1.999999942243 |
| $b_{n2}$ | 1.000000007739 | 0.999999992261 |
| $a_{n1}$ | −1.955070062590 | −1.98079495886 |
| $a_{n2}$ | 0.955659070541 | 0.981391716995 |
| $k$ | $2.196845545754 \cdot 10^{-8}\sqrt{2}$ | |

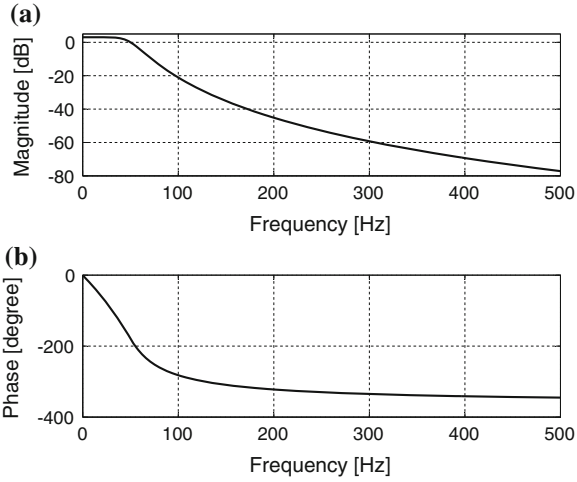



**Fig. 4.7** Frequency responses of 4-order Butterworth digital filter: **a** magnitude, **b** phase

**Table 4.2** Magnitude attenuation for the harmonics of 4-order Butterworth digital filter

| Frequency (Hz) | 50 | 100 | 150 | 200 | 250 | 300 | 350 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Magnitude (dB) | 0 | −21.09 | −35.17 | −45.18 | −52.95 | −59.30 | −64.68 |

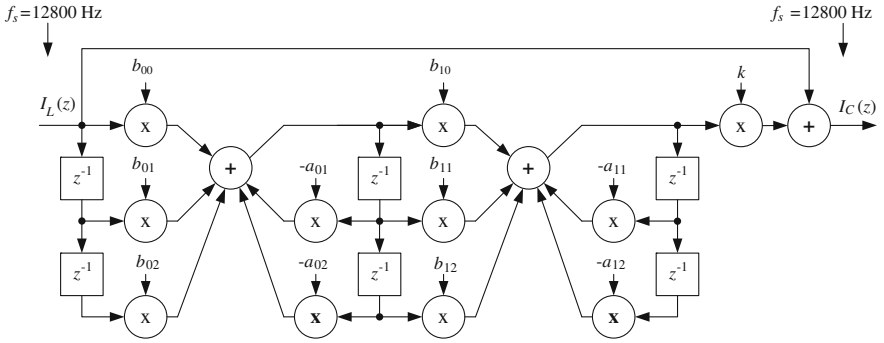



**Fig. 4.8** APF control circuit with 4-order Butterworth digital filter

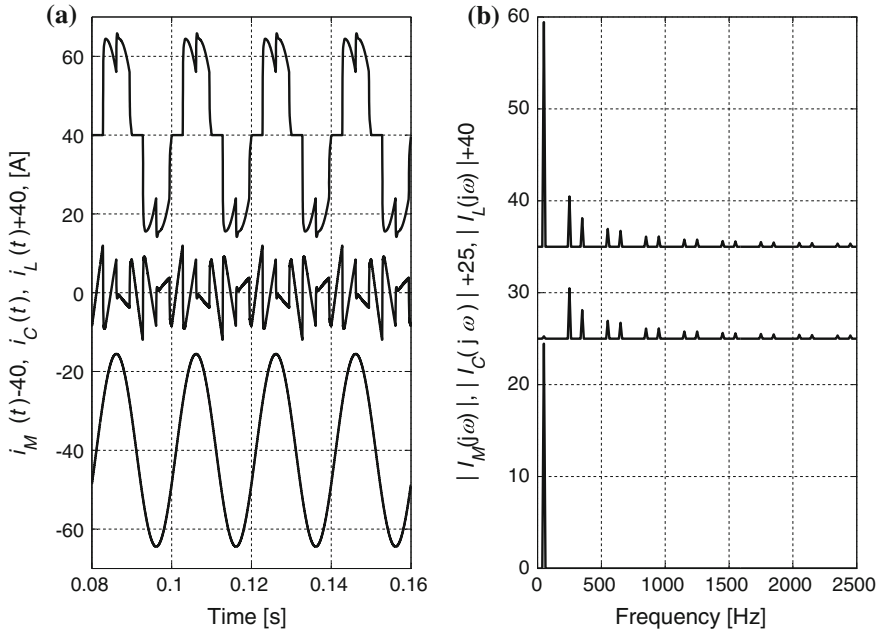



**Fig. 4.9** Simulation result of APF with control circuit with 4-order Butterworth digital filter: **a** waveforms, **b** spectra

−21.09 dB, so the second harmonic is suppressed 11.3 times. If this is not enough, it possible to apply an 8-order Butterworth filter, which has the magnitude of attenuation equal to −45.39 dB for the second harmonic. In this solution, the second harmonic is suppressed 186 times. The APF control circuit with 4-order filter is shown in Fig. 4.8. For this circuit, a simulation of three-phase compensation APF was made. The results of such a simulation are presented in Fig. 4.9. Waveforms of currents

$i_L(t)$, $i_C(t)$, $i_M(t)$ are depicted in Fig. 4.9a and their spectra in Fig 4.9b. The same line current parameters are presented in Table 4.3, which confirms the effectiveness of such harmonic compensation.

### 4.3.2 Control Circuit with Low-Pass 5-Order Butterworth LWDF

Due to the numerous advantages of the LWDF, which are described in Chap. 3, it would be beneficial to use it in an APF control circuit. However, low-pass LWDF filters can only be realized for odd orders, so it is not possible to use the idea from the previous section. Therefore, a low-pass 5-order LWDF with a crossover frequency shifted to $f_{cr} = 59.1$ Hz is applied, chosen to obtain phase shift equal to $-180°$ for the first harmonic. If the sampling frequency $f_s$ is synchronized with the line voltage frequency $f_M$, the filter maintains its attenuation and phase shift despite the changing frequency $f_M$. To find the correct compensation, the filter gain should also be corrected by a factor of $k = 1.0898708$. A block diagram of an APF control circuit with a 5-order Butterworth LWDF is depicted in Fig. 4.10. The filter coefficient values were calculated using the (L)WDF Toolbox for Matlab [8, 9] and the results are shown in Tables 4.4 and 4.5. The coefficient values of this filter in comparison with the filter from the previous section are more suitable for low precision arithmetics, especially fixed-point arithmetics.

### 4.3.3 Control Circuit with Sliding DFT

The sliding DFT algorithm is described in Chap. 3. In the author's opinion, the sliding DFT is highly suitable for APF control circuits [35–37, 39, 40]. The principle of the algorithm is described in Sect. 3.7.3. In the considered solution only one signal-bin sliding DFT filter structure for detecting the first harmonic of load current is used [44]. The first harmonic spectral component signal of load current is thus calculated

$$S_1(nT_s) = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{j}2\pi k/N_M}(S_1((n-1)T_s) - i_L((n-N_M)T_s) + i_L(nT_s)), \tag{4.5}$$

where: $i_L(nT_s)$—discrete signal representing load current, $S_1(nT_s)$—discrete signal representing first harmonic complex spectral component of first phase load current, $N_M$—number samples per line period. The discrete signal representing the first harmonic signal of a load current with zero phase angle between line voltage $u_1(t)$ and line current $i_{H1}(t)$ can be described by the equation

$$i_{H1}(nT_s) = 2/N_M|S_1(nT_s)|\sin(2\pi 50nT_s). \tag{4.6}$$

Compensation current signal is the result of a difference between the load current signal and the first harmonic reference sinusoidal signal

**Table 4.3** Effects of APF compensation

| Current $i_M$ | $I_M$ (rms) (A) | *THD* (%) | *SINAD* (dB) | *THD*50 (%) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Without compensation | 18.0 | 29.7 | −10.9 | 29.6 |
| Algorithm with 4-order Butterworth | 17.3 | 0.7 | −43.0 | 0.1 |

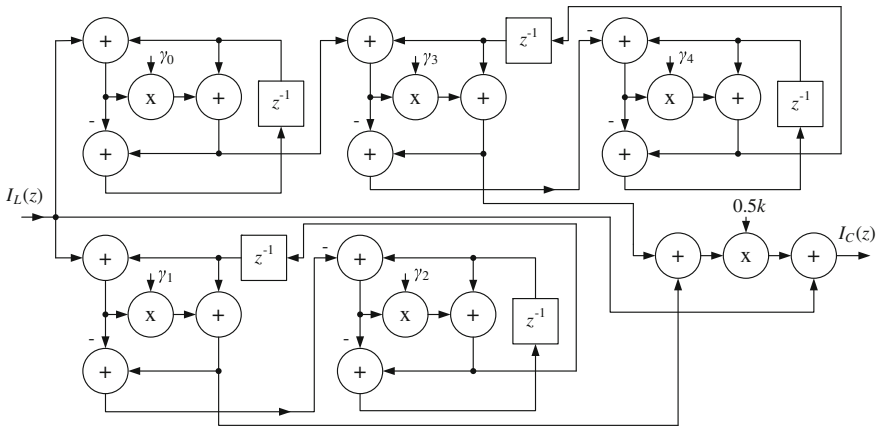



**Fig. 4.10** APF control circuit with 5-order Butterworth LWDF

**Table 4.4** 5-order Butterworth lattice wave digital filter coefficients

| $\gamma$ | Value |
|---|---|
| $\gamma_0$ | 0.9714041474 |
| $\gamma_1$ | −0.9541456454 |
| $\gamma_2$ | 0.9995792798 |
| $\gamma_3$ | −0.9822334470 |
| $\gamma_4$ | 0.9995792798 |

$$i_C(nT_s) = i_L(nT_s) - 2/N_M|S_1(nT_s)|\sin(2\pi 50nT_s). \tag{4.7}$$

The block diagram of this type of control circuit is shown in Fig. 4.11. If a shunt APF with compensation of harmonics is required, compensation current can be determined by the equation

$$i_C(nT_s) = i_L(nT_s) - 2/N_M Re(S_1(nT_s))\sin(2\pi 50nT_s). \tag{4.8}$$

A block digram of such a solution is depicted in Fig. 4.12.

In the case when current imbalance must be compensated, compensation current for the first phase $i_{C1}(nT_s)$ has to be calculated by the formula

**Table 4.5** Magnitude attenuation for the harmonics of 5-order Butterworth LWDF

| Frequency (Hz) | 50 | 100 | 150 | 200 | 250 | 300 | 350 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Magnitude (dB) | 0 | −22.14 | −39.71 | −52.23 | −61.95 | −69.89 | −76.60 |

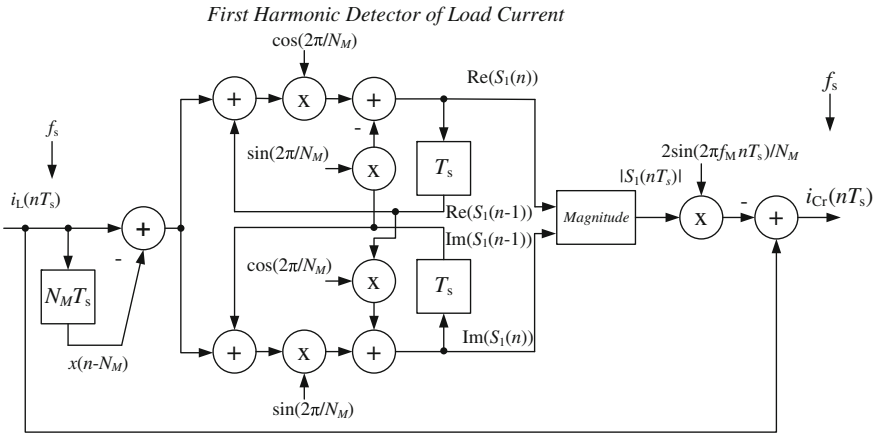



**Fig. 4.11** Control algorithm for three-phase APF with harmonics and reactive power compensation

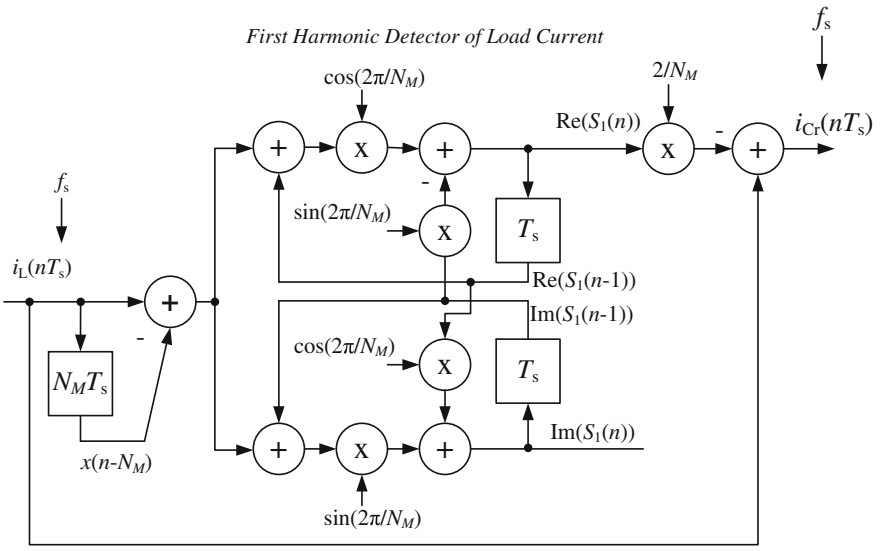



**Fig. 4.12** Control algorithm for three-phase APF with harmonic compensation

$$i_{C1}(nT_s) = i_{L1}(nT_s) - 2/N_M \frac{|S_1(nT_s)| + |S_2(nT_s)| + |S_2(nT_s)|}{3} \sin(2\pi 50 nT_s), \tag{4.9}$$

where: $S_1(nT_s)$, $S_2(nT_s)$, $S_3(nT_s)$—discrete signal representing first harmonic complex spectral component signal of first, second, and third phase load current. The block diagram of the APF control algorithm for a three-phase APF with harmonic, reactive power, and asymmetry compensation is depicted in Fig. 4.13. In the summing block, the resultant magnitude of three phase current is calculated. The magnitude is used to modulate the amplitude of each phase's first harmonic reference signal. By subtracting these signals with appropriate input signals, the output compensation signals $i_{C1}(nT_s)$, $i_{C2}(nT_s)$, $i_{C3}(nT_s)$ are calculated.

One of the most difficult tasks for the control algorithm is calculation of the magnitude using fixed point arithmetic. A potential source of big errors exists, especially in the calculation of square root. In the proposed algorithm, the square root is calculated using the following formula:

$$\sqrt{x} \cong -0.2831102x^2 + 1.0063284x + 0.272661 \quad \text{for} \quad 0.25 < x \leqslant 1. \tag{4.10}$$

To ensure sufficient accuracy, the numbers ranging from 0 to 1 should be divided into at least three ranges. An example of implementing the program is shown below.

```
float x,u,y;
...
if x < 0.0625 {
   u = 16 * x;
   y = (−0.2831102 * u^2 + 2 * 0.5031642 * u + 0.272661)/4; }
else if (x >= 0.0625)&&(x<0.25) {
   u = 4 * x;
   y = (−0.2831102 * u^2 + 2 * 0.5031642 * u + 0.272661)/2; }
else
   y = −0.2831102 * x^2 + 2 * 0.5031642 * x + 0.272661;
```

The results of using such a sqrt algorithm are shown in Fig. 4.14. This program can be easily modified for arithmetic Q15.

### *4.3.4 Control Circuit with Sliding Goertzel*

The principles of the sliding Goertzel algorithm are described in Chap. 3. The range of applications for the SGDFT algorithm is similar to the SDFT. A block diagram of the shunt APF control algorithm with harmonics and reactive power compensation based on SGDFT is depicted in Fig. 4.15. The SGDF algorithm, like the SDFT algorithm, requires the determination of the magnitude for the first harmonic of the load current signal. It also requires a smaller number of arithmetic operations in comparison with the SDFT algorithm.

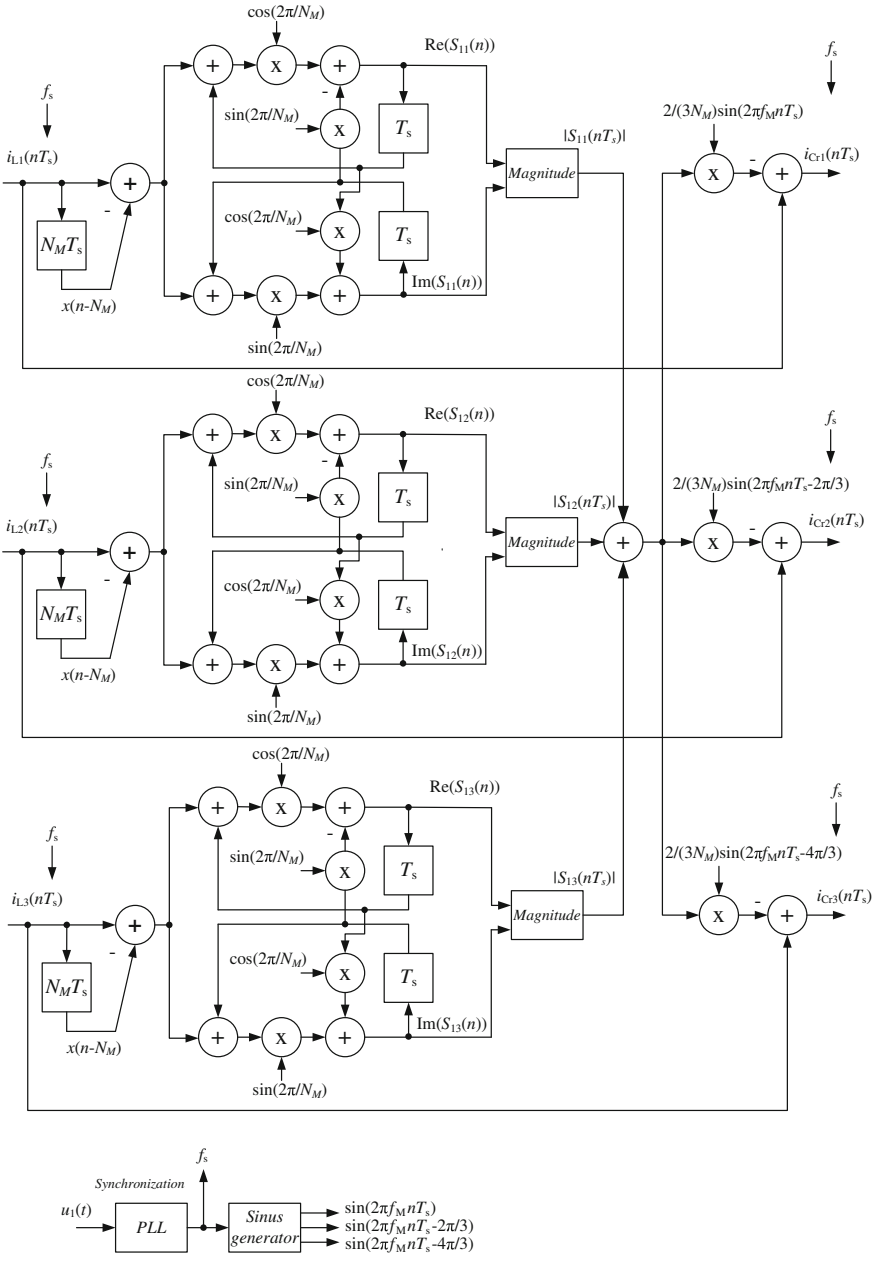



**Fig. 4.13** Control algorithm for three-phase APF with harmonic, reactive power, and asymmetry compensation

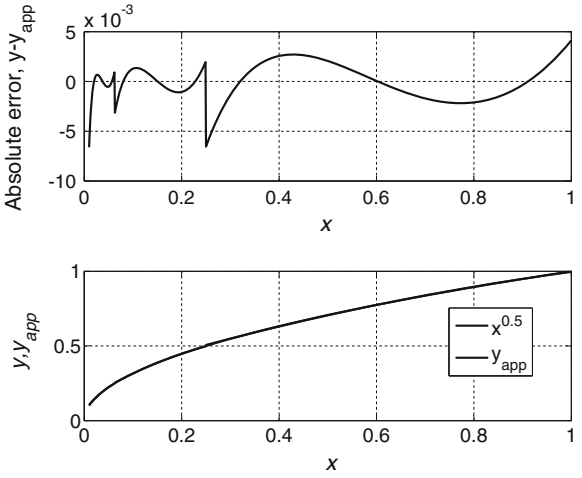



**Fig. 4.14** Approximation of sqrt function

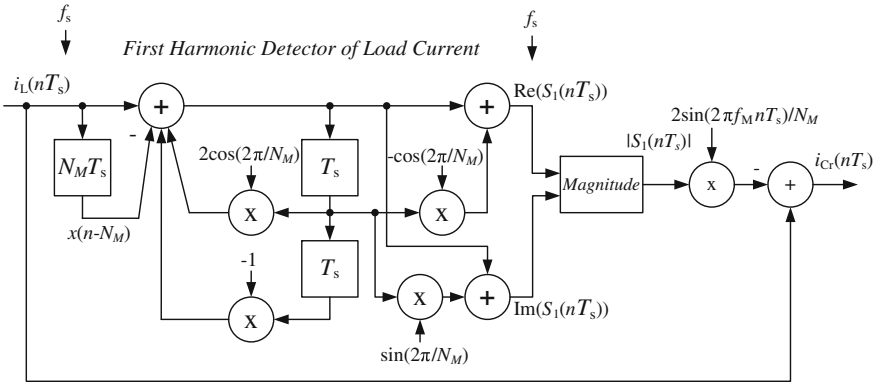



**Fig. 4.15** Shunt APF control algorithm with harmonics and reactive power compensation based on SGDFT

## *4.3.5 Control Circuit with Moving DFT*

A detailed description of the moving DFT algorithm is presented in Chap. 3. The algorithm output result is in the time domain, because it does not require determination of the signal magnitude. A block diagram of the MDFT control circuit for the shunt APF is shown in Fig. 4.16. The computational workload for the MDFT control circuit is less than for SDFT and SGDFT.

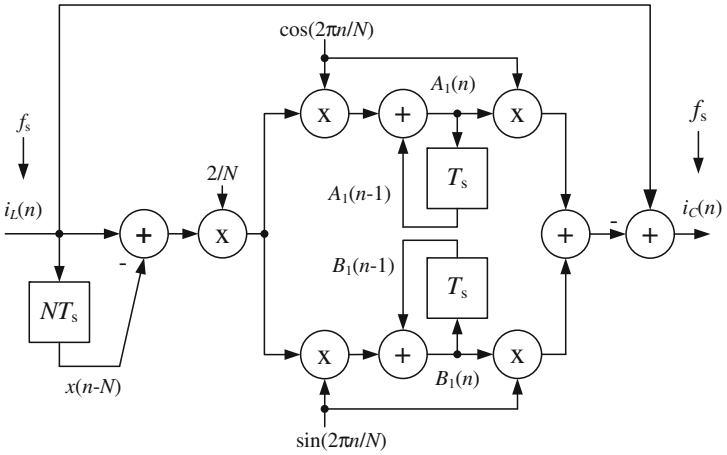



**Fig. 4.16** Control algorithm with moving DFT

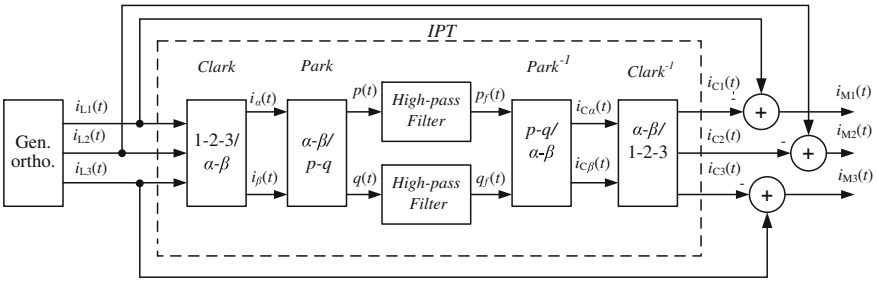



**Fig. 4.17** A block diagram of $p - q$ theory control algorithm test circuit

## 4.4 The $p - q$ Theory Control Algorithm for Shunt APF

One of the most frequently used algorithms in the field of APFs is the $p - q$ theory. Generally, the $p - q$ theory is based on a set of instantaneous powers defined in the time domain. This method is also called instantaneous power theory (IPT). There are no restrictions imposed on the voltage or current waveforms and it can be applied to three-phase systems with or without a neutral wire for three-phase generic voltage and current waveforms. Therefore, it is valid not only in the steady state, but also in the transient state. The $p - q$ theory in its first version was published by Akagi et al. in the Japanese language [2, 3] and in 1984, in the IEEE Transactions on Industry Applications, including an experimental verification [4]. A detailed description of $p - q$ theory applied to APFs is considered by Akagi et al. [6].

A block diagram of a shunt APF $p - q$ theory control algorithm test circuit for a balanced three-phase and three-wire system is shown in Fig. 4.17. The waveforms which are a result of the test circuit simulation in steady state are shown in

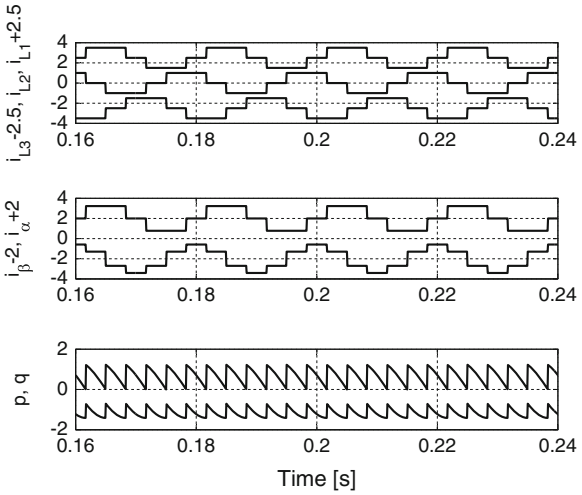



**Fig. 4.18** Simulation waveforms of the $p-q$ theory control algorithm: orthogonal load currents $i_{L1}(n), i_{L2}(n), i_{L3}(n)$, components $i_\alpha(n), i_\beta(n), p(n), q(n)$

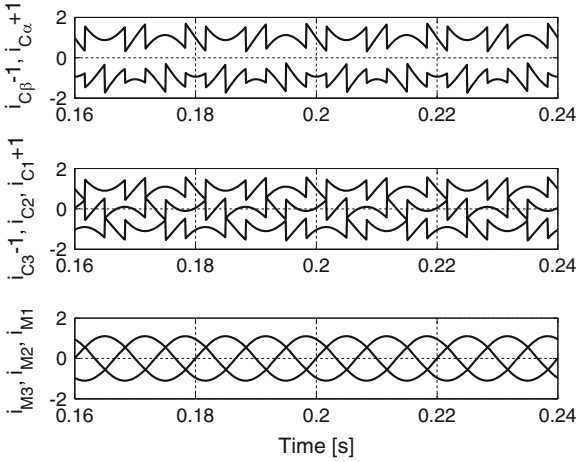



**Fig. 4.19** Simulation waveforms of the $p-q$ theory control algorithm, components: $p_f(n), q_f(n)$, $i_{C\alpha}(n), i_{C\beta}(n)$, compensation currents $i_{C1}(n), i_{C2}(n), i_{C3}(n)$, line currents $i_{M1}(n), i_{M2}(n), i_{M3}(n)$

Figs. 4.18, 4.19. Three-phase orthogonal input signals $i_{L1}(t)$, $i_{L2}(t)$, and $i_{L3}(t)$ are used as test signals, which are shown in Fig. 4.18. The input signals are converted into $\alpha-\beta$ system using Clark transformation (Fig. 4.18)

$$\begin{bmatrix} i_{L\alpha}(t) \\ i_{L\beta}(t) \end{bmatrix} = \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} i_{L1}(t) \\ i_{L2}(t) \\ i_{L3}(t) \end{bmatrix}, \tag{4.11}$$

and then are converted into $p-q$ system by Park transformation (Fig. 4.18)

$$\begin{bmatrix} p(t) \\ q(t) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(2\pi ft) & -\sin(2\pi ft) \\ \sin(2\pi ft) & \cos(2\pi ft) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} i_{L\alpha}(t) \\ i_{L\beta}(t) \end{bmatrix}. \tag{4.12}$$

As a result of this transformation, the 50 Hz component is moved to a DC component. In the next stage, the DC component is removed by a first-order high-pass filter. The filter crossover frequency is equal to 10 Hz. Then the resultant compensation signals $i_{C1}(t)$, $i_{C2}(t)$ and $i_{C3}(t)$ without a 50 Hz component are transferred to a three-phase system by inverse Park transformation (Fig. 4.19)

$$\begin{bmatrix} i_{C\alpha}(t) \\ i_{C\beta}(t) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos(2\pi ft) & \sin(2\pi ft) \\ -\sin(2\pi ft) & \cos(2\pi ft) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} p_f(t) \\ q_f(t) \end{bmatrix}, \tag{4.13}$$

and inverse Clark transformation (Fig. 4.19)

$$\begin{bmatrix} i_{C1}(t) \\ i_{C2}(t) \\ i_{C3}(t) \end{bmatrix} = \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} i_{C\alpha}(t) \\ i_{C\beta}(t) \end{bmatrix}. \tag{4.14}$$

Finally, the line currents $i_{M1}(t)$, $i_{M2}(t)$ and $i_{M3}(t)$ are determined by subtraction of compensation currents from load currents. Listing of the Matlab program for $p-q$ theory simulation:

```
clear all; close all;
NM = 2^8; % number of samples per line period
fs = 50 * NM; % sampling frequency
fM = 50; % line frequency
N_period = 4; % number of period
N = N_period * NM; % number of samples
fi = 0; % phase shift
t = (0 : N - 1)/fs; % time
s1 = sin(2 * pi * fM * t + fi); c1 = cos(2 * pi * fM * t + fi);
%------- Orthogonal signals -------
fi2 = -5 * pi/6;
inA = sin(2 * pi * fM * t + 0 + fi2);
inB = sin(2 * pi * fM * t - 2 * pi/3 + fi2);
inC = sin(2 * pi * fM * t - 4 * pi/3 + fi2);
in1 = sign(inA)/2; in2 = sign(inB)/2; in3 = sign(inC)/2;
```

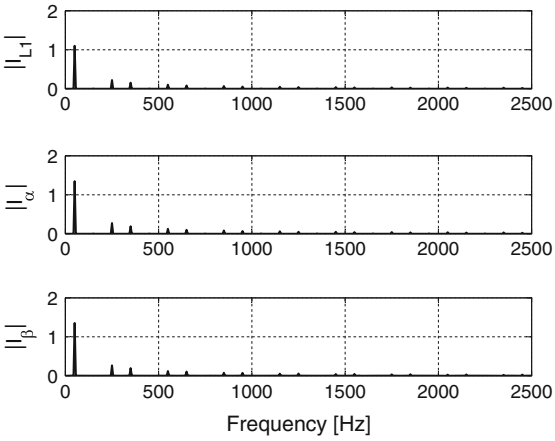



**Fig. 4.20** The $p-q$ theory control algorithm, spectra of components: $i_{L1}(n)$, $i_{\alpha}(n)$, $i_{\beta}(n)$

```
iL3 = in1–in2; iL2 = in2 – in3; iL1 = in3 – in1;
%– – – – – – – – Clark transformation – – – – – – – –
ialfa = (iL1 – 0.5 * iL2 – 0.5 * iL3) * (2/3)^0.5;
ibeta  = ( (3^0.5)/2 * (iL2 – iL3)) * (2/3)^0.5;
%– – – – – – – – Park transformation – – – – – – – –
p = c1. * ialfa – ibeta. * s1;
q = s1. * ialfa + c1. * ibeta;
%– – – – – – Butterworth first –order high–pass filter
fcr = 10; % crossover frequency 10 Hz
Fcr = fcr/fs * 2; % relative crossover frequency
[b a] = butter(1, Fcr,'high');
pf = filter(b,a,p); qf = filter(b,a,q);
%– – – – – – – – Park inverse transformation – – – – – – – –
iCalfa = pf. * c1 + qf. * s1;
iCbeta = –pf. * s1 + qf. * c1;
%– – – – – – – – Clarc inverse transformation – – – – – – – –
iC1 = (iCalfa) * (2/3)^0.5;
iC2 = (–1/2 * iCalfa + (3^0.5)/2 * iCbeta) * (2/3)^0.5;
iC3 = (–1/2 * iCalfa – (3^0.5)/2 * iCbeta) * (2/3)^0.5;
%– – – – – – – – Line current calculation – – – – – – – –
iM1 = iL1 – iC1; iM2 = iL2 – iC2; iM3 = iL3 – iC3;
```

Spectra of selected signals are shown in Fig. 4.20, 4.21.

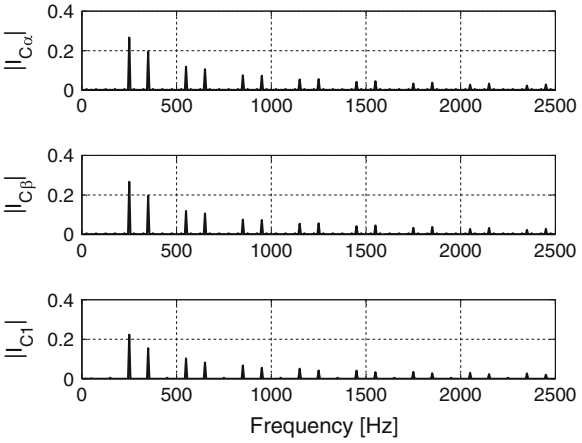



**Fig. 4.21** The $p-q$ theory control algorithm, spectra of components: $i_{C\alpha}(n)$, $i_{C\beta}(n)$, $i_{C1}(n)$

## 4.5 Shunt APF Classical Control Circuit

A simplified diagram of the conventional 75 kVA three-phase shunt active power filter with nonlinear load is depicted in Fig. 4.22. The APF was built by the University of Zielona Gora (UZ) team [48], in which the author was involved in the design of the control circuit [45]. The picture of the APF at the UZ laboratory is shown in Fig. 4.23. The APF consists of a signal processing control circuit and output circuit with a voltage-source converter (VSC) [31]. The APF control circuit should force the VSC to behave as a controlled current source. The output circuit consists of two kinds of energy storage components: inductors $L_{C1}$, $L_{C2}$, $L_{C3}$ and two DC capacitors $C_1$, $C_2$. The active power filter injects the harmonic currents $i_{C1}(t)$, $i_{C2}(t)$ and $i_{C3}(t)$ into the power network and offers a notable compensation for harmonics, reactive power, and unbalance. The filter is designed for three or four wire loads. The nonlinear load consists of a thyristor power controller with a resistive load. Experimental waveforms of the compensation circuit in steady state with the resistive load, from the top to the bottom: load current $i_L$, compensation current $i_C$, line current $i_M$ are shown in Fig. 4.24. The control algorithm for the proposed APF is based on the strategy resulting from the instantaneous reactive power theory initially developed by Akagi et al. [4–6]. A simplified block diagram of the APF control algorithm is depicted in Fig. 4.25, based on the circuit designed by Strzelecki and Sozanski et al. [45]. The algorithm is realized using the digital signal processor TMS320C50 which has the sampling rate $f_s$. The fixed-point 16-bit digital signal processor is synchronized using the PLL circuit with the line voltage $U_1$ and the algorithm is performed $N_M$ times per line period. The sampling periods can be calculated using the formula

$$T_s = \frac{T_M}{N_M}, \tag{4.15}$$

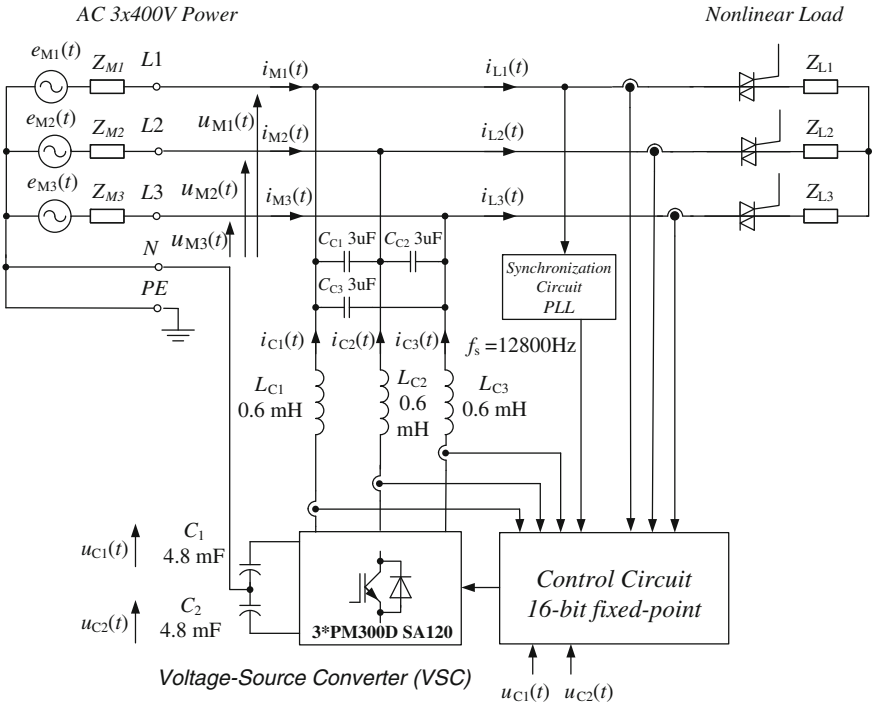



**Fig. 4.22** Tests circuit of classical three-phase shunt active power filter


**Fig. 4.23** Shunt APF at the UZ laboratory

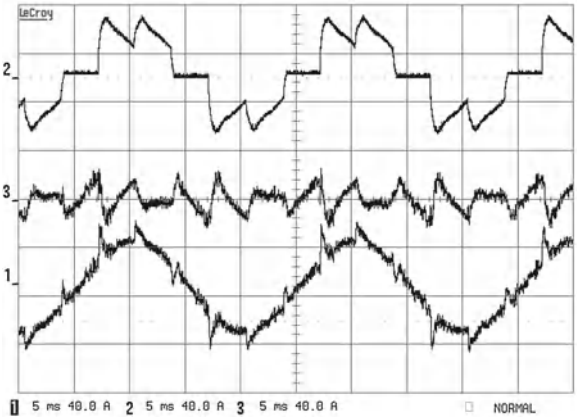



**Fig. 4.24** Experimental waveforms (for one phase) of the compensation circuit with the APF

where: $T_M$—period of the line voltage, $f_M = T_M^{-1}$—frequency of the line voltage, $N_M$—total number of samples per line voltage period. For the line voltage frequency of $f_M = 50\,\text{Hz}$ and the number of samples chosen to $N_M = 256$, the sampling period is equal to $T_s = 78.125\,\mu\text{s}$ and the sampling rate is equal to $f_s = 12800$ samples/s.

Three-phase current signals can be transformed into the equivalent two-phase representation. The transformation $(1-2-3 \rightarrow \alpha-\beta-0)$ from the three-phase current signals $i_{L1}(nT_s)$, $i_{L2}(nT_s)$, $i_{L3}(nT_s)$, to the two-phase $i_{L\alpha}$, $i_{L\beta}$ with an additional neutral signal $i_{L0}$ can be written into a matrix form as

$$\begin{bmatrix} i_{L\alpha}(nT_s) \\ i_{L\beta}(nT_s) \\ i_{L0}(nT_s) \end{bmatrix} = \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} i_{L1}(nT_s) \\ i_{L2}(nT_s) \\ i_{L3}(nT_s) \end{bmatrix}, \tag{4.16}$$

where: $i_{L\alpha}(nT_s)$—digital representation of signal $i_{L\alpha}$ for sampling period $T_s$, $n$—index of the current sample. In the next step, the two-phase signals are transformed from the rotating to the stationary reference frame. This transformation is commonly called the reverse Park transformation and can be digitally calculated by equations

$$\begin{cases} p(nT_s) = i_{L\alpha}(nT_s) \sin\left(\dfrac{2\pi n}{N_M}\right) - i_{L\beta}(nT_s) \cos\left(\dfrac{2\pi n}{N_M}\right) \\ q(nT_s) = i_{L\alpha}(nT_s) \cos\left(\dfrac{2\pi n}{N_M}\right) - i_{L\beta}(nT_s) \sin\left(\dfrac{2\pi n}{N_M}\right) \end{cases}, \tag{4.17}$$

and the digital sinusoidal reference signal is given by the formula

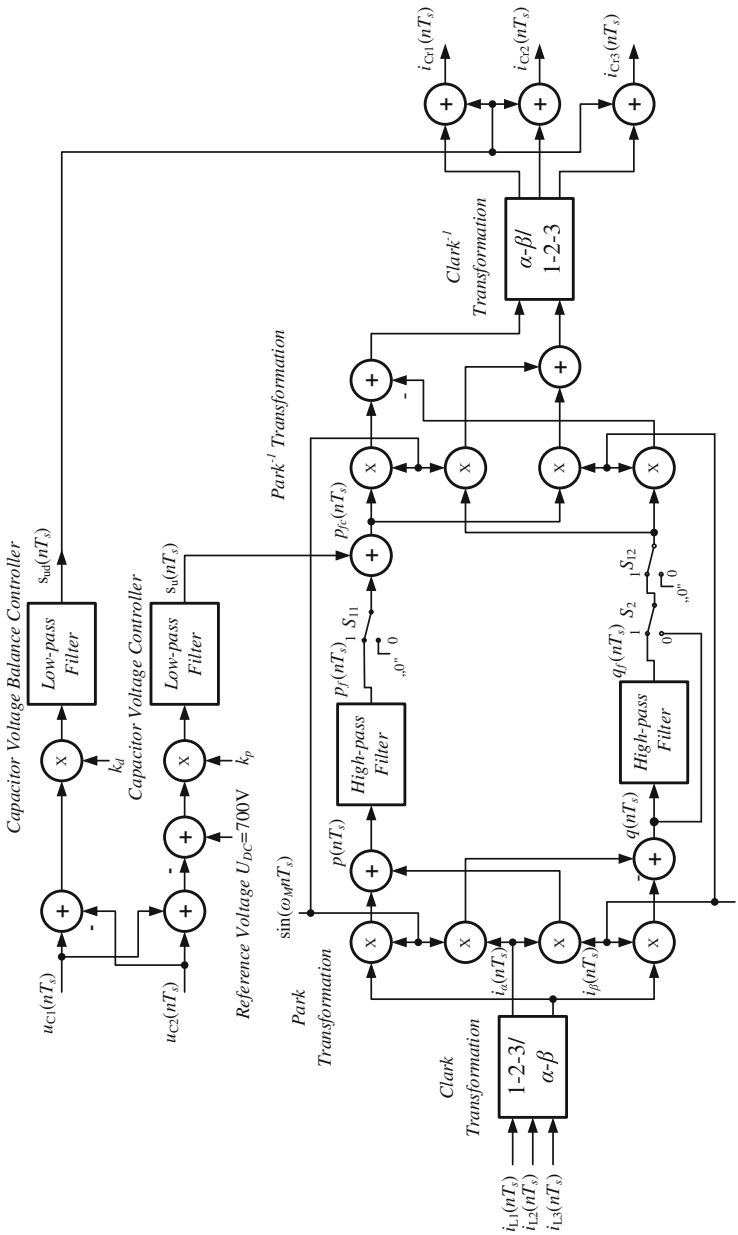



**Fig. 4.25** Block diagram of control algorithm

$$\sin\left(2\pi f_M n T_s\right) = \sin\left(2\pi f_M n \frac{T_M}{N_M}\right) = \sin\left(\frac{2\pi n}{N_M}\right). \tag{4.18}$$

In order to generate reference sinusoidal and cosinusoidal signals, a table containing sinus function values is allocated in the digital signal processor program memory. Signal $p(nT_s)$ represents instantaneous active power and signal $q(nT_s)$ represents instantaneous reactive power. The DC components of signals $p(nT_s)$ and $q(nT_s)$ are removed by first-order high-pass digital IIR filters. The filter design is based on the analog reference prototype using a bilinear transform. The high-pass filter transfer function is described by equations

$$H(z) = \frac{b_0 + b_1 z^{-1}}{1 + a_1 z^{-1}}, \tag{4.19}$$

and

$$b_0 = -b_1 = \frac{2\dfrac{T_1}{T_s}}{1 + 2\dfrac{T_1}{T_s}}, \quad a_1 = \frac{1 - 2\dfrac{T_1}{T_s}}{1 + 2\dfrac{T_1}{T_s}} \tag{4.20}$$

where: $T_1$—the reference (analog) filter time constant. Assuming the values, $T_1 = 0.016$ s and $T_s = 12.8$ kHz, the filter transfer function is determined by the equation

$$H(z) = \frac{0.9975645 - 0.9975645 z^{-1}}{1 - 0.995129 z^{-1}}. \tag{4.21}$$

Frequency response of the high-pass filter is shown in Fig. 4.26, cutoff frequency of such filter is equal to about 10 Hz. This filter, as was the entire control algorithm, was implemented using a 16-bit digital signal processor with Q15 arithmetic. A schematic realization of this filter is shown in Fig. 4.27.

In addition to the compensation of harmonics and compensation of reactive power, the control algorithm must also control the voltage on the DC capacitor bank ($C_1$, $C_2$). In order to stabilize the DC voltage, a proportional controller is used and its response is calculated using the equation

$$s_u(nT_s) = k_p(U_{DCr} - (u_{C_1}(nT_s) + (u_{C_2}(nT_s))), \tag{4.22}$$

where: $u_{C_1}, u_{C_2}$—voltage on capacitors $C_1$ and $C_2$, respectively, $k_p$—gain of voltage controller, $U_{DCr}$—DC reference voltage. Signal $s_{uf}(nTs)$ is subtracted from the component $p_f(nT_s)$

$$p_{fc}(nT_s) = p_f(nT_s) - s_{uf}(nT_s). \tag{4.23}$$

In the next step, components $p_{fc}$ and $q_f$ are transformed by Park transformation into the two-phase representation

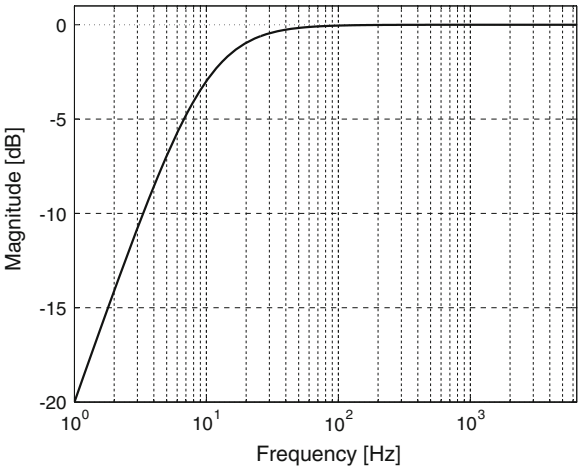



**Fig. 4.26** Frequency response of high-pass digital filter

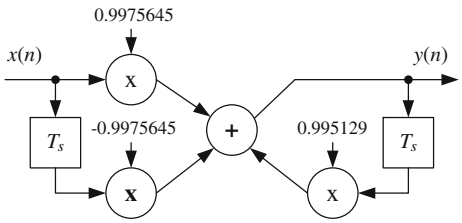



**Fig. 4.27** Realization block diagram of the high-pass digital filter

$$\begin{cases} i_{Cr\alpha}(nT_s) = p_{fc}(nT_s)\sin\left(\dfrac{2\pi n}{N_M}\right) - q_f(nT_s)\cos\left(\dfrac{2\pi n}{N_M}\right) \\ i_{Cr\beta}(nT_s) = -p_{fc}(nT_s)\cos\left(\dfrac{2\pi n}{N_M}\right) - q_f(nT_s)\sin\left(\dfrac{2\pi n}{N_M}\right) \end{cases}, \tag{4.24}$$

and then transformed back to the three-phase reference current signals

$$\begin{bmatrix} i_{Cr1}(nT_s) \\ i_{Cr2}(nT_s) \\ i_{Cr3}(nT_s) \end{bmatrix} = \sqrt{\frac{3}{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ -\dfrac{1}{2} & \dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ -\dfrac{1}{2} & -\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} i_{Cr\alpha}(nT_s) \\ i_{Cr\beta}(nT_s) \\ i_{L0}(nT_s) \end{bmatrix}, \tag{4.25}$$

Signal $s_{df}(nT_s)$ from the capacitor voltage balance controller is then added to the reference compensation signals $i_{Cr1}(nT_s)$, $i_{Cr2}(nT_s)$ and $i_{Cr3}(nT_s)$. Thanks to such control, the voltages on both capacitors are equal.

**Table 4.6** APF control algorithm switch functions

| Switch | Position | Function |
|---|---|---|
| $S_2$ | 1 | Harmonics compensation |
| $S_2$ | 0 | Full compensation of reactive power |
| $S_{11}$ and $S_{12}$ | 1 | APF compensator is switched on |
| $S_{11}$ and $S_{12}$ | 0 | APF compensator is switched off, working only capacitors voltage regulator, capacitors $C_1$ and $C_2$ are charged to nominal working voltage 700 V |

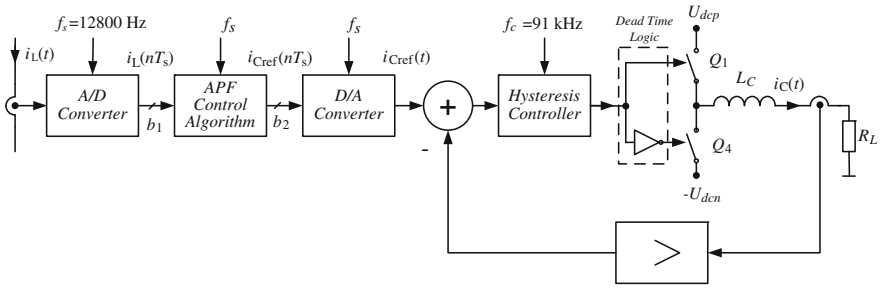



**Fig. 4.28** Block diagram of control circuit for one phase

The control algorithm for the proposed APF is based on the strategy resulting from the instantaneous reactive power theory which was initially developed by Akagi et al. [4]. Additional control switches, whose functions are described in Table 4.6, are added to the classical instantaneous reactive power algorithm. In the next step, the output compensation reference current signals $i_{Cr1}(nT_s)$, $i_{Cr2}(nT_s)$ and $i_{Cr3}(nT_s)$ are converted to analog form by a 12-bit D/A converter. The block diagram of the control circuit is shown in Fig. 4.28. Finally, the output compensation reference current signals are transformed to the transistor controlling pulses by the current controller. Initially, in the proposed circuit, a hysteresis current controller algorithm realized using analog comparators and additional glue logic is employed. The hysteresis control algorithm is based on a nonlinear feedback loop with two-level hysteresis comparators. The inverter switching speed depends largely on the load parameters. In the proposed APF, an advanced hysteresis current controller with a variable width hysteresis is applied. A block diagram of this controller is depicted in Fig. 4.29. It has additional improvements:

- maximum switching speed is limited,
- switching speed depends on the "speed history"
- switching speed is dependent on the compensation reference current signals $i_{cr_1}(t)$; the higher the signal level, the lower is the switching speed.

Figure 4.30 shows a dependence of the level of compensation reference current signals $i_{cr_1}(t)$ on the switching speed. For a lower signal level the switching speed is around 25 kHz, and for a higher level of signal the speed is around 10 kHz. The shunt

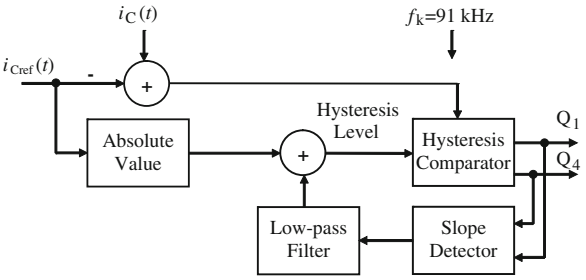



**Fig. 4.29** Block diagram of output modulator for one phase

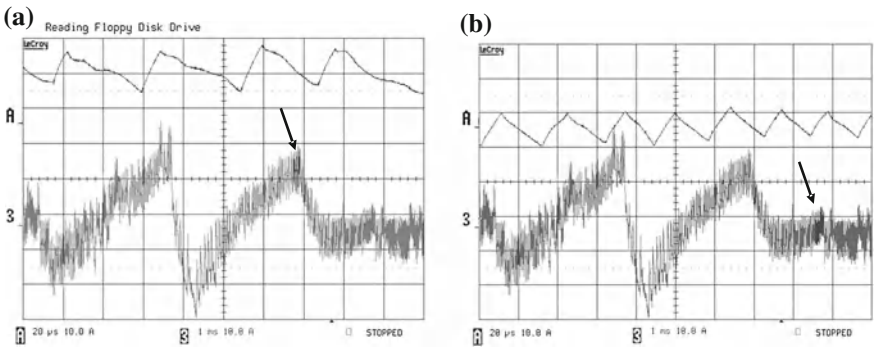



**Fig. 4.30** Experimental waveforms, illustration of the dependence of switching speed of the compensation current level

APF should not be connected to the mains without a boot routine. Before switching on compensation, it is necessary to charge the capacitors to the operating voltage of 700 V. The starting procedure includes the following steps:

- inverter transistors are switched off, capacitors $C_1$ and $C_2$ are charged to peak line voltage up to 560 V,
- APF compensator is switched off, only capacitor voltage regulator is working, capacitors $C_1$ and $C_2$ are charged to nominal working voltage 700V ($S_{11} = 0$, $S_{12} = 0$),
- APF compensator is switched on ($S_{11} = 1$, $S_{12} = 1$).

## 4.6 Dynamics of Shunt APF

When the value of load current changes rapidly, as in current $i_L(t)$ in Fig. 4.24, the APF transient response is too slow and the line current $i_M(t)$ suffers from dynamic distortion. The amplitude of these distortions is dependent on the value of changes

in load current. This distortion causes an increase in harmonic content in the line current, which is mainly dependent on the time constant of the output circuit. In the APF circuit shown in Fig. 4.22 the *THD* ratio is increased by more than 10 % . A block diagram of the APF control system with marked signal delays is shown in Fig. 4.31. In this figure, the main signal delays occurring in the shunt APF are indicated: control circuit delay, output circuit delay, and compensation current measurement delay. These delays generate the dynamic distortion of power line current visible in Fig. 4.24. A simplified APF output circuit (for one phase) is depicted in Fig. 4.32a. A simplified equivalent circuit of APF compensation for one phase, shown in Fig. 4.32b, has been proposed by the author [37, 40, 44]. $Z_M$ represents resultant line impedance, $Z_C$ represents APF output impedance and $Z_L$ represents load impedance. The circuit time constant is mainly dependent on $Z_C$, and therefore it is possible to simplify the circuit to the one presented in Fig. 4.33. In the author's opinion, this simplified circuit allows the simulation of system dynamics with sufficient accuracy. The voltage transfer function of such a circuit is described by the formula

$$H(s) = \frac{U_L(s)}{U_C(s)} = \frac{R_L}{R_C + R_L + (R_C R_L C_C + L_C)s + R_C R_L C_C s^2}. \tag{4.26}$$

As the whole APF control circuit is realized using a 16-bit fixed-point DSP, so it is sensible to realize a digital simulation of the entire compensation system. The voltage transfer function of the analog circuit described by equation (4.26) is converted into digital domain using bilinear transform. Due to the greater accuracy of simulation, the response of the output circuit is calculated $R$ times more often than the whole algorithm (oversamplig), so its sampling frequency is equal to the $Rf_s$. The transfer function of the digital representation of the APF output circuit for the assumed values of the circuit elements—$R_C = 0.1\,\Omega$, $L_C = 0.6\,\text{mH}$, $C_C = 3\,\mu\text{F}$, $R_L = 12\,\Omega$, oversampling ratio $R = 8$—and the sampling frequency of $Rf_s = 102.4\,\text{kHz}$ is described by the equation

$$H(z) = \frac{U_L(z)}{U_C(z)} = \frac{0.01152 + 0.02304z^{-1} + 0.01152z^{-2}}{1 - 1.716z^{-1} + 0.7627z^2}. \tag{4.27}$$

A timing diagram of the digital realization of the APF control circuit is shown in Fig. 1.11. Analog signal is sampled at a frequency of $f_s$, and is then converted into digital form by an A/D converter (4.31). This digital signal is later processed by the main control algorithm of the APF and is then sent to the PWM modulator. The minimum delay of the entire control algorithm is therefore at least one sampling period $T_s$. This delay must be taken into account during the simulation. For the case under consideration, an algorithm delay time equal to two sample periods was chosen, $L_D = 2$. The block diagram of a simplified digital simulation circuit is depicted in Fig. 4.34. Simulation research has been carried out for this circuit. Below is the author's Matlab listing for the realization of this digital circuit:

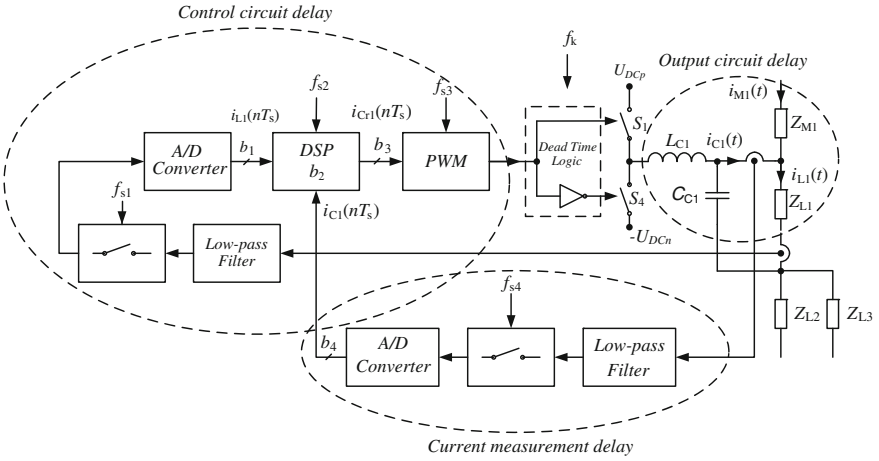



**Fig. 4.31** Delays in shunt APF

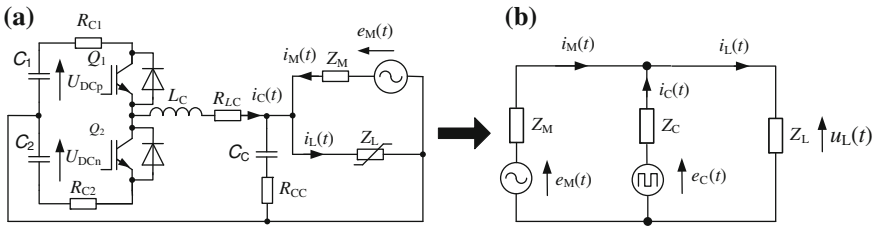



**Fig. 4.32** Diagrams of APF output inverter connected to the mains power: **a** simplified circuit, **b** equivalent circuit

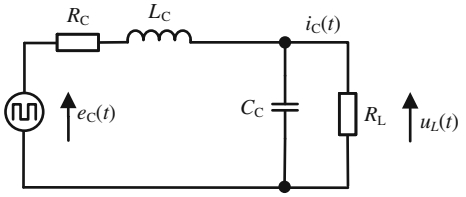



**Fig. 4.33** Simplified diagram of the APF output circuit

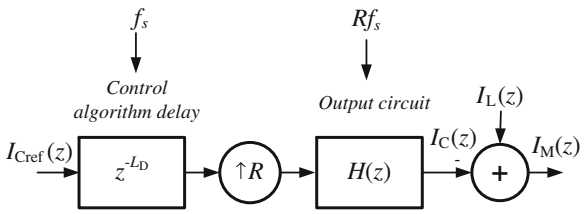



**Fig. 4.34** Block diagram of digital simulation of compensation circuit (for one phase)

```
clear all; close all;
R = 8; % oversampling ratio
NM = 2^8; % number of samples per line period
fs = 50 * NM * R; % sampling frequency
T = 1/T;
N = NM * R;
L_C = 0.6e - 3; C_C = 3e - 6; R_C = 0.1; R_L = 10;
% ------ Analog transfer function ---------
num_s_C = [R_L * C_C 1];
den_s_C = [R_L * L_C * C_C  L_C  R_L];
% ---------- Bilinear Transform ---------------
[num_d_C den_d_C] = bilinear(num_s_C, den_s_C, fs)
% check the transfer function
tf(num_d_C, den_d_C, T)
tf(num_d_C, den_d_C, T, 'variable', 'z^-1')
% check the frequency response of RLC
figure('Name','Freq. resp.','NumberTitle','off');
freqz(num_d_C, den_d_C);
title('Freq. response');
% algorithm delay
Nop = 1 * R; % number of samples for algorithm dealy
aop = 1;
bop = zeros(1, Nop + 1); bop(1, Nop + 1) = 1;
% step response
x_step = ones (0:(N - 1)); % step
i_C_step = filter (bop, aop, x_step);
i_C_step = filter (num_d_C, den_d_C, i_C_step);
% impuls response
x_imp = [1 zeros (0:(N - 2))]; % step
i_C_imp = filter (bop, aop, x_imp);
i_C_imp = filter (num_d_C, den_d_C, i_C_imp);
% frequency response
i_C_freq = fft (i_C_imp);
```

Using the above listing, the step response of the compensation circuit is determined. The step response is shown in Fig. 4.35a (for $I_L(z) = 0$). The total delay time of this circuit is equal to about 0.25 ms. The frequency response is calculated using the same Matlab program. The frequency response is shown in Fig. 4.35b, with the cut-off frequency value of this circuit being equal to about 3.5 kHz. For the simulation, the reference compensation signal $I_C(z)$ is calculated by an IPT algorithm, and load current $I_L(z)$ is calculated by the power controller with resistive load simulator. The simulated line current $I_M(z)$ results from adding both signals. Simulated current signal waveforms of the compensation circuit are shown in Fig. 4.36. The waveforms obtained from the simulation are very close to the experimental waveforms (Fig. 4.24). For simplicity, in the simulation model, the PWM modulator is omitted, so the waveforms do not have modulation components. The spectra of the

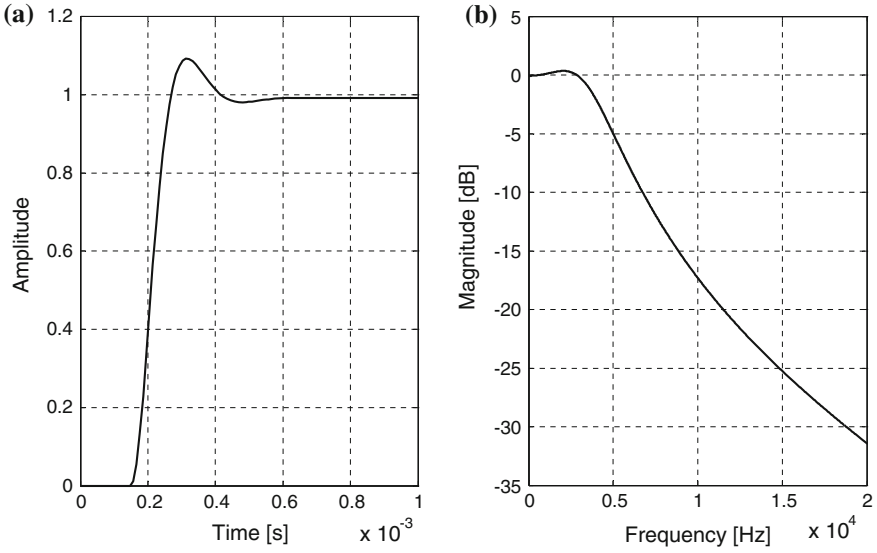



**Fig. 4.35** The responses of APF output circuit: **a** step, **b** frequency

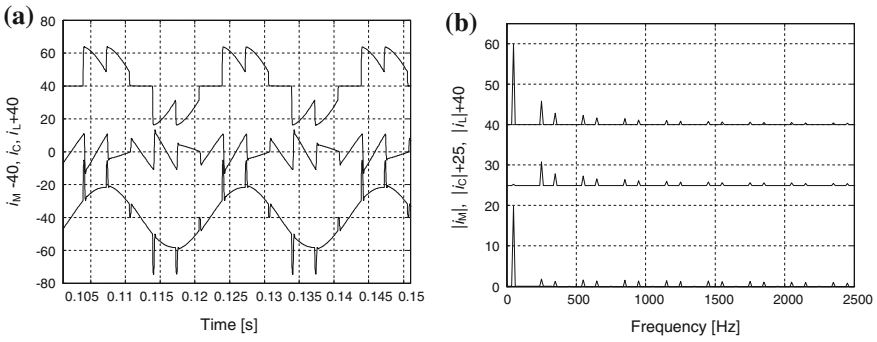



**Fig. 4.36** Simulation currents of compensation circuit, load current $i_L$ (*top*), compensation current $i_C$ (*middle*), line current $i_M$ (*bottom*): **a** waveforms, **b** spectra

**Table 4.7** Line current parameters

| Current $i_M$ | $I_M$ (rms) (A) | *THD* (%) | *SINAD* (dB) | *THD50* (%) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Without compensation | 15.0 | 39.3 | −8.7 | 39.0 |
| Classical algorithm | 14.5 | 27.8 | −11.5 | 27.2 |
| Prediction algorithm $T_{AH} = 214\,\mu$s | 14.0 | 3.2 | −29.8 | 1.3 |

currents $I_L(z)$, $I_C(z)$, $I_M(z)$ are shown in Fig. 4.36b. In Table 4.7, some parameters of line current $I_M(z)$ are presented. Shown are the line parameters for a circuit without compensation and for a circuit with classical compensation. For example, the *THD* ratio of simulated current is equal to 39.3 % for a circuit without compensation, and is equal up to 27.8 % for a circuit with compensation. This shows that the classical compensation circuit does not work effectively with rapid changes in load current.

## 4.7 Methods of Reducing APF Dynamic Distortion

The shunt APF control current dynamics are mainly dependent on the inverter output time constant $T_o$, consisting of the APF output impedance and resultant impedance of load and line. Problems related to the dynamics of the APF are not very widely described in the literature, but it is possible to find a few publications: e.g., [28, 29, 37, 40, 41, 44, 53]. Possible solutions for the improvement of APF dynamics are shown in Table 4.8. Proposed circuits for reducing APF dynamic distortion are presented in Fig. 4.37. In the simplest solution, the speed of load current changes should be decreased. In order to reduce the impact of this phenomenon in a practical compensation circuit, the rate of change of the load current is reduced by adding a serial inductor $L_k$ (Fig. 4.37a). However, this solution increases the weight and cost of the compensation system and, with respect to additional power loses, it is not acceptable in every case. Another simple solution is a high speed APF with high frequency switching output transistors. This allows for a reduction in the value of the output inductor inductance $L_C$ and thus decreases the output time constant. The disadvantage of this solution is the large power losses in output transistors. A compromise solution is to use two APF filters: one high power slow APF and a second low power high speed APF (Fig. 4.37b). Then the compensation signal should be divided into two subbands, low pass and high pass. However, to ensure a good compensation result, the high speed APF output current should have the same value as in the slow APF, which reduces the benefits of such a solution in comparison to the single fast filter. However, it is possible to turn on the fast APF only in transient states, when the value of load current rapidly changes. The loads can be divided into two main categories: predictable loads and noise-like (unpredictable) loads. Most

**Table 4.8** Methods to reduce the APF dynamic distortion

| Predictable loads | Unpredictable loads |
|---|---|
| • APF with additional inductor | • APF with additional inductor |
| • High speed APF | • High speed APF |
| • Set of two APFs: high power low speed APF, low power high speed APF | • Set of two APFs: high power low speed APF, low power high speed APF |
| • APF with multirate output inverter | • APF with multirate output inverter |
| • APF with prediction control algorithm | |

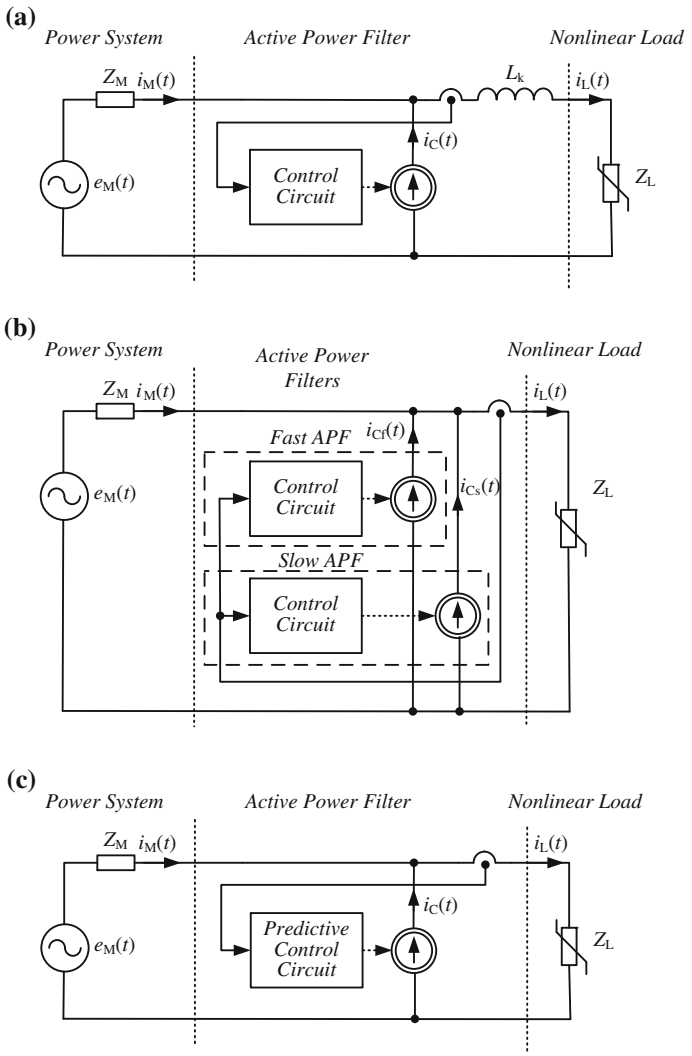



**Fig. 4.37** Proposed circuits for decreasing APF dynamic distortion: **a** by reducing the rate of change of load current, **b** by using two APFs, fast and slow, **c** by using predictive control circuit

loads belong to the first category. For this reason, it is possible to predict the current value of the compensation current after a few periods of observation [28, 37]. A block diagram of such a circuit is shown in Fig. 4.37c. In the case of unpredictable loads, a mutlirate APF with modified output inverter [40] is proposed. Both the circuit and the inverter are described later in this chapter.

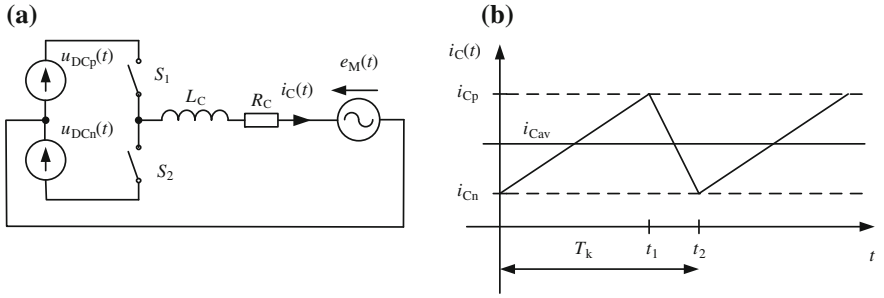



**Fig. 4.38** The APF output current ripple: **a** simplified circuit used for current ripple calculation, **b** time diagram of idealized compensation current $i_C(t)$

### *4.7.1 APF Output Current Ripple Calculation*

A diagram of a simple power inverter model connected to the mains power is shown in Fig. 4.32a, where $C_C$ is an output filter capacitance for dumping modulation components. In this circuit, the time constant is typically and mainly dependent on inductor $L_C$ value. Therefore, when the transistor switching period $T_k = 1/f_k$ is much less than the circuit main time constant $\tau_C$, it is possible to simplify the circuit from Fig. 4.32a to the circuit shown in Fig. 4.38a. It possible to assume that the resulting circuit resistance $R_C$ mainly depends on the resistance of inductor $L_C$,

$$R_C \cong R_{L_C}. \tag{4.28}$$

For switching state $S_1 = 1, S_2 = 0$, compensation current $i_C(t)$ can be calculated using the formula

$$i_C(t) = \frac{u_{DCp}(t_0) - e_M(t_0)}{R_C}\left(1 - \mathrm{e}^{-\tau_C t}\right) + i_C(t_0)\mathrm{e}^{-\tau_C t}, \tag{4.29}$$

where:

$$\tau_C = \frac{L_C}{R_C}, \tag{4.30}$$

and for state $S_1 = 0, S_2 = 1$ $i_C(t)$ can be calculated by

$$i_C(t) = \frac{-u_{DCp}(t_0) - e_M(t_0)}{R_C}\left(1 - \mathrm{e}^{-\tau_C t}\right) + i_C(t_1)\mathrm{e}^{-\tau_C t}. \tag{4.31}$$

If it is assumed that

$$f_k \gg \frac{1}{\tau_C} \quad \text{and} \quad f_k \gg \frac{1}{T_M}, \tag{4.32}$$

where: $T_M$—mains period.

Assuming that, during the switching period $T_k$, voltages $e_M(t), u_{DCp}(t)$ and $u_{DCn}(t)$ are constant, and that average current $i_C$ is constant too, then the output current can be calculated by simplified equations: for state $S_1 = 1, S_2 = 0$

$$i_C(t_1) = \frac{u_{DCp}(t_0) - u_s(t_0)}{L_c} t_1 + i_{Cn}, \tag{4.33}$$

and for state $S_1 = 0, S_2 = 1$

$$i_C(t_2) = \frac{-u_{DCp}(t_0) - e_M(t_0)}{L_C} t_1 + i_{Cp}, \tag{4.34}$$

where: $t_1 - t_0$ switch-on time for $S_1, t_2 - t_1$ switch-on time for $S_2$.

A time diagram of idealized compensation current $i_C$ is shown in Fig. 4.38b. The output ripple can be calculated by the equation

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta |i_C(t_1)| &= \left| \frac{u_{DCp}(t_0) - e_M(t_0)}{L_C} t_1 \right| \\ \Delta |i_C(t_2)| &= \left| \frac{-u_{DCp}(t_1) - e_M(t_1)}{L_C} t_2 \right|. \end{aligned} \tag{4.35}$$

The voltage value at capacitors $C_1$ and $C_2$ is stabilized by a voltage controller and is equal to $u_{DC}$; this is why it can be assumed that $u_{DC} = u_{DCp} = u_{DCn}$. To achieve low dynamic distortion of the output current $i_C$, the slew rate must be high. The slew rate can be calculated by the formula

$$\left| \frac{\Delta i_C(t_1)}{\Delta t} \right| = \left| \frac{\pm u_{DC} - e_M(t_0)}{L_C} \right|, \tag{4.36}$$

and the maximum and minimum values of current slew rate

$$\begin{aligned} \left. \frac{\Delta i_C(t)}{\Delta t} \right|_{max} &= \frac{u_{DC} + e_{Mmax}}{L_C}, \\ \left. \frac{\Delta i_C(t)}{\Delta t} \right|_{min} &= \frac{u_{DC} - e_{Mmax}}{L_C}. \end{aligned} \tag{4.37}$$

Currently, IGBT transistors are mostly used as switching elements in the inverters. For the ordinary IGBT, the maximum switching frequency is equal to 20 kHz [31] and around 60 kHz [19] for the fast IGBT. The transistor switching power losses can be approximated using the formula

**Table 4.9** Pros and cons of using different values of inductor

| Bigger value of inductor | Lower value of inductor |
|---|---|
| *Pros* | |
| • Lower current ripple | • Faster transition response |
| • Lower transistor switching frequency | • Lower cost and lower weight |
| *Cons* | |
| • Slower transition response | • Higher value of current ripple |
| • Bigger cost and weight | • Higher switching frequency |
| | • Bigger influence from the switching transition |

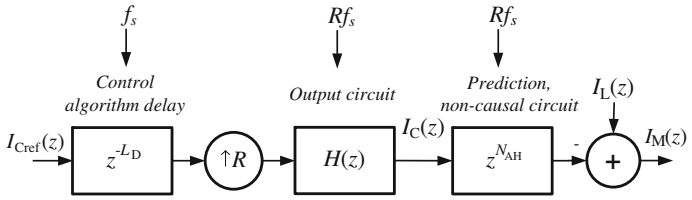



**Fig. 4.39** Block diagram of compensation circuit digital simulation with noncausal current predictor (for one phase)

$$P_{tot} = f_k E_k + P_{on}, \tag{4.38}$$

where: $E_k$—energy lost in single switching cycle, $P_{on}$—power losses in switched-on state.

So it is possible to assume that transistor power losses are directly proportional to switching frequency.

In respect of the above-mentioned problem, choosing the right value of inductor $L_C$ is very difficult. Factors to be considered in selecting the right value of APF output inverter inductor are shown in Table 4.9. For a higher $L_C$ value, the time constant is higher and dynamic distortion is bigger, while for a lower $L_C$ value, circuit dynamic distortions are smaller, but the value of compensation current ripple $i_C$ is higher. One of the ways to decrease the dynamic distortion and keep current ripple at a reasonable value is to increase transistor switching frequency, but in this case switching losses and influence from the switching transition are increased.

## 4.8 Predictive Control Algorithm for APF

For predictable loads, the compensation error depends on the dynamics of the output circuit and occurs periodically, so it can be partially compensated by sending a compensation current in advance. Such a solution would be impossible to implement in an analog control system, but it is easy to implement in a digital control system. In the proposed solution, for predictable loads, it is possible to use a circuit with prediction [28, 37, 40, 44], as shown in Fig. 4.39.

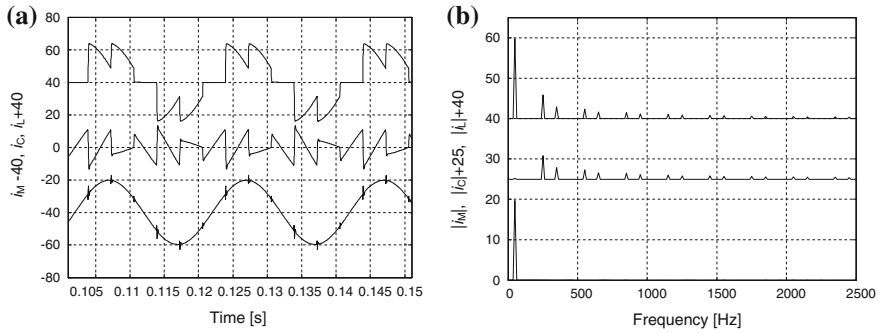



**Fig. 4.40** Simulation currents of compensation circuit with prediction, load current $i_L$ (*top*), compensation current $i_C$ (*middle*), line current $i_M$ (*bottom*): **a** waveforms, **b** spectrum

The desired digital compensation reference current signal $I_{Cref}(z)$ is sent to the circuit using prediction. Previous current compensation signal samples are stored in memory and are sent to present output in advance. This compensation is dependent on the inverter output time constant. Because the time constant is mainly dependent on the output inverter inductor value, it is possible to set a constant value for advance time $T_{AH}$. In the considered APF, the discrete advance time $T_{AH}$ is

$$T_{AH} = N_{AH} T_s, \tag{4.39}$$

where: $N_{AH}$—number of samples sent ahead. In the simulated compensation circuit, the digital advance time is equal to $T_{AH} = 214\ \mu s$. Simulated current signal waveforms of the compensation circuit with prediction are shown in Fig. 4.40a. The waveforms of line current $i_M$ show that the goal of compensation has been reached and that the shape of the current is very close to sinusoidal. This is also supported by the spectrum shown in Fig. 4.40b. Similarly, the same is true with the signal parameters listed in Table 4.7. As a result of the prediction algorithm, the *THD* ratio was reduced from 27.8 to 3.2 %.

### *4.8.1 Experimental Results*

For experimental studies, the author used the compensation system EFA1 shown in Fig. 4.22. A simplified block diagram of the active power filter control algorithm is depicted in Fig. 4.25. The implementation of the control algorithm using a fixed-point 16-bit digital signal processor is described in detail in this chapter. Modification of the instantaneous reactive power control algorithm is shown in Fig. 4.41, with two prediction (noncausal) circuits being added to the classical control circuit [43, 44]. Figures 4.42 and 4.43 show the experimental waveforms in the same steady-state conditions, for the classical APF (Fig. 4.42a), and for the modified APF circuit with

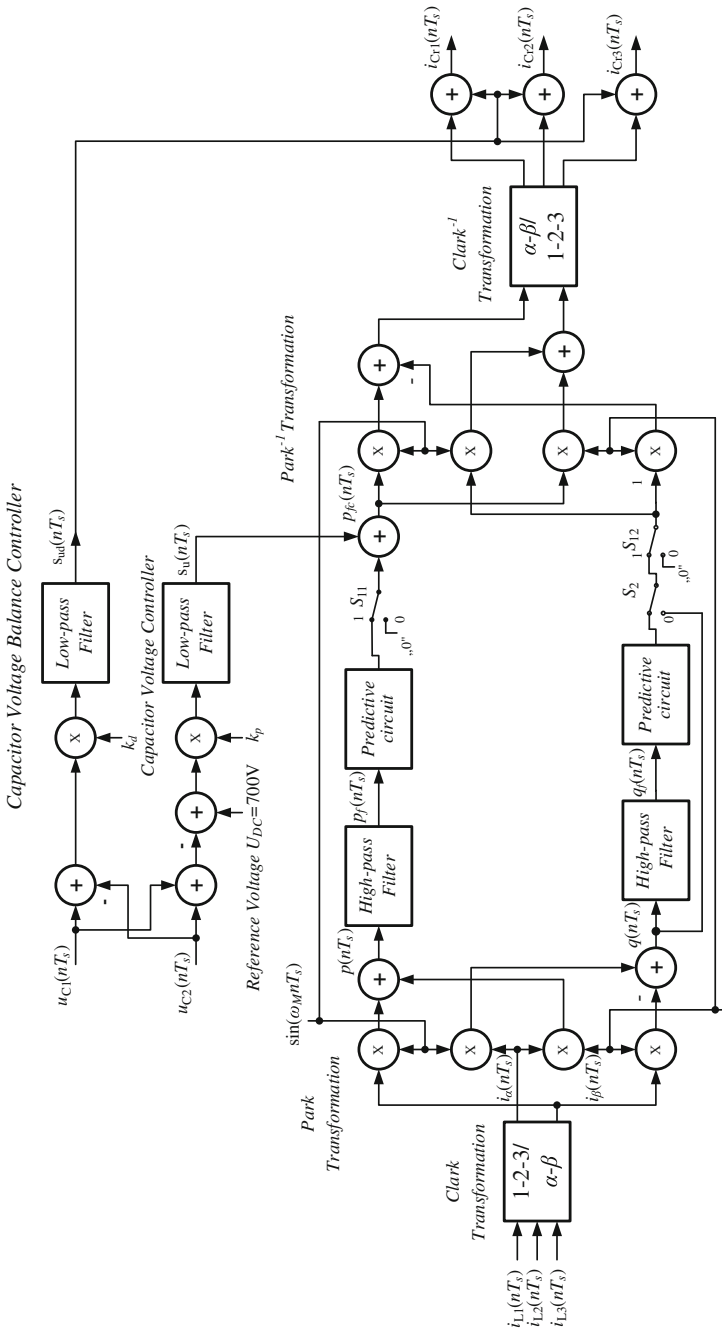



**Fig. 4.41** Block diagram of control algorithm with predictive circuit

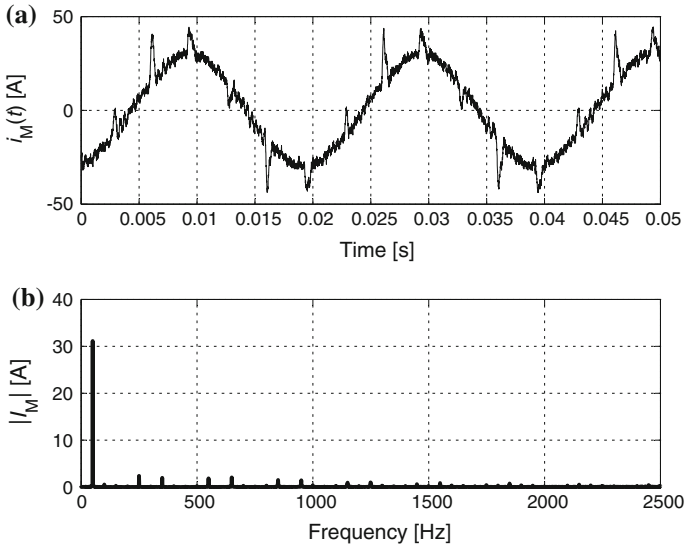



**Fig. 4.42** Experimental waveforms of the classical three-phase APF in steady state with the resistive load line current $i_{M1}(t)$: **a** waveform, **b** normalized spectrum magnitude

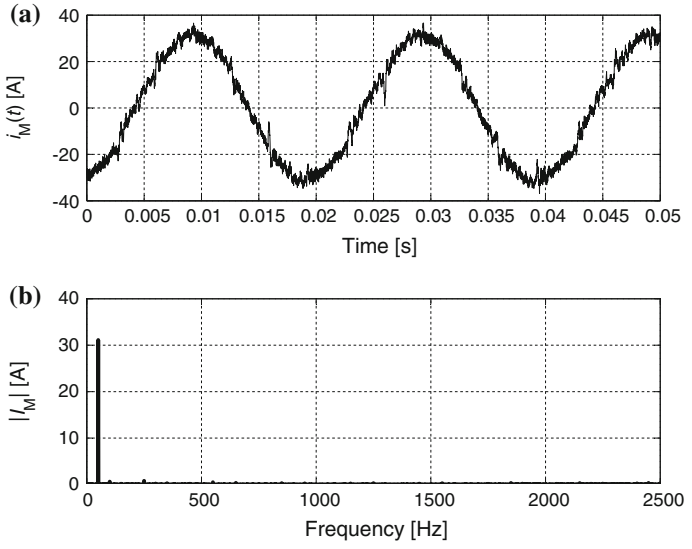



**Fig. 4.43** Experimental waveforms of the modified three-phase APF in steady state with the resistive load, line current $i_{M1}(t)$ for $N_{AH} = 3$: **a** waveform, **b** normalized spectrum magnitude

predictive compensation current (Fig. 4.43a). In these figures, the line current $i_{M1}(t)$ waveform and its normalized spectrum magnitude are depicted. The best results are achieved for the number of samples sent ahead equaling three $N_{AH} = 3$; for a higher number of samples the compensator is unstable. Using the new control algorithm with predictive harmonic compensation, it is possible to decrease the harmonic contents in power line currents from *THD* ratio around 22 % to near 5 % for $N_{AH} = 3$.

### *4.8.2 Step Response of APF*

The first issue when using the APF with a predictive circuit is determining how it will work when the value of load current changes rapidly. For this reason, the author investigated a step response of load currents for the considered shunt APF [44]. Figure 4.44a shows the waveforms of a load current regulated by a power controller with resistive load without the APF compensation. The load current value is adjusted by a power controller regulated by thyristor phase control, by changing trigger angle. The fire angle is controlled by a signal shown in Fig. 4.44a–d (the waveform at the very top). The step response of the load currents for the considered shunt APF with classical control algorithm is shown in Fig. 4.44b, for the same load current values as in Fig. 4.44a. The APF step response setting time is equal to one period of line voltage. Figure 4.44c shows step response of the APF with modified control algorithm with predictive circuits constantly switched on. In the first line voltage period, after the value of load currents is changed, the APF sends compensation current $i_C(t)$ adequate to previous load currents, and hence the resultant currents are nonsinusoidal (Fig. 4.44c). Therefore, the predictive circuit should be modified to the circuit presented in Fig. 4.45. In this circuit, current samples $I_{in}(z)$ are stored in DSP memory—sample buffer of length $N_M$. In the next period of line current, they are compared with present samples and if the absolute difference of the present sample value and respective sample stored in memory is less than an assumed value, the predictive (noncausal) current compensation algorithm is switched on (switch $S_1$ in position 1). As a result of this comparison, we can assume that the current waveform will be the same as in the previous period, and therefore samples $I_{in}(z)z^{-L}$ can be sent from the buffer to the output ahead in time, which decreases the dynamic distortion. The length of sample buffer can be calculated by the formula

$$L = N_M - N_{AH}, \tag{4.40}$$

If load current is changed, the (noncausal) current predictive algorithm is switched off (switch $S_1$ in position 0), the algorithm waits for a steady state and if the current waveform does not change in subsequent periods, it switches on again (switch $S_1$ in position 1). The output signal is described by the formula

$$\begin{cases} I_{out}(z) = I_{in}(z)z^{-L} & \text{for} \quad S_1 = 1 \\ I_{out}(z) = I_{in}(z) & \text{for} \quad S_1 = 0 \end{cases} \tag{4.41}$$

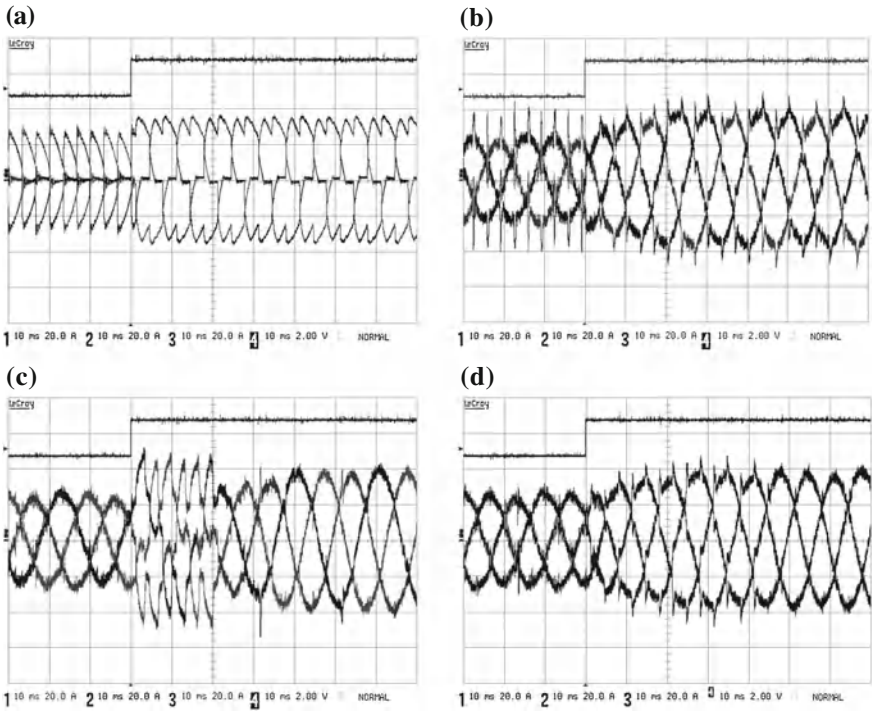



**Fig. 4.44** Experimental waveforms of line currents: $i_{M1}(t), i_{M2}(t), i_{M3}(t)$ for step response of the load currents for the power controller with the resistive load: **a** APF is switched off, **b** APF with classical control algorithm, **c** APF with predictive algorithm constantly switched on, $N_{AH} = 3$, **d** APF with adaptive predictive algorithm, $N_{AH} = 3$

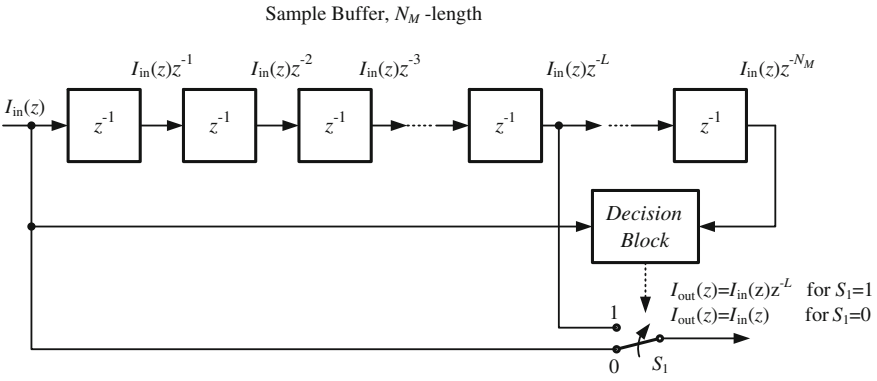



**Fig. 4.45** Block diagram of adaptive circuit with prediction

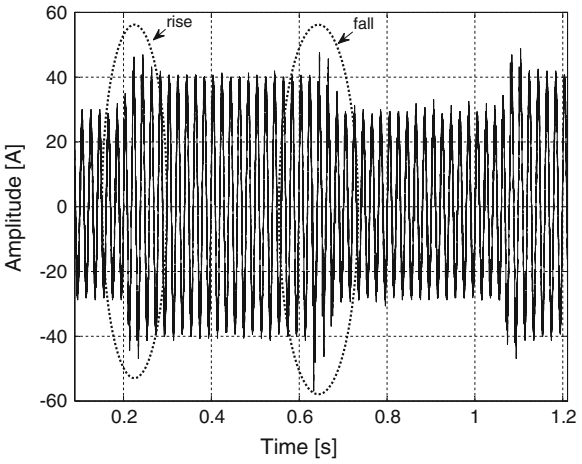



**Fig. 4.46** Experimental waveform of line current $i_{M1}(t)$, for $N_{AH} = 3$

Waveforms with the result of such modification are shown in Fig. 4.44d. After the rapid change in value of load current, the predictive (noncausal) circuits are switched off. In the considered case (Fig. 4.44d), it is again switched on after two and a half line voltage periods. It should be noticed that interesting changes in the spectrum of line current occur for rapid changes of load current. For this reason, a test with square changes of load current was performed. Its result is shown in Fig. 4.46. A waveform of line current $i_{M1}(t)$ (for $N_{AH} = 3$) is depicted for square changes of load current $i_{M1}(t)$. However, a waterfall diagram of the spectrum of line current is shown in Fig. 4.47. Using adaptive predictive compensation current, it is possible to decrease harmonic content for predictable loads. This modification for an instantaneous reactive power control algorithm is very simple and additional computational workload is very small. Therefore, it can be easily realized in an existing APF digital control circuit. The considered current prediction circuit may also be useful for other APF control algorithms. The presented circuit may be also applied in other areas of power electronics.

## 4.9 Selected Harmonics Separation Methods Suitable for APF

In the proposed solution, the user can select which harmonics are most important in the active power filtration process. This is very important, especially when several APFs are working in parallel or cascaded connection. Another application of such circuits is power line harmonics resonance dumper. A block diagram of a selective harmonics APF control circuit is shown in Fig. 4.48.

In this circuit, $K$ band-pass filters tuned for selected harmonics are used. For such a circuit, the signal representing compensation current is calculated by the equation

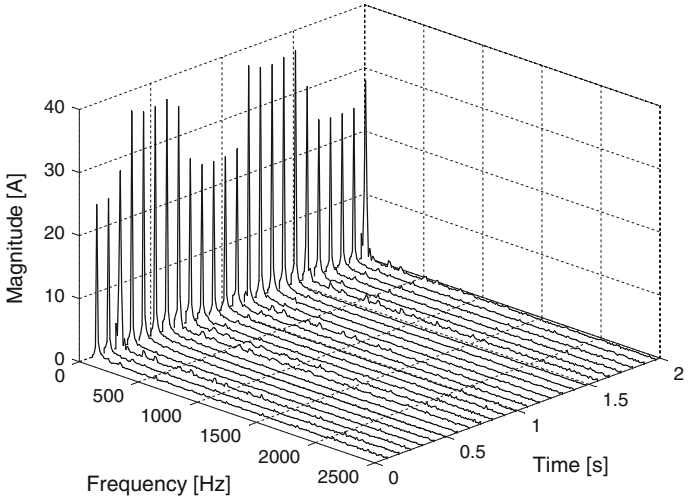



**Fig. 4.47** Experimental waterfall diagram of line current $i_{M1}(t)$, for $N_{AH} = 3$

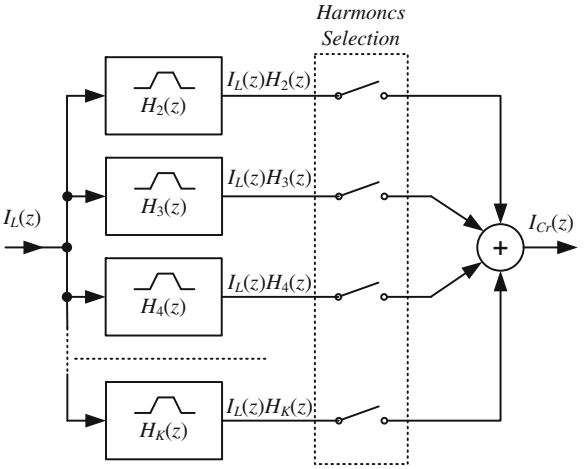



**Fig. 4.48** Selective $K$ harmonics compensation control circuit for $k = \{5, 7, 11, 13\}$

$$I_{Cr}(z) = I_L(z) \sum_{k=0}^{K} H_k(z), \tag{4.42}$$

where: $H_k(z)$—transfer function of band-pass filter for $k$th harmonic.

A circuit giving the user the choice of harmonics compensated by the APF has been added to the control system, thus allowing the user to adjust the APF compensation to the local conditions. The set of harmonics selected for elimination (second, third, ...) is set and in the synthesis filter banks harmonic signals are synthesized to

the appropriate current compensation signal. In this case, the synthesis filter bank is very simple and consists of a summing block only. This kind of solution can also be used for harmonic prediction to cancel permanent dynamics errors (for predictable loads), as described by the author [37].

### *4.9.1 Control Circuit with MDFT*

A moving DFT algorithm [32] works as an analysis filter bank. This is described in Chap. 3. The block diagram of such an analysis filter bank is shown in Fig. 3.59. Simplified characteristics of the amplitude of such a filter bank are shown in Fig. 3.50. The APF control circuit using MDFT filter banks for four harmonics ($k = \{5, 7, 11, 13\}$) is shown in Fig. 4.49. The discrete representation in $Z$-domain of load current signal $i_L(z)$ is divided into $N = 256$ uniform subbands by the analysis filter banks, with, in this case, only four being selected. An analysis filter bank consists of a common comb filter on the input and the four branches. The frequency response of such a circuit is depicted in Fig. 4.50. It should be noted that for the four selected harmonics phase shift is zero degrees. The control system shown in Fig. 4.49 simulation studies was carried out for a three-phase APF compensation circuit. The results of such a simulation are shown in Fig. 4.51.

### *4.9.2 Control Circuit with IPT Algorithm*

IPT circuits can be also used in an analysis filter bank. A block diagram of this circuit for the compensation of 5th, 7th, and 11th harmonics is shown in Fig 4.52. The circuit consists of three blocks: the first works with a frequency of $5 f_M$, the second, of $7 f_M$ and the third, of $11 f_M$. Resultant compensation signal $i_{Cr}(n)$ for each phase is a result of the sum of output signals for the selected harmonics.

## 4.10 Multirate APF

Application of a prediction algorithm for unpredictable loads is inefficient. Hence, the author suggests using multirate APF. Given that high dynamic performance is necessary only for approximately 10 % of the time in the line voltage power period, increasing the switching frequency to 60 kHz seems to be unreasonable. Therefore, the author proposes an inverter output stage with two sets of output circuits, fast and slow [40–42]. The compensation circuit for a single phase with active power filter and with a modified inverter is depicted in Fig. 4.53. The circuit has a common DC bank ($C_1$, $C_2$) for both parts of the inverter: slow ($Q_{s1}$, $Q_{s2}$, $L_{Cs}$) and fast ($Q_{f1}$, $Q_{f2}$, $L_{Cf}$). The value of inductor $L_{Cs}$ is designed to achieve a low $i_C(t)$ current

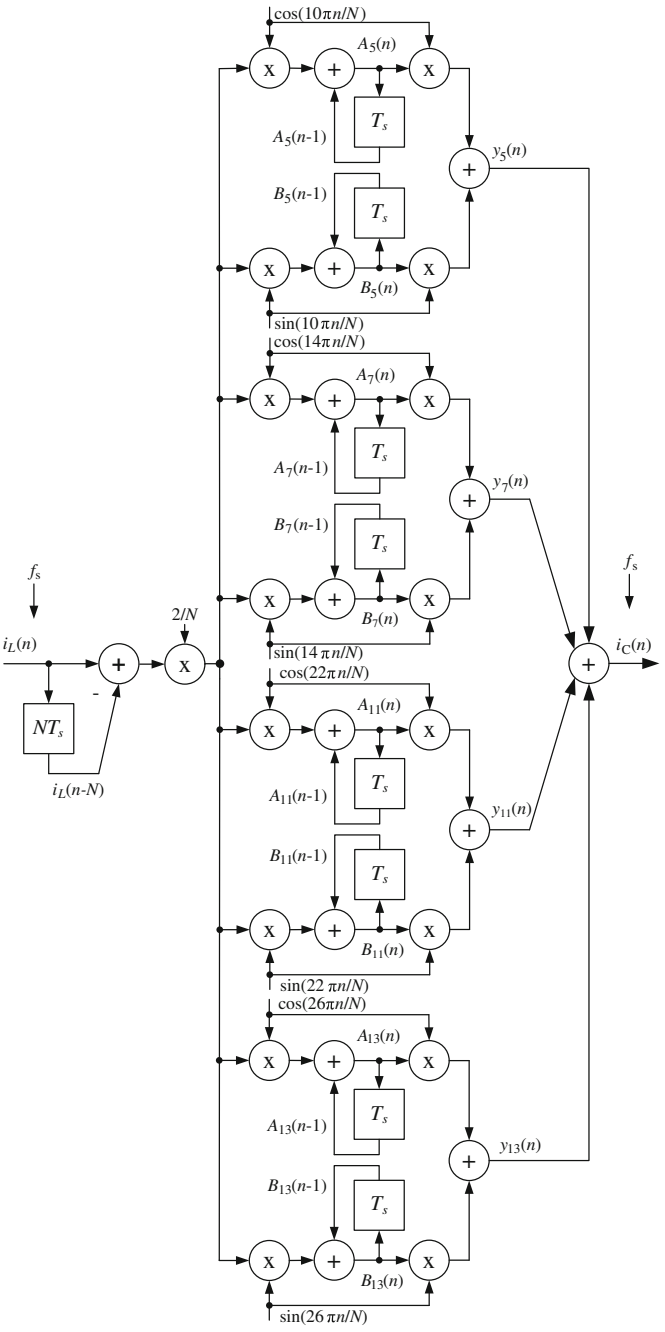



**Fig. 4.49** A block diagram of MDFT APF control circuit

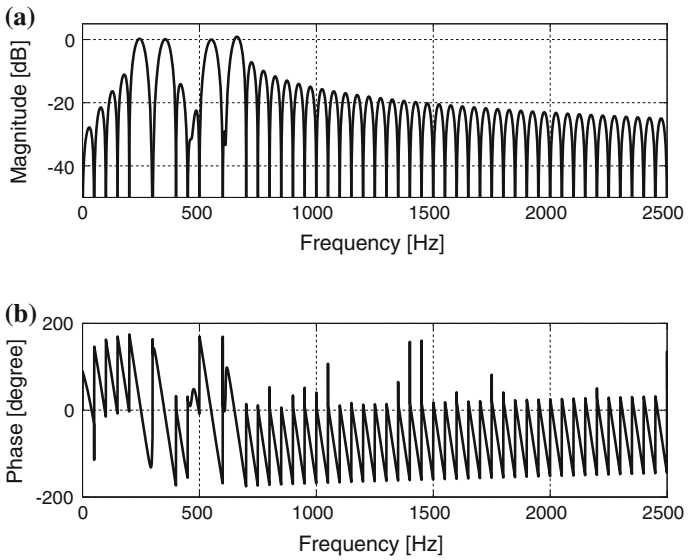



**Fig. 4.50** Frequency response of MDFT filter bank $N = 256$, $k = \{5, 7, 11, 13\}$: **a** magnitude, **b** phase

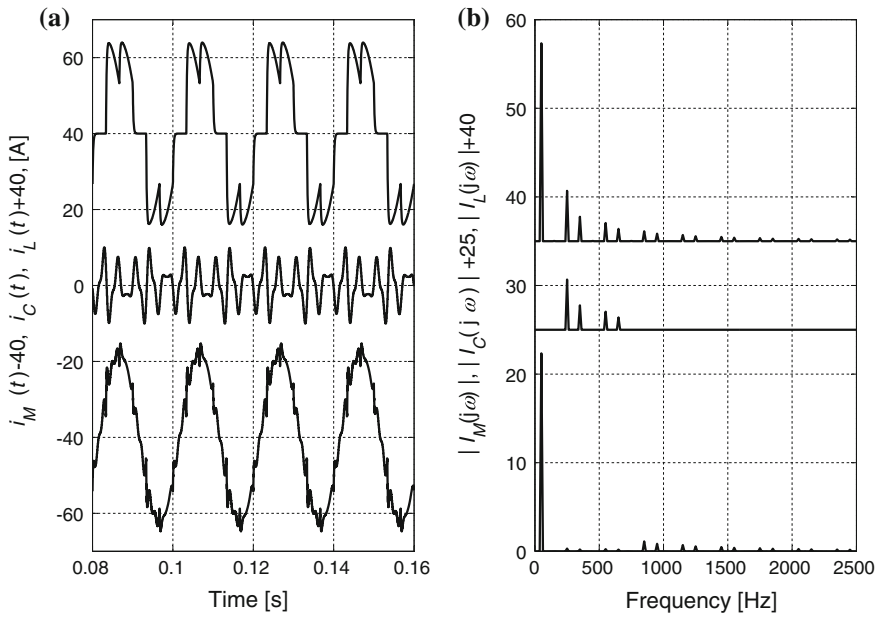



**Fig. 4.51** APF MDFT with selective harmonics compensation for $k = \{5, 7, 11, 13\}$: **a** waveforms, **b** spectra

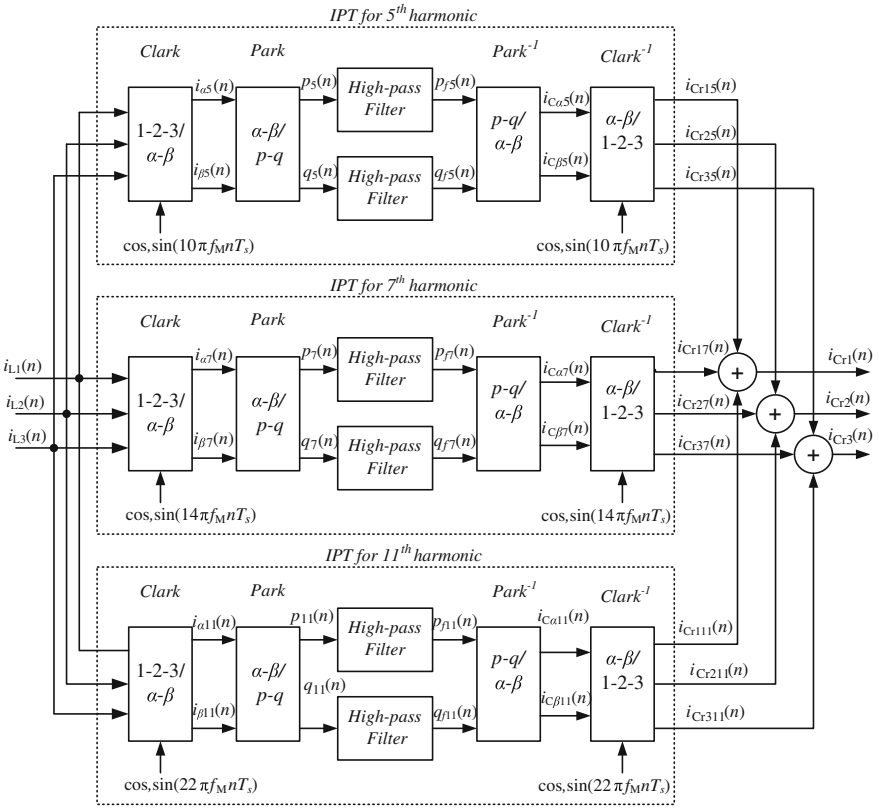



**Fig. 4.52** A block diagram of IPT APF control circuit for $k = \{5, 7, 11\}$

ripple and the value of inductor $L_{cf}$ is designed to achieve a fast response to the output current.

A simplified block diagram of the author's proposed three-phase active power compensation circuit with the multirate APF with improved dynamic performance for a power of 75 kVA is depicted in Fig. 4.54 [40, 41, 44].

The circuit consists of a power part with two three-phase IGBT power transistor bridges connected to the AC lines through an inductive filtering system composed of inductors $L_{Cs1}$, $L_{Cs2}$, $L_{Cs3}$, $L_{Cf1}$, $L_{Cf2}$ and $L_{Cf3}$. The APF circuit contains common DC energy storage, provided by two electrolytic capacitors $C_1$ and $C_2$. A view of the output circuit of the APF is shown in Fig. 4.55. The control circuit is realized using the floating-point digital signal processor TMS320F28335 [50, 51]. The block diagram of APF control algorithm is depicted in Fig. 4.56. The control algorithm uses sliding Goertzel DFT [23, 24, 37, 39] for the load current first harmonic detection. In respect to sliding Goertzel DFT characteristics shown in Chap. 3, control circuits have to be synchronized to line voltages $u_1(t)$, $u_2(t)$ and $u_3(t)$ by a synchronization

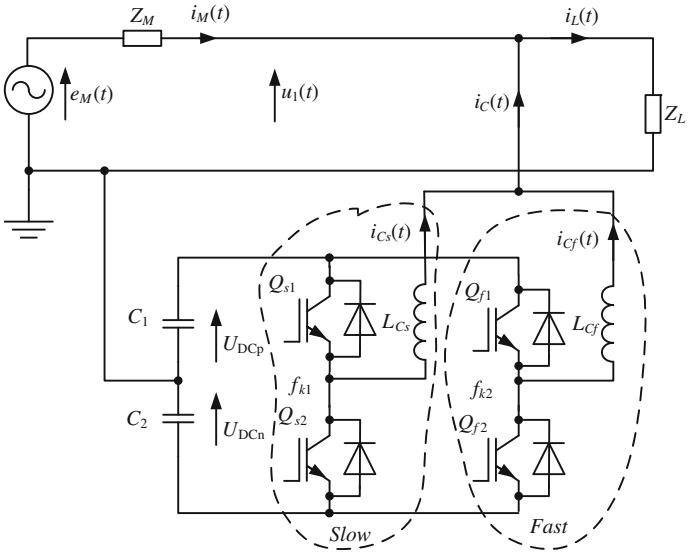



**Fig. 4.53** Single-phase active power filter with modified inverter

unit, and this is why it is one of the most important parts of the control circuit. It consists of a low-pass filter and phase-locked loop circuit (PLL).

### *4.10.1 Analog Input Circuit*

The APF has 11 analog input signals: three from load currents $i_{L1}(t)$, $i_{L2}(t)$ and $i_{L3}(t)$, six from inverter output currents $i_{Cs1}(t)$ $i_{Cs2}(t)$, $i_{Cs3}(t)$, $i_{Cf1}(t)$, $i_{Cf2}(t)$, $i_{Cf3}(t)$ and $i_{Cf1}(t)$, and two from DC capacitor voltages $U_{DCp}$ and $U_{DCn}$. All signals are sampled with a sampling rate equal to $f_s = 102,400$ Hz. For the electronic measurement of currents, with a galvanic isolation between the primary circuit (high power) and the secondary circuit (electronic circuit), current transducers LEM LA 125-P are used. Primary current is transformed to secondary current according to conversion ratio $K_N$. For primary current $i_{pCT} = 125$ A, the secondary is equal to $i_{sCT} = 125$ mA. In a similar way to the currents, the voltages are also transformed. Primary voltage $u_{DC}(t)$ is transformed to current signal and then to voltage secondary current $i_{sVT}(t)$. The considered circuit LEM voltage transducers LV25-P are used. For primary current $i_{pVT} = 10$ mA, the secondary is equal to $i_{sVT} = 25$ mA. The TMS320F28335 has a 12-bit A/D converter with voltage input range equal to 0–3 V [50, 51]. Unfortunately, these inputs are unipolar and therefore all analog input signals have to be transformed to this range. Therefore, for analog signals there is made a virtual ground at +1.5 V. It is made by a 1.5 V reference voltage diode $D_1$. Figure 4.57 shows a simplified diagram of the analog input circuit. A/D converter

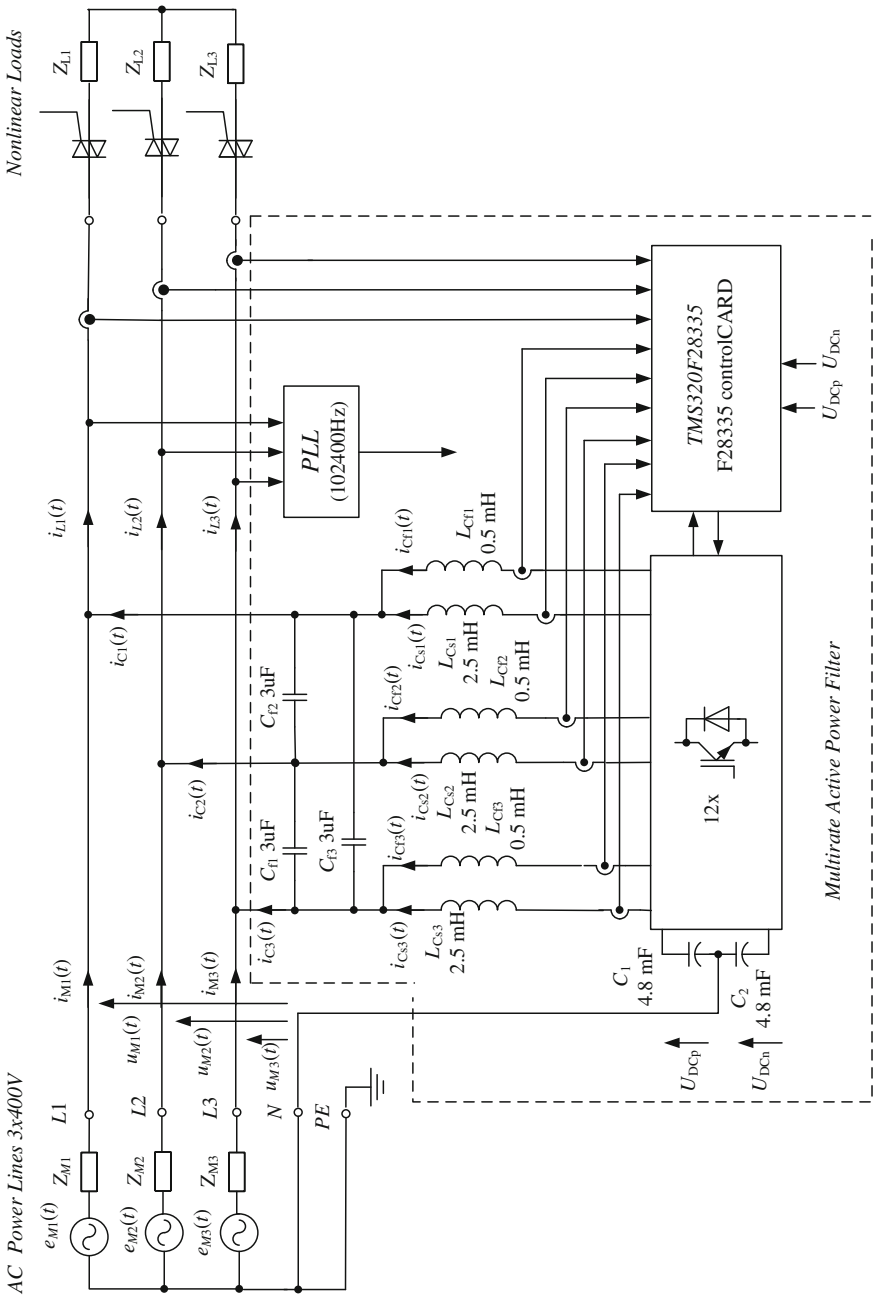



**Fig. 4.54** Modified three-phase shunt active power filter

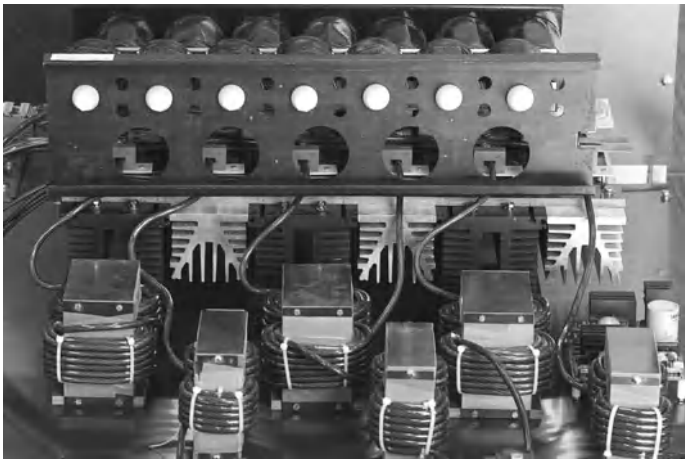


**Fig. 4.55** Three-phase APF output circuit

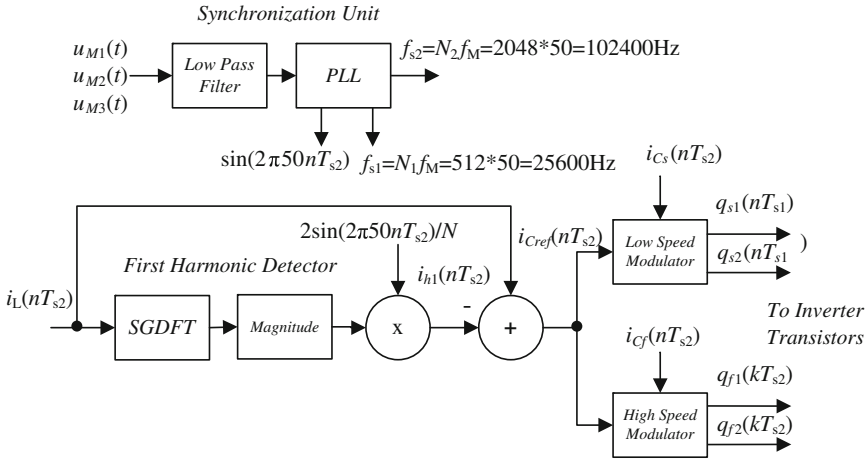



**Fig. 4.56** Block diagram of APF control algorithm

input voltage for current transducer can be calculated by the formula

$$U_{ADCIN0} = \frac{I_C}{K_{NCT}} R_1 - U_{D1}, \tag{4.43}$$

where: $K_{NCT}$—current transfer ratio of current transducer, and for voltage transducer

$$U_{ADCIN7} = \frac{U_{DCp}}{R_4} \frac{1}{K_{NVT}} R_5 - U_{D1}. \tag{4.44}$$

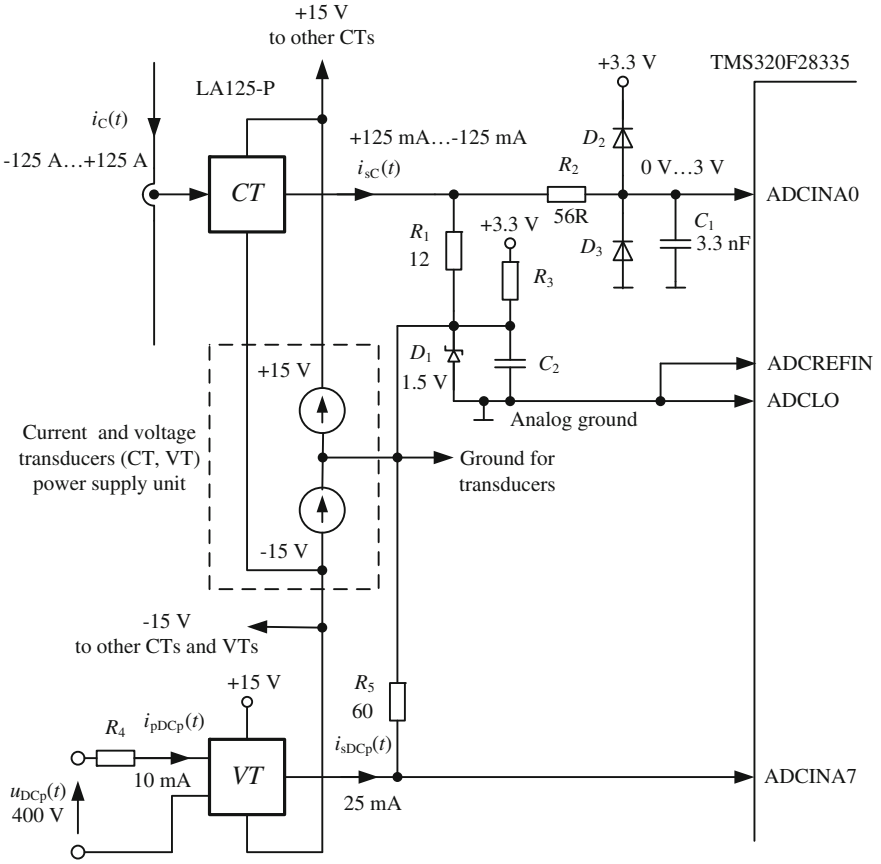



**Fig. 4.57** Simplified diagram of galvanically isolated analog input circuit

Such a solution, designed by the author, allows significant simplification of the input circuit, using only one supply voltage 3.3 V.

## *4.10.2 Output Inductors*

The output inductor should have linear characteristics across the whole output current range. Another important inductor parameter is the frequency characteristics of the inductor value. With respect to high frequency modulation components generated by the output inverter, the inductor value has to be linear across a frequency range. Inductor design considerations are not trivial and there is no perfect design procedure. Some problems of inductor design are described among others by Bossche and Valchev [12]. In the considered application, the value of inductors was chosen

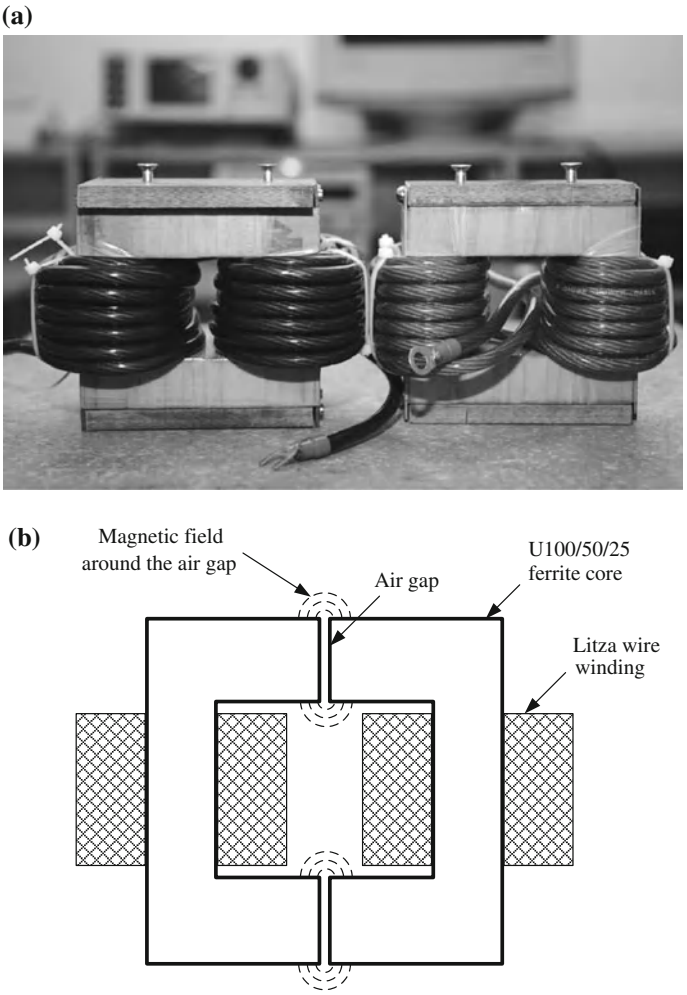



**Fig. 4.58** Inductors: **a** the view of inductors, **b** location of winding

equal [39, 40] to: $L_{Cf} = 0.5\,\text{mH}$ and $L_{Cs} = 2.5\,\text{mH}$. A picture of the designed inductors $L_{Cf}$ and $L_{Cs}$ is shown in Fig. 4.58a. To reduce high-frequency losses, ferrite cores U100/50/25 with air gaps and litz wire were chosen. The inductor windings are located at some distance from the air gap to avoid induction heating of the windings by the transverse field at that place. Location of the windings is depicted in Fig. 4.58b. Small signal frequency responses of the designed inductors were checked using Agilent 4294A precision impedance analyzer. The result of these measurements is shown in Fig. 4.59a. The frequency response of inductor impedance is linear up to 1 MHz. Additionally, inductor parameters were checked for high current using a high power sinusoidal voltage source (Fig. 4.59b) with regulated output of

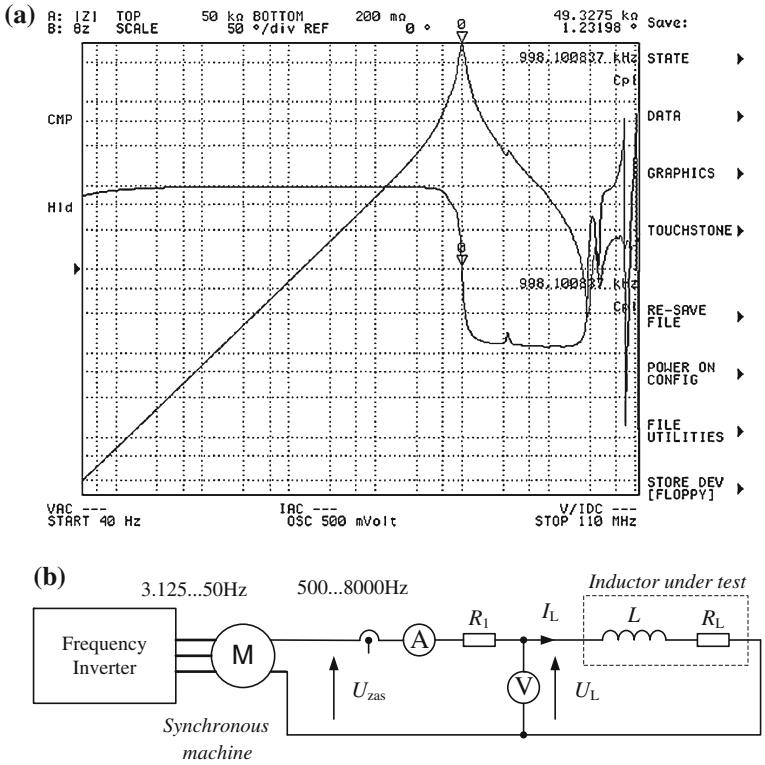



**Fig. 4.59** Inductor tests: **a** small signal frequency response, **b** diagram of the inductor test circuit

0–500 V/50 A, and a frequency range of 500–8,000 Hz. This electric machine voltage source was designed by the author using an old synchronous frequency converter, an electric machine formerly used for induction heating. This electrical machine frequency converter consists of two synchronous electric machines: one three phase on the input and a second single phase on the output, both being fixed on the one common shaft.

### *4.10.3 APF Simulation Results*

The simplified output circuit of the proposed APF is shown in Fig. 4.60. The circuit consists of two output stages: one with switches $S_{s1}$, $S_{s2}$ and inductor $L_{Cs}$, and a second with switches $S_{f1}$, $S_{f2}$ and inductor $L_{Cf}$. The first output stage works continuously with the slowest switching frequency $f_{k1}$. In the second output stage, switches $S_{f1}$, $S_{f2}$ work with a several times higher frequency $f_{k2}$ only in the case when output current changes very quickly (typically 10 % of line voltage power period). Some interesting analyses of a similar circuit were presented by Watanabe

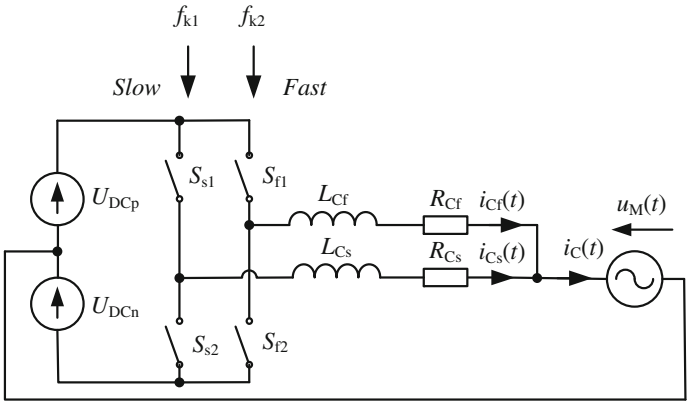



**Fig. 4.60** Simplified diagram of modified inverter model connected to the power line

et al. [52]. At the beginning, a digital hysteresis modulator was designed for controlling the modified inverter. During the simulation analysis, the modified inverter and the classical inverter were taken into consideration. The simulation parameters are: $L_{cf} = 0.5\,\text{mH}$, $L_{cs} = 2.5\,\text{mH}$, $U_{DC} = 390\,\text{V}$, $f_{k2} = 102,400\,\text{Hz}$, $f_{k1} = 25,600\,\text{Hz}$. A simplified diagram of the modified inverter simulation circuit is shown in Fig. 4.60. The control algorithm of the two hysteresis digital modulators with additional conditional control logic implemented in the Matlab is shown in Fig. 4.61. Listing of the Matlab program of two hysteresis modulators:

```
e = i_cref(n) − i_c(n) ∗ kr;
e_s = i_ref(n) − i_cs(n) ∗ kr;
if u_cs >= 0
  if e_s >kh ∗ h
    u_cs = U_DCp − u_M(n);
    if e<− h&&u_cf> = 0
      u_cf = U_DCn − u_M(n);
    elseif e>h&&uc_f< = 0
      u_cf = u_DCp − U_M(n);
    end
  else
    u_Cf = 0;
    if e<− h
      u_cs = U_DCn − u_M(n);
    else
      u_cs = U_DCp − u_M(n);
    end
  end
else %u_Cs <0
```

```
    if e_s<-kh*h
      u_Cs=U_DCn-u_M(n);
      if e<-h&&u_cf>=0
        u_cf=U_DCn-u_M(n);
      elseif e>h&&u_Cf<=0
        u_cf=u_DCp-u_M(n);
      end
    else
      u_Cf=0;
      if e>h
        u_Cs=u_DCp-u_M(n);
      else
        u_Cs=u_DCn-u_M(n);
      end
    end
end
```

Step responses for modified inverter and classic inverter are shown in Fig. 4.62. The classic inverter response time is about 420 μs, and it is near 70 μs for the modified

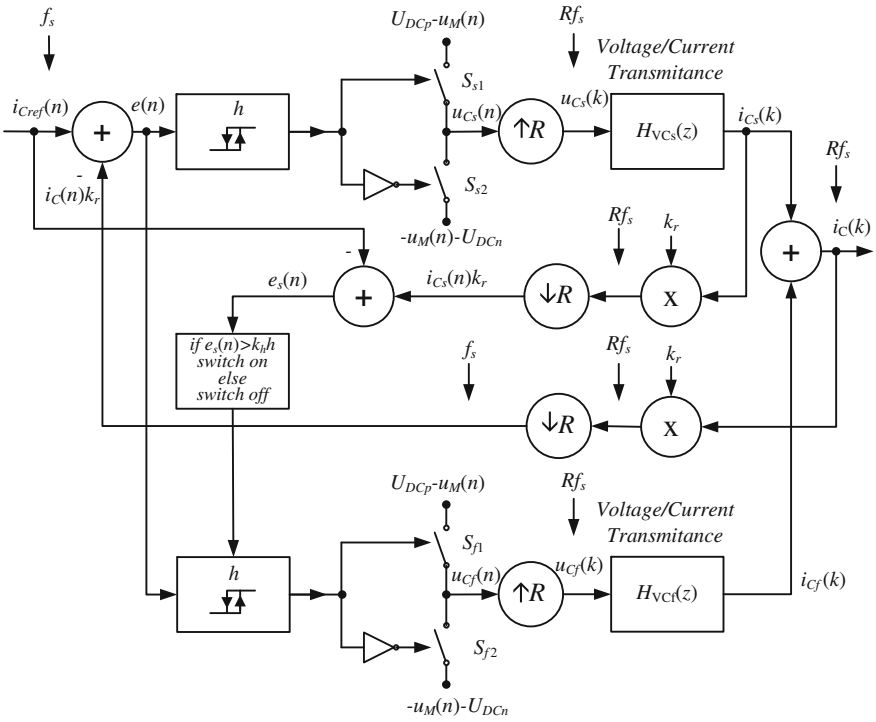



**Fig. 4.61** Simplified block diagram of the output inverter simulation circuit

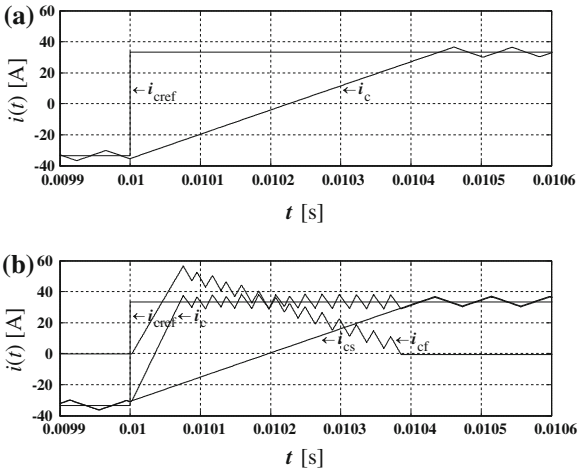



**Fig. 4.62** Step responses of two inverters: **a** classical inverter $i_{Cref}(t)$, $i_C(t)$, **b** modified inverter $i_{Cref}(t)$, $i_C(t)$, $i_{Cf}(t)$, $i_{Cs}(t)$

inverter. The hysteresis digital modulator is one of the simplest and safest, especially at the early experimental stage, but it has a lot of disadvantages, especially for digital implementation [25, 26]; therefore during future investigations other modulator control algorithms will be designed and implemented [22]. Figure 4.63 shows the simulation waveforms for a circuit with modified inverter. The following waveforms are depicted: load current $i_L(t)$, compensation current $i_C(t)$, and line current $i_M(t)$. Using the modified inverter, it is possible to decrease the harmonic contents in power line currents from *THD* ratio about 15 % to about 5 %. The results of the simulation analysis confirm good dynamic performance of the modified inverter used in a shunt active power filter.

The results of the simulation analysis confirm good dynamic performance of the modified inverter used in a shunt active power filter. For assumed simulation parameters, current ripples are higher when the fastest part of the inverter is switched-on, but the resultant value of *THD* ratio is smaller when compared to the classical inverter. The presented solution will be employed together with the noncausal algorithm described. For predictable loads only a working noncausal algorithm will be used, but for unpredictable rapid change of load current the fastest part of the modified inverter will be working.

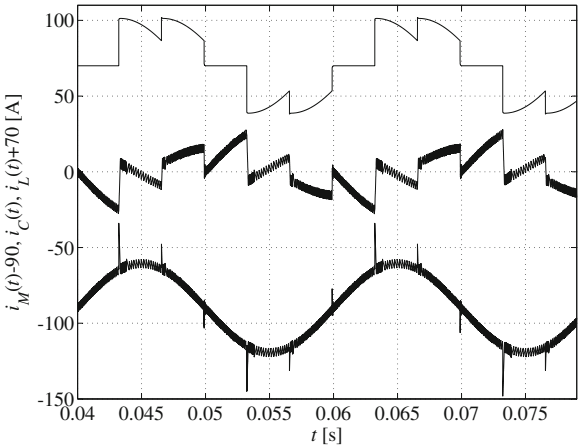



**Fig. 4.63** Simulation waveforms of three-phase active power filter in steady state with resistive load, and with modified output inverter: load current $i_L$, compensation current $i_C$, line current $i_M$

## 4.11 Conclusion

The aim of the author's modifications presented in this chapter is to develop control algorithms which allow a reduction in the line current *THD* ratio. The selected digital signal processing algorithms designed for control of active power filters have been designed and investigated. There have been considered algorithms with first harmonics detectors based on: IIR filter, lattice wave digital filter, sliding DFT, sliding Goertzel, and moving DFT. There has also been considered a modified classical control circuit based on instantaneous power theory. The described APF control circuit with filter banks allows the selection of compensated harmonics or dumping of selected resonance in the power line.

Discussion of problems of the active power filter dynamics has been presented. For predictable nonlinear loads which vary slowly compared to line voltage period (rectifiers, motors etc.), it is easier to predict current changes. For such loads, by using a shunt active power filter with a predictive (noncausal) algorithm, it is possible to decrease harmonic contents. This modification for an IPT control algorithm is very simple and additional computational workload is very small. Therefore, it can be very easy to implement it in an existing APF digital control circuit based on a digital signal processor, microcontroller, or programmable digital circuit (FPGA, CPLD, etc.), thereby improving the quality of harmonic compensation. Effective operation of the APF with current predictor circuit has been confirmed by experimental tests. The considered current prediction circuit may also be useful for other APF control algorithms. Also current prediction circuits may be applied in other power electronics devices, such as serial APF, power conditioners, high quality AC sources, etc.

For noise type nonlinear loads (such as in an arc furnace) where the load current changes are nonperiodic and stochastic, the author has proposed multirate APF with improved dynamic performance. The multirate APF is more complicated than classical APF, but it allows fast compensation for unpredictable changes in load current.

Using the proposed APFs with improved dynamic performance, it is possible to decrease harmonics contents of line current.

## References

1. Analog Devices (1994) AC vector processor AD2S100. Analog Devices Inc, Norwood
2. Akagi H, Kanazawa Y, Nabae A (1982) Principles and compensation effectiveness of a instantaneous reactive power compensator devices. In: Meeting of the power semiconductor converters researchers-IEE-Japan, SPC-82-16 (in Japanese)
3. Akagi H, Kanazawa Y, Nabae A (1983) Generalized theory of instantaneous reactive power and its applications. Trans IEE-Jpn 103(7):483–490
4. Akagi H, Kanazawa Y, Nabae A (1984) Instantaneous reactive power compensators comprising switching devices without energy storage components. IEEE Trans Ind Appl 1A 20(3):625–630
5. Akagi H (1996) New trends in active filters for power conditioning. IEEE Trans Ind Appl 32(6):1312–1322
6. Akagi H, Watanabe EH, Aredes M (2007) Instantaneous power theory and applications to power conditioning. Wiley, New York
7. Aredes M (1996) Active power line conditioners. PhD thesis, Technische Universitat Berlin, Berlin
8. Arriens HL (2006) (L)WDF Toolbox for MATLAB reference guide. Technical report, Delft University of Technology, WDF Toolbox RG v1 0.pdf
9. Arriens HL (2006) (L)WDF Toolbox for MATLAB, user's guide. Technical report, Delft University of Technology, WDF Toolbox UG v1 0.pdf
10. Asiminoaei L, Blaabjerg F, Hansen S (2007) Detection is key: harmonic detection methods for active power filter applications. IEEE Ind Appl Mag 13(4):22–33
11. Benysek G, Pasko M (eds) (2012) Power theories for improved power quality. Springer, London
12. Bossche AV, Valchev VC (2005) Inductors and transformers for power electronics. CRC Press, Boca Raton
13. Buso S, Mattavelli P (2006) Digital control in power electronics. Morgan & Claypool, Princeton
14. Czarnecki LS (2005) Powers in electrical circuits with nonsinusoidal voltages and currents. Publishing Office of the Warsaw University of Technology, Poland
15. Czarnecki LS (1984) Interpretation, identification and modification of the energy properties of single-phase circuits with nonsinusoidal waveforms. Silesian University of Technology, Gliwice (Elektryka 19)
16. Czarnecki LS (1987) What is wrong with the Budeanu concept of reactive and distortion powers and why is should be abandoned? IEEE Trans Instrum Meas 36(3):673–676
17. Fryze S (1966) Selected problems of basics of electrical engineering. PWN, Warszawa
18. Fryze S (1931) Active, reactive and apparent power in non-sinusoidal systems. Przegl Elektrotech (Electr Rev) 7:193–203
19. Fujielectric (2011) 2MBI159HH-120-50 high speed module 1200 V/150 A. Data sheet, Fujielectric
20. Ghosh A, Ledwich G (2002) Power quality enhancement using custom power devices. Kluwer Academic, Boston
21. Gyugyi L, Strycula EC (1976) Active AC power filters. In: Proceedings of the IEEE industry applications annual meeting, pp 529–535

22. Holmes DG, Lipo TA (2003) Pulse width modulation for power converters: principles and practice. IEEE, Piscataway
23. Jacobsen E, Lyons R (2003) The sliding DFT. IEEE Signal Process Mag 20(2):74–80
24. Jacobsen E, Lyons R (2004) An update to the sliding DFT. IEEE Signal Process Mag 21:110–111
25. Kazimierkowski M, Malesani L (1998) Current control techniques for three-phase voltage-source converters: a survey. IEEE Trans Ind Electron 45(5):691–703
26. Kazmierkowski MP, Kishnan R, Blaabjerg F (2002) Control in power electronics. Academic, San Diego
27. Kim H, Blaabjerg F, Bak-Jensen B, Jaeho C (2002) Instantaneous power compensation in three-phase systems by using p-q-r theory. IEEE Trans Power Electron 17(5):701–710
28. Mariethoz S, Rufer A (2002) Open loop and closed loop spectral frequency active filtering. IEEE Trans Power Electron 17(4):564–573
29. Marks J, Green T (2002) Predictive transient-following control of shunt and series active power filter. IEEE Trans Power Electron 17(4):574–584
30. Mattavelli P (2001) A closed-loop selective harmonic compensation for active filters. IEEE Trans Ind Appl 37(1):81–89
31. Mitsubishi (2000) Mitsubishi intelligent power modules, PM300DSA120. Data sheet, Mitsubishi
32. Nakajima T, Masada E (1998) An active power filter with monitoring of harmonic spectrum. In: European conference on power electronics and applications EPE, Aachen
33. Pasko M, Maciazek M (2012) Principles of electrical power control. In: Benysek G, Pasko M (eds) Power theories for improved power quality. Springer, London, pp 13–47
34. Singh B, Al-Haddad K, Chandra A (1999) A review of active filters for power quality improvement. IEEE Trans Ind Electron 46(5):960–971
35. Sozanski (2003) Active power filter control algorithm using the sliding DFT. In: Workshop proceedings, Signal Processing 2003, Poznan, Poland, pp 69–73
36. Sozanski K (2004) Non-causal current predictor for active power filter. In: Conference proceedings: nineteenth annual IEEE applied power electronics conference and exhibition, APEC 2004, Anaheim, USA
37. Sozanski K (2004), Harmonic compensation using the sliding DFT algorithm. In: Conference proceedings, 35rd annual IEEE power electronics specialists conference, PESC 2004, Aachen, Germany
38. Sozanski K (2006) Harmonic compensation using the sliding DFT algorithm for three-phase active power filter. Electr Power Qual Utilization J 12(2):15–20
39. Sozanski K (2006) Sliding DFT control algorithm for three-phase active power filter. In: Conference proceedings, 21rd annual IEEE applied power electronics conference, APEC 2006, Dallas, Texas, USA
40. Sozanski K (2007) The shunt active power filter with better dynamic performance. In: Conference proceedings, PowerTech, 2007 conference, Lausanne, Switzerland
41. Sozanski K (2008) Improved shunt active power filters. Przegl Elektrotech (Electr Rev) 45(11):290–294
42. Sozanski K (2008) Shunt active power filter with improved dynamic performance. In: Conference proceedings: 13th international power electronics and motion control conference EPE-PEMC 2008, Poznan, Poland, pp 2018–2022
43. Sozanski K (2011) Control circuit for active power filter with an instantaneous reactive power control algorithm modification. Przegl Elektrotech (Electr Rev) 1:95–113
44. Sozanski K (2012) Realization of a digital control algorithm. In: Benysek G, Pasko M (eds) Power theories for improved power quality. Springer, London, pp 117–168
45. Sozanski K, Strzelecki R, Kempski A (2002) Digital control circuit for active power filter with modified instantaneous reactive power control algorithm, In: Conference proceedings, IEEE 33rd annual IEEE power electronics specialists conference, PESC 2002, Cairns, Australia
46. Sozanski K, Fedyczak Z (2003) Active power filter control algorithm based on filter banks. In: Conference proceedings, Bologna PowerTech: 2003 IEEE Bologna, Italy

47. Sozanski K, Fedyczak Z, (2003) A filter bank solution for active power filter control algorithms. In: Conference proceedings, 2003 IEEE 34th annual power electronics specialists conference: PESC '03, Acapulco, Mexico
48. Strzelecki R, Fedyczak Z, Sozanski K, Rusinski J (2000) Active power filter EFA1. Technical report, Instytut Elektrotechniki Przemyslowej, Politechnika Zielonogorska (in Polish)
49. Strzelecki R, Sozanski K (1996) Control circuit with digital signal processor for hybrid active power filter. In: Conference proceedings of SENE 1996, sterowanie w energoelektronce i napedzie elektrycznym (in Polish)
50. Instruments Texas (2008) TMS320F28335/28334/28332, TMS320F28235/28234/28232 digital signal controllers (DSCs). Data manual, Texas Instruments Inc
51. Texas Instruments (2010) C2000 teaching materials, tutorials and applications. SSQC019, Texas Instruments Inc
52. Watanabe S, Boyagoda P, Iwamoto H, Nakaoka M, Takanoet H (1999) Power conversion PWM amplifier with two paralleled four quadrant chopper for MRI gradient coil magnetic field current tracking implementation. In: Conference proceedings, 30th annual IEEE power electronics specialists conference, PESC, 1999, Charleston, South Carolina, USA
53. Wojciechowski D, Strzelecki R (2007) Sensorless predictive control of three-phase parallel active filter. In: Conference proceedings, AFRICON 2007, Windhoek

# Chapter 5
# Digital Signal Processing Circuits for Digital Class D Power Amplifiers

## 5.1 Introduction

Class D power amplifiers are very similar to typical power inverters. Often, whether the circuit is called a class D power amplifier or not is determined by output power, application, and precision of operation. The word 'digital' in digital class D power amplifier indicates that the input signal is in digital form. Output power of such amplifiers ranges from several watts to several kilowatts. Typical applications of digital class D power amplifiers include:

- high precision DC drives,
- magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) coils,
- high efficiency and high quality audio power amplifiers,
- power signal sources,
- high precision positioning systems.

The most common use of the class D power amplifier is in amplification of audio signal. Discussion of class D audio power amplifiers is presented below in this chapter. Class D audio power amplifiers are typically around 90 % efficient at rated power, versus 65–70 % for conventional class B or class AB audio amplifiers. Such high efficiency means, importantly, that the amplifiers can get by with much smaller heat sinks to carry away the energy they waste. This efficiency is most important for battery powered portable devices such as MP3 players, smartphones, laptops, tablets etc. Such devices can run much longer on a battery charge or can be powered by smaller, lighter batteries.

In the digital class D audio amplifier the dynamics reaches 120 dB, which results in high requirements for the algorithm used and its digital realization. The author has proposed a modulator with noise shaping circuit for the class D amplifier [59, 63] for increasing this D/A conversion quality. In the digital class D amplifier signal oversampling is required; therefore, considered also are signal interpolators. The interpolators allow for an increased sampling frequency whilst maintaining substantial separation of signal from noise. The author also presents an original analog

K. Sozański, *Digital Signal Processing in Power Electronics Control Circuits*, Power Systems, DOI: 10.1007/978-1-4471-5267-5_5,

power supply voltage fluctuation compensation circuit for the open loop digital class D amplifier [59, 63]. The class D amplifier with digital click modulation is considered as well [61]. Finally, two-way and three-way loudspeaker systems, designed by the author, are presented, for which a signal from input to output is digitally processed [60, 61].

## 5.2 Digital Class D Power Amplifier Circuits

Figure 5.1 shows full bridge and half bridge basic class D power amplifier circuits. The half bridge circuit has only two switches, but requires dual voltage and does not allow for the implementation of all modes of modulation. The advantage of the half bridge circuit is that the load is connected to ground. The bridge circuit is more complicated as it needs four switches. In this circuit the load is float, which is unacceptable in some applications. Further discussion of the amplifiers about can be found in [42, 47]. During the operation of digital class D power amplifiers errors will occur that reduce their accuracy. Common sources of errors in the digital class D power amplifier are shown in Fig. 5.2. The most important error sources include:

- modulation,
- supply voltage,
- switching, and
- nonidealities of output filter.

Detailed sources of errors are described in Table 5.1. Digital PWM as opposed to analog PWM has a finite resolution determined by the number of bits of digital counters. Therefore, digital quantization error occurs in the system. Another source of error is modulator clock jitter. These issues are discussed in Chap. 2. A further problem in class D amplifiers is bus pumping phenomena, this occurs in the half

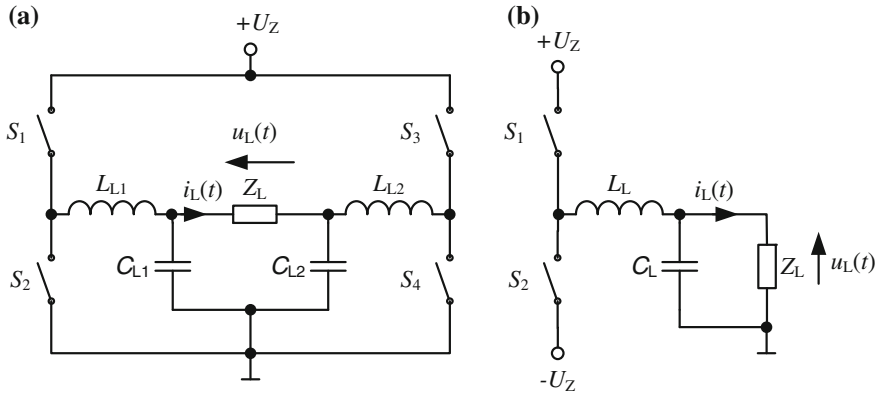



**Fig. 5.1** Diagram of class D power amplifier circuits: **a** full bridge, **b** half bridge

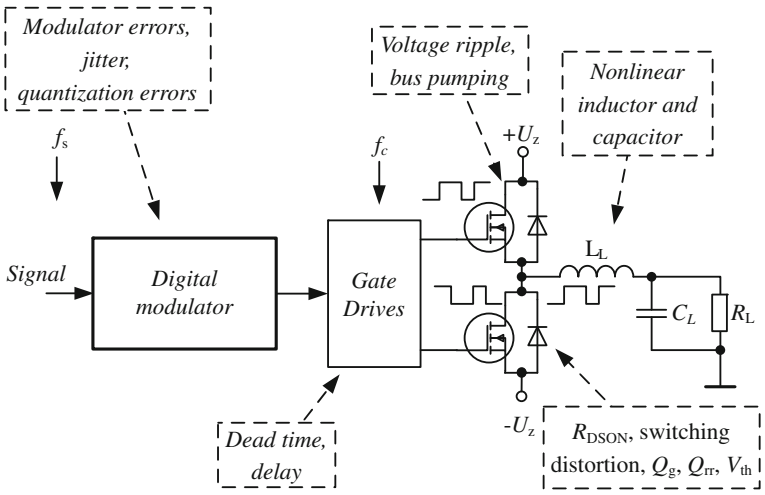



**Fig. 5.2** Common sources of errors in the digital class D power amplifier

bridge topology. In a class D amplifier output voltage is directly proportional to the bus voltage. Therefore, voltage fluctuation creates distortion. Since the energy flowing in the Class D switching stage is bi-directional, there is a period where the Class D amplifier feeds energy back to the power supply. Most of the energy flowing back to the supply is from the energy stored in the inductors in the output low-pass filter. Generally, the power supply has no ability to absorb the energy coming back from the load. So the bus voltage is pumped up, creating voltage fluctuations. The voltage pumping phenomenon occurs mostly at low frequencies, i.e. below 100 Hz.

In order to prevent the condition in which two transistors in one branch are switched on dead time is introduced. This is the time interval in which the control pulses of the transistors are in the off-state. Dead time is necessary to avoid transistor shoot-through and the risk of shorting out the power supply and damaging the transistors. A simplified switching cycle illustration of class D power amplifier is depicted in Fig. 5.3. Figure. 5.4 depicts an illustration of dead time effect in the power class D amplifier. Illustrated are sinusoidal signal (dashed line) and modulated signal (solid line). For a low level of input signal there is no influence of dead time, but for larger values of signal the output signal is distorted. So the dead time should be as small as possible. An example of discussion of dead time influence on the output signal *THD* ratio can be found in [40].

## 5.3 Modulators for Digital Class D Power Amplifiers

The background of PWM modulators is widely described in the literature, in particular [29] is well recommended. However, the specific problems of modulators for audio class D amplifiers are described, among others, by [7, 27, 28, 39, 42, 46, 63].

**Table 5.1** Common sources of errors in the digital class D power amplifier

| Source of error | Type of error |
|---|---|
| Digital modulator | |
| | • Quantization, |
| | • Counter clock jitter, |
| | • Modulation components in signal band. |
| Gate drivers | |
| | • Dead time, |
| | • Delay, |
| | • Timing errors added by the gate drivers, |
| | • For a small value of load current trigger pulses will be visible in it, |
| Supply voltage | |
| | • Voltage ripple, |
| | • Voltage pumping (for half bridge), |
| | • Voltage source impedance. |
| Switches—MOSFETs | |
| | • Switching-on resistance, |
| | • Current dependent delays of the switching transitions, |
| | • Embedded diode characteristics, especially high value of diode reverse recovery charge $Q_{rr}$, |
| | • Finite switching speed, high value of total gate charge $Q_g$, |
| | • Parasitic components that cause ringing on transient edges and generate EMI, |
| | • Amplitude errors resulting from the nonlinear on-state resistance of the MOSFET switches, |
| | • PCB layout is crucial for both quality of the design and reduction of EMI. |
| LC output filter | |
| | • Nonidealities of inductor, |
| | • Nonidealities of capacitor. |

The simplified block diagrams of two versions of the digital pulse width modulator (DPWM) are depicted in Fig. 5.5. The first one has an asynchronous clock signal $f_h$ generator and in the second one the clock signal frequency is an integer multiple of the input signal sampling ratio. The second one is better, and the advantages of the synchronous version are described in Chap. 2.

The output time pulse $w(kT_h)$ is generated by a digital comparator connected to a period counter according to input digital signal $x(nT_s)$. If the digital input signal has a bigger value than the current value in the period counter then the output signal $w(kT_h)$ is high, otherwise it is low. The period counter clock frequency can be expressed as

$$f_h = f_c N_h, \tag{5.1}$$

where: $N_h$—number of period counter states, or for number of states of period counter that are a power of two

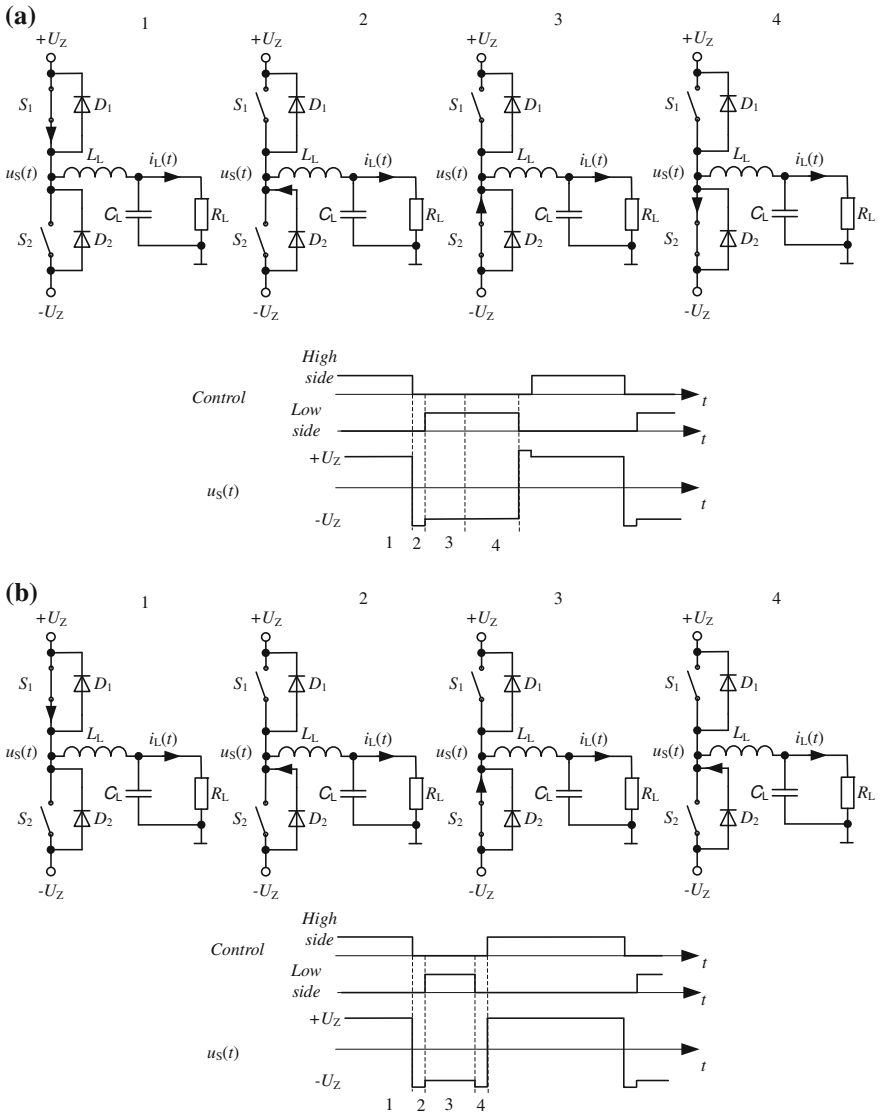



**Fig. 5.3** Simplified cycle illustration of class D power amplifier: **a** for a small signal, **b** for a large signal

$$f_h = f_c 2^b, \tag{5.2}$$

where: $b$—number of bit. For the case in consideration, for typical audio sampling ratio $f_s = 44.1$ kHz and resolution $b = 16$ bit, the value of the period counter clock frequency is $f_h \approx 2.89$ GHz and time resolution $T_h = 1/f_h \approx 350$ ps. This is too high even for modern standard integrated circuits. Therefore, the digital input signal

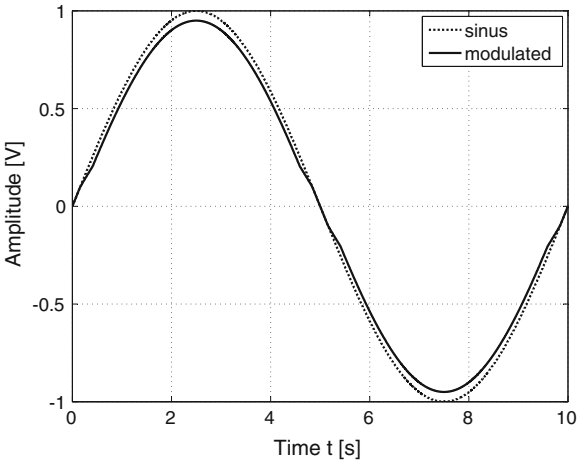



**Fig. 5.4** Class D power amplifier dead time effect illustration

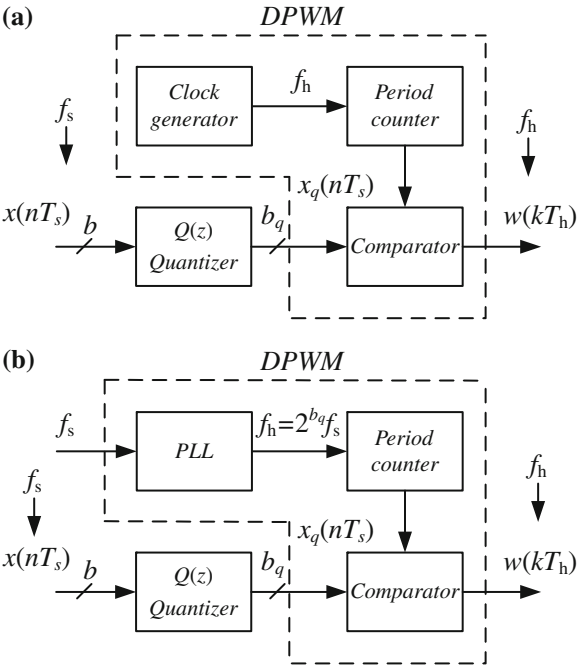



**Fig. 5.5** Simplified block diagram of DPWM: **a** asynchronous, **b** synchronous

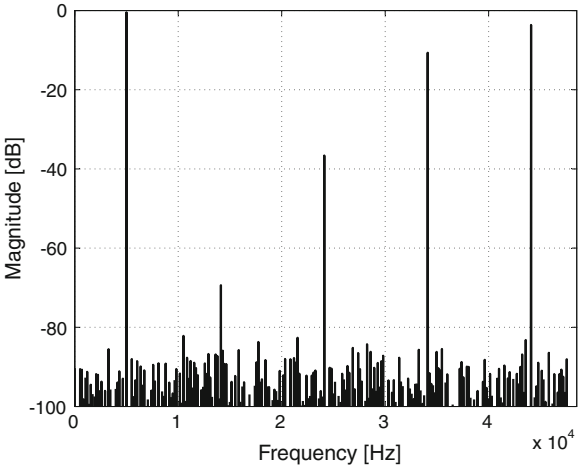



**Fig. 5.6** NPWM signal spectrum, for $f = 5$ kHz, $f_c = 44100$ Hz, $b = 12$ bit

should be quantized. For a given maximum period the counter clock frequency bit rate can be calculated

$$b = \text{floor}\left(\frac{\log\left(\frac{f_h}{f_c}\right)}{\log 2}\right). \tag{5.3}$$

For modern integrated circuits a value of counter clock frequency $f_h = 200$ MHz is usual, with transistor switching frequency $f_c = 44100$ Hz, hence the number of bits for the above data is around $b = 12$ bit.

A spectrum segment of digital, naturally sampled (NPWM) simulation for $f_c = f_s = 44100$ Hz, and input signal frequency $f = 5$ kHz and digital PWM resolution $b = 12$ bit, is presented in Fig. 5.6. The quantization noise level of signal from Fig. 5.6 is around 67 dB for typical audio band. In the spectrum segment there are: signal, switching frequency and intermodulation components: $f$, $f_c$, $f_c \pm 2f$, $f_c \pm 4f$, $f_c \pm 6f$ .... The component $f_c - 6f = 14100$ Hz is in audio band. This is the main disadvantage of the classical PWM modulation, i.e., the transistor switching frequency $f_c$ must be much higher than the end of the audio band. So oversampled input signal should be used. In that case, the transistor switching frequency is increased $R$ times. For increasing input signal sampling rate a signal interpolator should be applied. A typical value of oversampling ratio $R$ for digital class D audio power amplifier is $R = 8$. The transistor switching frequency is calculated by the equation

$$f_c = Rf_s. \tag{5.4}$$

For typical values of signal sampling rate $f_s = 44100\,\text{Hz}$ and $R = 8$, the transistor switching frequency is equal to $f_c = 352.8\,\text{kHz}$. This value of switching frequency is used by the digital class D audio power amplifier family PruePathTM from Texas Instruments Inc. [70] and it is a compromise value between transistor power losses and quality of output signal.

### 5.3.1 Oversampled Pulse Width Modulator

Principles of quantization noise shaping circuits are presented in Chap. 2. This technique can be successfully applied to the output modulator of the class D amplifier [59, 63]. The noise shaping circuit besides quantization noise shaping can also compensate for D/A converter quantization errors. Additionally known systematic errors can be taken into account in the transfer function of quantization block $Q(z)$. For example, in a typical D/A converter the weight of individual bits can be digitally corrected. More extensive analysis of the problem is presented in the works of Carley et al. [10] and in [1, 11, 25, 33, 35]. The author's second-order noise shaping circuit applied to the correction of errors introduced by the pulse amplifier [63] is shown in Fig. 5.7. In this circuit, the transfer function of $Q(z)$ can be easily modified to cancel the influence of the transistor dead time $t_D$ and minimum transistors switching time $t_{on(min)}$. Assuming that the amplitude of the input signal $y(k)$ is in the range $-1$ to 1 and $b$-bit of the modulator, the output signal is as follows:

$$y_q(k) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } |N_n/2y(k)| - N_D < N_{min} \\ N_h/2 & \text{for } N_q/2y(k) - Y_D > N_q/2 \\ -N_h/2 & \text{for } N_h/2y(k) + N_D < -N_h/2 \\ \text{int}(N_h/2y(k)) - N_D & \text{for } N_{min} \le N_h/2y(k) \le N_h/2 \\ \text{int}(N_h/2y(k)) + N_D & \text{for } -N_{min} \ge N_h/2y(k) \ge -N_h/2 \end{cases} \tag{5.5}$$

where: $N_{min}$—represents the transistor minimum switch on time $t_{on(min)}$, $N_D$—represents the transistors dead time $t_D$.

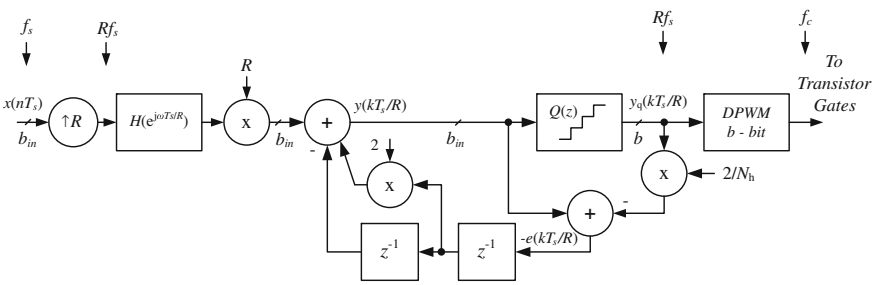



**Fig. 5.7** Noise shaping circuit for class D power amplifier

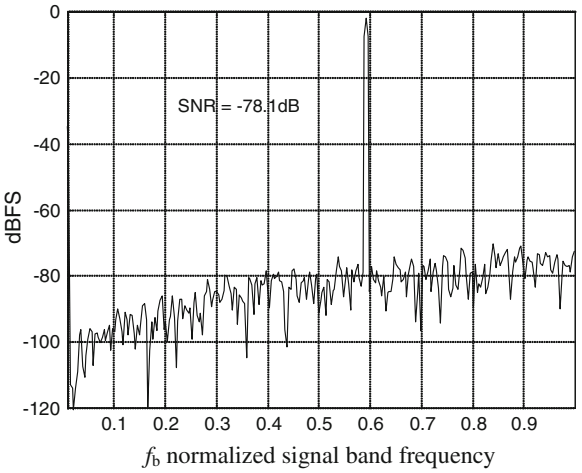



**Fig. 5.8** Spectrum of class D with noise shaping circuit output voltage

In the circuit $Q(z)$, $b_{in}$-bit resolution of the input signal $y(k)$ is reduced to $b$-bit resolution of the output signal $y_q(k)$. This circuit was successfully introduced to a digital class D audio power amplifier [59, 63]. Figure 5.8 shows the spectrum of the amplifier output voltage. The diagram shows the falling curve of quantization noise, which is the effect of the noise shaping circuit. In this case *SNR* reached 78 dB.

In the author's opinion, the presented modulator with noise shaping circuit and with error correction can be employed in the traditional power inverters of other power electronics circuits, e.g., APF, uninterruptible power supply (UPS) etc. The additional workload of the processor for a noise shaping circuit is very small, so it can also be easily implemented in the existing control circuits.

## 5.4 Basic Topologies of Control Circuits for Digital Class D Power Amplifiers

This section describes selected basic topologies of control circuits for digital class D power amplifiers. Of course, the given topologies do not cover all possible ones, but were selected only as the most important.

### *5.4.1 Open Loop Amplifiers*

The requirements of an open loop (without feedback) (Fig. 5.9) digital class D amplifier power supply are stricter than a power supply for a classical class B amplifier. Parameters such as power voltage ripple or output impedance became important for this application.

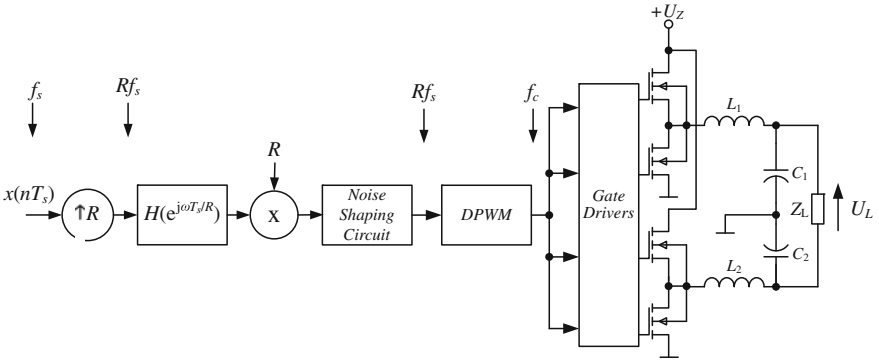



**Fig. 5.9** Open loop class D power with noise shaping circuit

For the simplified case of average output voltage of a class D amplifier: Assuming a number of simplifications, for a class D amplifier the average output voltage $U_{L(av)}$ depends linearly on the PWM duty ratio $D$, and the reference supply voltage of amplifier $U_{Zref}$ can be written as

$$U_{L(av)} = DU_{Zref}. \tag{5.6}$$

Figure 5.10 shows a simplified model of PWM. It shows that any ripple voltage is transferred by duty ratio $D$ to the output amplifier. Therefore, the open loop amplifier needs to be powered by a high quality regulated voltage source. In the case of the use of a nonstabilized power source, an additional duty ratio correction should be used. To determine the coefficient $D$ there is assumed a reference supply voltage value $U_{Zref}$. However, if the value of the voltage is different from the reference value an error is created. To achieve the same value of output voltage $U_{L(av)}$ a different value of duty ratio should be used

$$U_{L(av)} = D_c U_Z. \tag{5.7}$$

So for the same output voltage $U_{L(\mathrm{av})}$ using Eqs. (5.6 and 5.7), it is possible to calculate the duty ratio $D_c$

$$DU_{Zref} = D_c U_Z, \tag{5.8}$$

$$D_c = D\frac{U_{Zref}}{U_Z}. \tag{5.9}$$

Discussions on power supply parameters for open loop class D amplifier appear in [8, 9, 38]. The open loop digital class D power amplifier needs a power supply source with very low impedance for the whole amplifier frequency range, for audio application this is 20 kHz! The output signal THD ratio is dependent on the supply source impedance $Z_Z$ as follows [9]

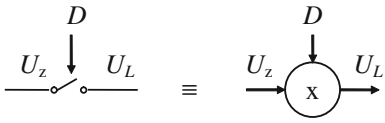



**Fig. 5.10** Simplified model of PWM

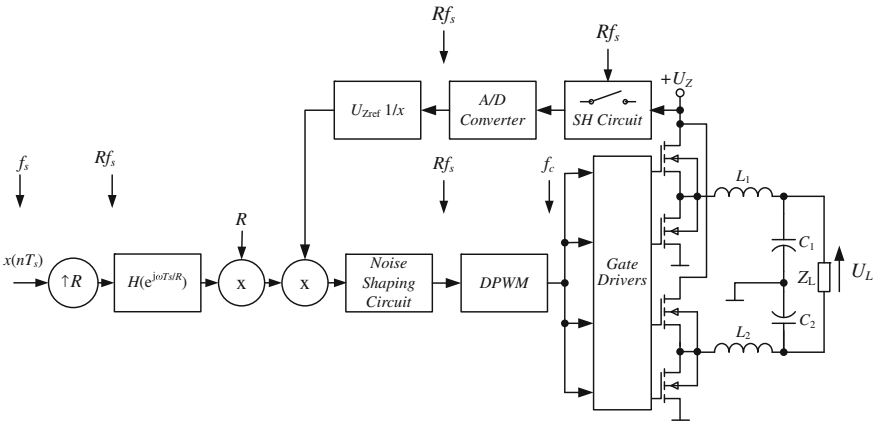



**Fig. 5.11** Class D power with noise shaping circuit and digital feedback for supply voltage

$$THD = \frac{Z_Z M^2}{4Z_L}, \tag{5.10}$$

where: $M$—is maximum modulation factor.

### 5.4.2 Amplifiers with Digital Feedback for Supply Voltage

Figure 5.11 shows a class D power with noise shaping circuit and digital feedback for supply voltage correction. In this circuit for measurement of supply voltage, a high resolution A/D converter is used. Digital representation of supply voltage is used for the calculation of duty ratio according to Eq. (5.9).

### 5.4.3 Amplifiers with Analog Feedback for Output Pulses

Digital correction of output pulses needs a high speed and high quality successive approximation A/D converter with sample and hold circuit on the front. Using an analog circuit, it is possible to compensate the duty ratio according to the voltage supply fluctuation and amplitude errors resulting from the nonlinear on-state resistance of the MOSFET switches. Figure 5.12 shows this type of circuit. In this circuit,

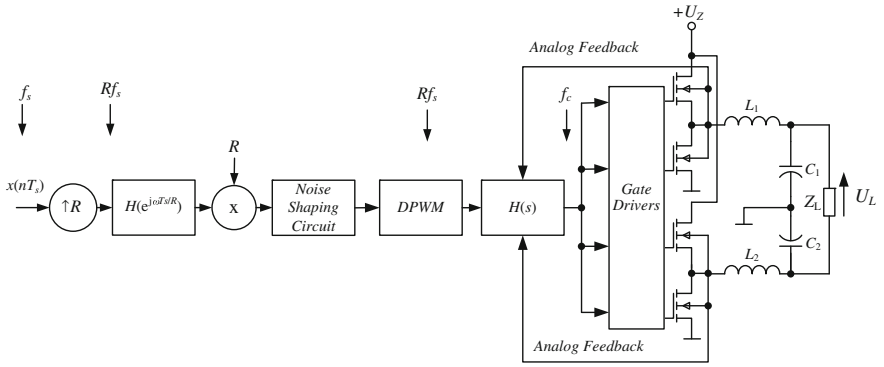



**Fig. 5.12** Class D power with noise shaping circuit and analog feedback for output pulses

analog feedback signals are taken directly from the transistor, so it can also compensate the influence of transistor switching distortions. For this purpose, an analog compensation circuit is proposed by the author [63]. A simplified diagram of such a compensation circuit is shown in Fig. 5.13. The circuit consists in two sets of integrators, comparators and switches: In each set, an integrated input signal $D_{in}(n)$ and a second one controlled by power transistors. Input signal is a square wave with duty ratio $D_{in}(n)$ and the output signal is a square wave with duty ratio $D_{out}(n)$. For all components throughout the switching period $T_c$, it is possible to calculate $D_{out}(n)$ from the equation

$$D_{out}(n) = \frac{U_{ref2}}{U_{p1P}(n)} D_{in}(n) - (1 - D_{in}(n)) \frac{U_{ref1}}{U_{p1P}(n)} + (1 - D_{out}(n-1)) \frac{U_{p1N}(n-1)}{U_{p1P}(n)}, \tag{5.11}$$

where: $U_{ref1}$, $U_{ref2}$—reference voltages, $U_{p1P}$—output voltage when transistor $Q_1$ is switched on, $U_{p1N}$—output voltage when transistor $Q_2$ is switched on.

A simplified small signal model of the compensation circuit and its ripple rejections for different duty ratios $D$ is shown in Fig. 5.14. Its small signal transfer function is

$$Y(s) = DU_z(s)\left(\frac{\tau s}{1 + \tau s}\right), \tag{5.12}$$

where: $\tau$—integrator time constant.

Figure 5.15 shows supply voltage ripple rejections of the compensation circuit for different duty ratios $D$.

Amplifiers with analog feedback for output pulses are employed in some IC commercial solutions. For example, at the end of the 2000s Texas Instruments introduced power IC, TAS5631 300 W stereo PurePathTM digital-input power stage [73].

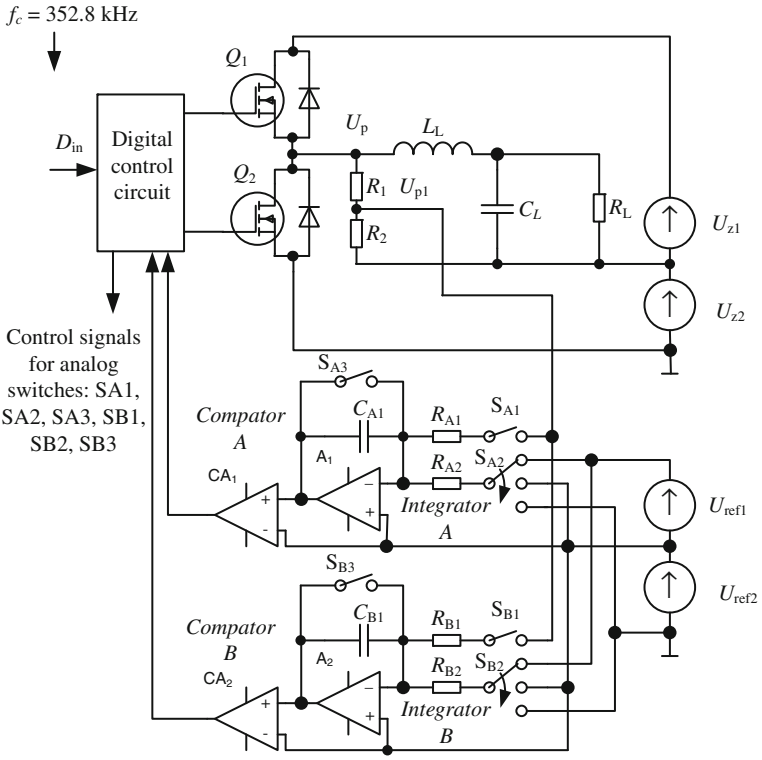
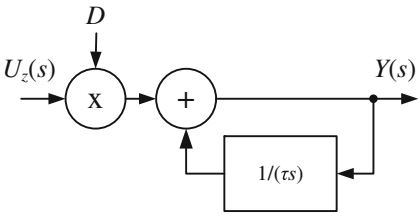



**Fig. 5.13** Simplified diagram of analog compensation circuit

**Fig. 5.14** Small signal model of analog compensation circuit




Analog compensation provides an 80 dB power supply rejection ratio (PSRR), similar to that in an analog class B power amplifier. Therefore, for such amplifier a simple power supplier can be used.

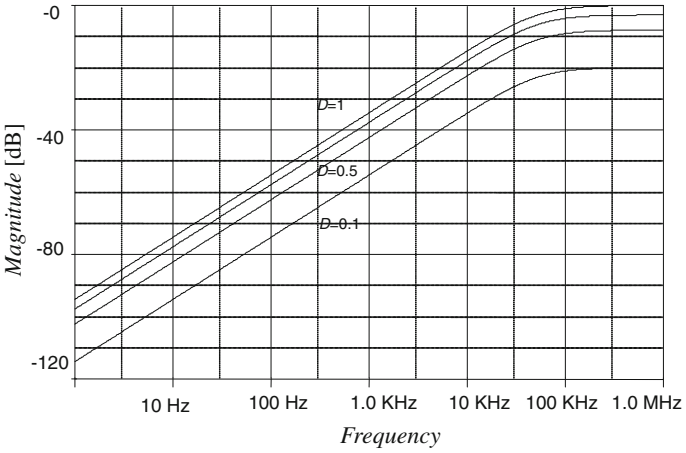



**Fig. 5.15** Ripple rejections for different duty ratios $D$

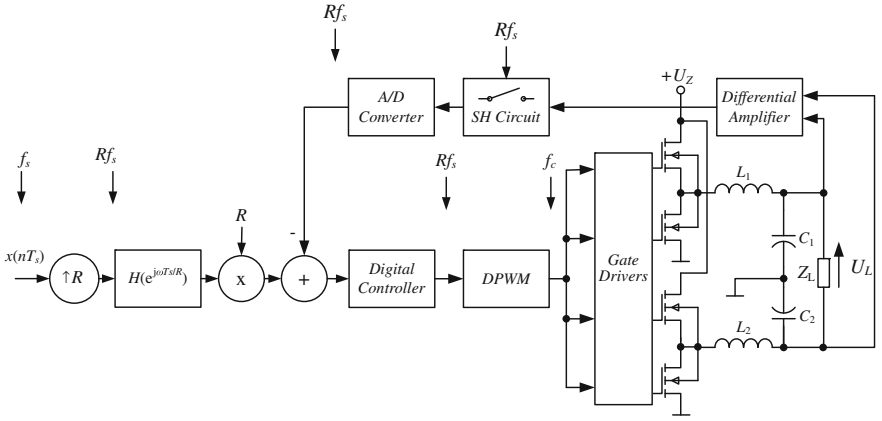



**Fig. 5.16** Class D power with digital feedback

## *5.4.4 Amplifiers with Digital Feedback*

One of the best solutions for a class D power amplifier is digital feedback. Figure 5.16 shows this type of power class D power amplifier. The output voltage $U_L$ throughout the differential amplifier is converted by a high precision fast A/D converter. The quality of the amplifier depends on the A/D converter parameters. The signal from the A/D converter is then used as a feedback signal for the digital controller. These circuits are not frequently reported in the literature; however, they include the following [16, 41].

Amplifiers with digital feedback have a number of fundamental advantages. For example in the open loop solution it is not possible to decrease output impedance.

At signal frequency 20 kHz, a typical 22 μH output inductor has an impedance of 2.8 Ω, and a 1 μF capacitor's impedance equals 8 Ω at 20 kHz. It is obvious that different loads have a significant impact on frequency response. The only remedy is to control the output voltage using a correctly designed feedback loop, where even at 20 kHz an output impedance below tens of milliohms is achieved, similar to that of a class B analog amplifier. Another advantage of amplifiers with digital feedback is the reduction of distortion products arising from saturation in the output inductors. Of course, in such amplifiers it is possible to compensate the impact of variations in the power supply voltage, errors resulting from the nonlinear on-state resistance of the MOSFET switches, current dependent overshoot and current dependent delays of the switching transitions. So in these circuits it is possible to compensate most amplifier errors, but design of the digital controller is very difficult. However, the author believes after eliminating the problems associated with stability, jitter, etc. this solution will be widely used. In the case of audio applications there will be the most difficult challenge. In this case, it should be a single chip containing the high resolution PWM, 18-bit successive approximation A/D converter, digital PLL, DSP, and digital audio receiver input signal.

## 5.5 Supply Units for Class D Power Amplifiers

The next solution is to use a power supply with low output impedance and very low ripple amplitude. Examples of such are shown in [8, 72]. As has already been said, the quality of the amplifier operating in open loop directly depends on the quality of the supply voltage.

The author has developed a high quality power supply unit. It is controlled by a digital controller realized using digital signal processor TMS320F2835 [69, 71]. In the circuit, a 12-bit A/D converter built in TMS320F2835 is used. The simplified circuit of the power supply unit is depicted in Fig. 5.17. The A/D converter resolution is insufficient; therefore, feedback error is calculated by an additional analog circuit. Hence, the A/D converter converts only feedback error $e_W(t)$ and thus the resolution is sufficient. In the next stage, the error signal is processed by a digital PID controller. Signal $u(n)$ controls a high resolution PWM circuit. The PWM output impulses control transistors $Q_1$ and $Q_2$ of the DC/DC synchronous buck converter. The converter produces from a 65 V input voltage a lower output regulated voltage, with the voltage range being 0–50 V. The output current range is 0–10 A. All digital circuits are realized using digital signal processor TMS320F2835. The feedback error analog signal $e_W(t)$ is calculated thus:

$$e_W(t) = U_{off}\frac{R_3}{R_1}(k_d U(z) - U_{off}) + \frac{R_3}{R_1}(U_{ref} - U_{off}), \tag{5.13}$$

where: $\tau$—integrator time constant and

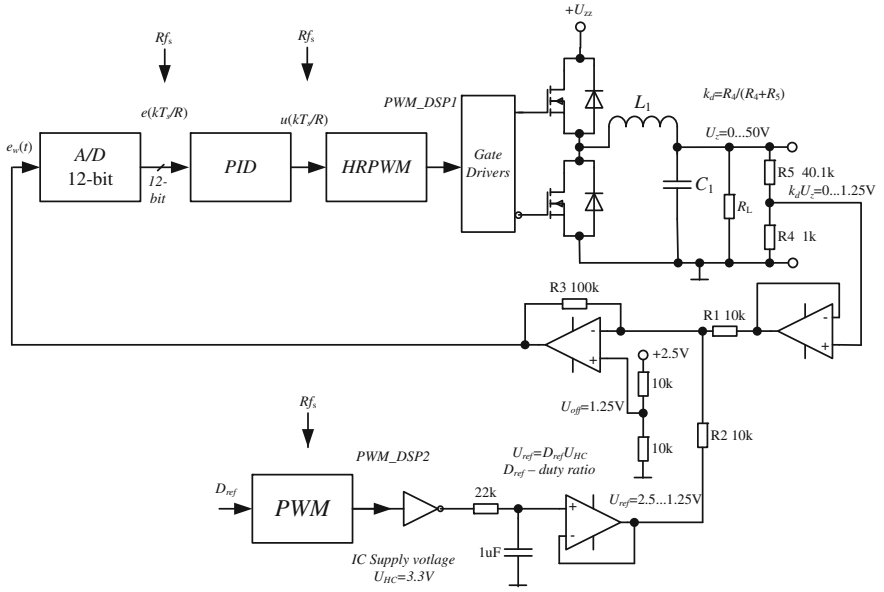



**Fig. 5.17** Supply unit for class D power amplifier

$$k_d = \frac{R_4}{R_4 + R_5}. \tag{5.14}$$

The controller reference voltage $U_{ref}$ is

$$U_{ref} = 2U_{off} - k_d U_z. \tag{5.15}$$

The supply unit reference voltage is generated by an additional circuit with PWM, and the duty ratio:

$$D_{ref} = \frac{U_{ref}}{U_H C}. \tag{5.16}$$

where: $U_H C$—supply voltage of digital IC 74HC14. The feedback error signal for digital proportional-integral-derivative (PID) controller is:

$$e(t) = -(e_W(t) - U_{off}) = -e_W(t) + U_{off}. \tag{5.17}$$

Figure 5.18 shows author's design of the power stages of a $2 \times 100$ W TAS5121 [66] digital stereo amplifier with the supply unit. All are controlled by TMS320F2835 DSC.

For laboratory purposes, the author has built a hybrid switching mode and linear supply unit for a $2 \times 316$ W class D audio power amplifier. The supply unit consists in a high quality switching mode power supply which transfers power from mains power

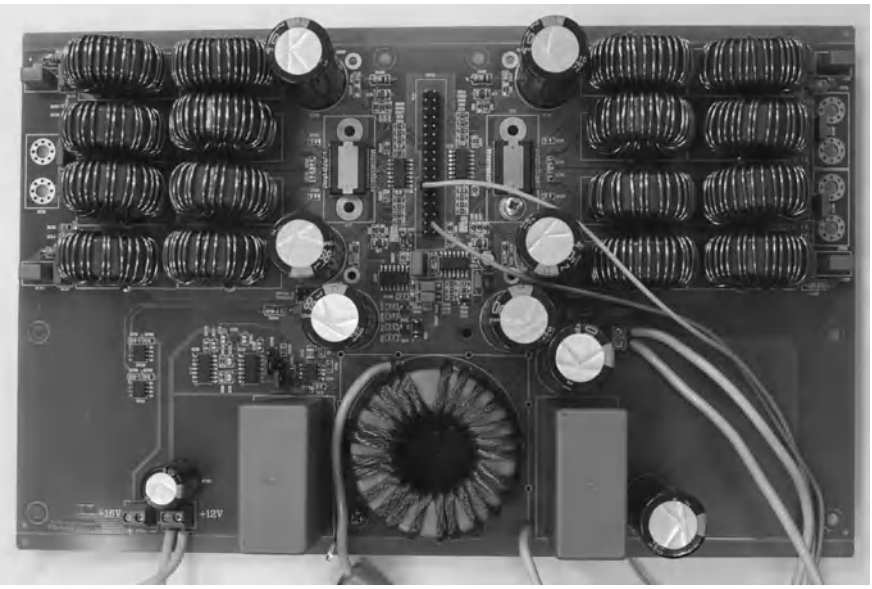


**Fig. 5.18** Power stages of 2 × 100 W digital stereo amplifier with the supply unit

to DC voltage 60 V/20 A with low ripple. Then voltage is controlled by a linear supply unit to an output voltage of 0–50 V. Of course this solution is inefficient, but it provides a high quality supply voltage for a class D audio power amplifier. The amplifier was built using TAS5518-5261K2EVM evaluation module [67]. Figure 5.19 shows the amplifier.

## 5.6 Click Modulation

Click modulation is a coding technique developed in the 1980s by Logan [37] to retrieve information encoded by the zero crossings of certain bipolar signals. Using click modulation, it is possible to remove modulation components from the signal band to the high frequency band. Therefore, the demodulation process can be easily performed by a low order low-pass LC filter. Click modulation is also called zero position coding (ZePoC). The block diagram of the analog click modulation algorithm is shown in Fig. 5.20. Given a band-limited passband such as signal $f(t)$ with spectral content confined to $(f_L \ldots f_H)$, where $0 < f_L < f_H < \infty$, the signal $f(t)$ has a zero value DC component. Input signal is transformed to analytic signal $f_A(t)$ by Hilbert transform: the analytic signal

$$f_A(t) = f(t) + \mathrm{j}\hat{f}(t), \tag{5.18}$$

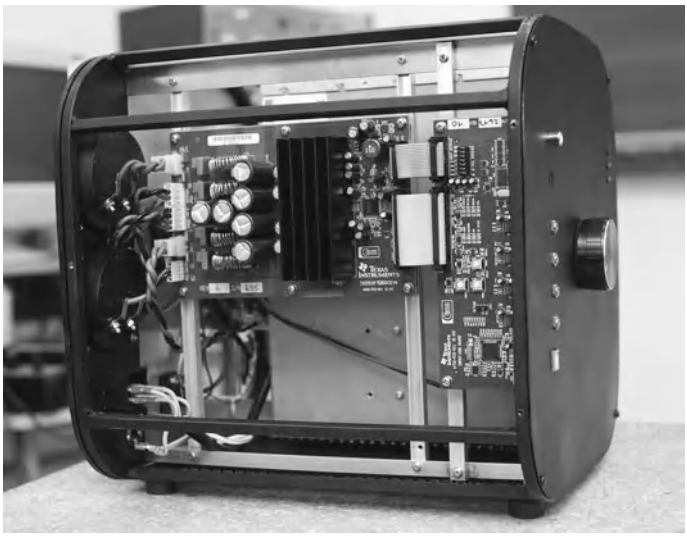


**Fig. 5.19** The 2 × 316 W digital stereo amplifier with the hybrid supply unit

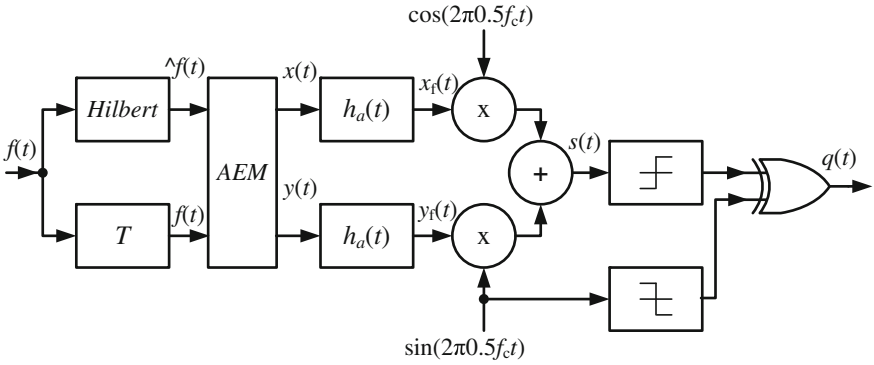



**Fig. 5.20** Block diagram of analog click modulation algorithm

where

$$\hat{f}(t) = f(t) * \frac{1}{\pi t}, \tag{5.19}$$

symbol "*" represents convolution in time domain. In the next stage, analytic signal is converted through an analytic exponential modulator (AEM):

$$z(t) = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{j}f_A(t)} = \mathrm{e}^{\hat{f}(t)-\mathrm{j}f(t)}, \tag{5.20}$$

where

$$z(t) = x(t) + \mathrm{j}y(t), \tag{5.21}$$

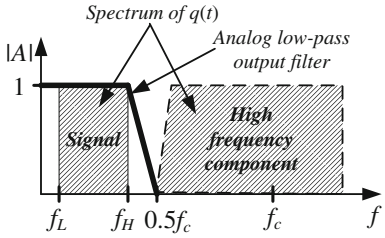



**Fig. 5.21** Spectrum of click modulator output signal $q(t)$ and analog output low-pass LC filter frequency response

and

$$x(t) = \mathrm{e}^{\hat{f}(t)} \cos(f(t)), \quad y(t) = -\mathrm{e}^{\hat{f}(t)} \sin(f(t)). \tag{5.22}$$

The signal $z(t)$ is also analytic. In the following stage, it is filtered by the low-pass filter $h_a(t)$. Discussion of the filter parameter is available in [45, 65, 79]. The real value of signal $s(t)$ defined by

$$\begin{aligned} s(t) &= \mathrm{Re}\{z(t)\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{j}2\pi f_c t}\} \\ &= x(t)\cos(2\pi 0.5 f_c t) + y(t)\sin(2\pi 0.5 f_c t). \end{aligned} \tag{5.23}$$

Finally, the binary signal with separated baseband $q(t)$ is prepared from $s(t)$ by

$$q(t) = -\frac{\pi}{2}\{\mathrm{sgn}(s(t))\} \cdot \{\mathrm{sgn}(\sin(2\pi 0.5 f_c t))\}. \tag{5.24}$$

The spectrum of click modulator output signal $q(t)$ is shown in Fig. 5.21. The spectrum consists of two bands: signal band and high frequency modulation component band. The high frequency band is suppressed by output $LC$ filter.

## 5.7 Interpolators for High Quality Audio Signals

Because of the high dynamic range of audio signal (120 dB) designing an interpolator for audio applications is a big challenge. This section includes implementations of a single stage and a multistage interpolator for high quality audio signals.

As an illustrative example, a cascaded interpolator for a class-D power audio amplifier is used. Parameters chosen by the authors for this interpolator are: passband ripple $\delta_p < 0.1$ dB, oversampling ratio $R = 8$, passband 4–20000 Hz, signal-to-noise and distortion ratio $SINAD < 90$ dB.

First, there is presented a single stage interpolator based on IIR and FIR filters. Second, there is presented a multistage interpolator based on bireciprocal modified lattice wave digital filters. Then follows one based on two-path (polyphase) digital filters. The interpolators are implemented in a floating point digital signal processor SHARC. The results of these implementations are presented and compared.

**Table 5.2** Design parameters for single-stage interpolator and multistage interpolator

| Stage | $F_p$ (passband) | $F_z$ (stopband) | $\delta_p$ [dB] (passband riple) | $\delta_z$ [dB] (stopband riple) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Single stage | 0.0567 | 0.0683 | 0.1 | −90 |
| 1 | 0.2267 | 0.2732 | 0.033 | −90 |
| 2 | 0.1134 | 0.3866 | 0.033 | −90 |
| 3 | 0.0567 | 0.4433 | 0.033 | −90 |

The parameters for a single-stage interpolator and a multistage interpolator are shown in Table 5.2. In the multistage interpolator, it is possible to reduce requirements for stages two and three by means of the suppression introduced in the stopband by an output analog low-pass filter.

### *5.7.1 Single-Stage Interpolators*

The author has designed and implemented a single-stage interpolator with the parameters shown in Table 5.22 in a digital signal processor SHARC. The following types of interpolators have been analyzed:

- an interpolator with an elliptic filter IIR (Elip),
- interpolators with polyphase FIR filters: Parks-McClellan (PM), Kaiser window (Kaiser), least squares (LS), and constrained least squares (CLS).

Figure 5.22 shows the quantity of arithmetical operations necessary for a one sample interpolation (where $R = 8$). Interpolators with FIR filters have a polyphase structure

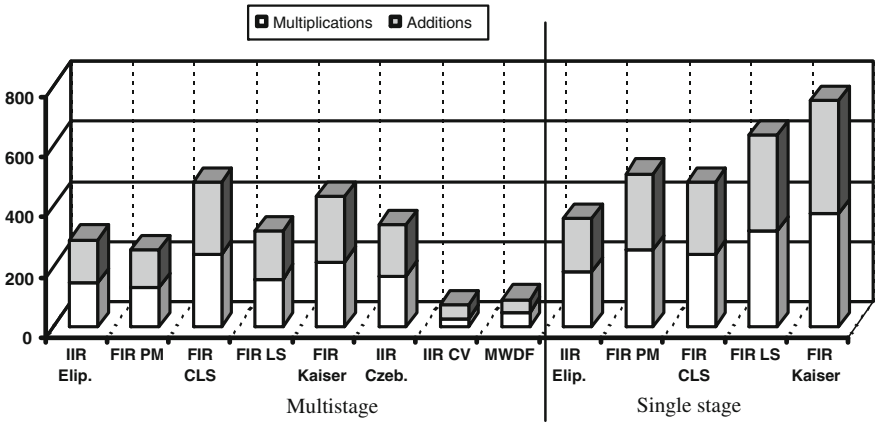



**Fig. 5.22** Quantity of arithmetical operations for interpolation of one sample (for R = 8), results of implementations of single-stage and multistage versions of the interpolators realized on SHARC DSP

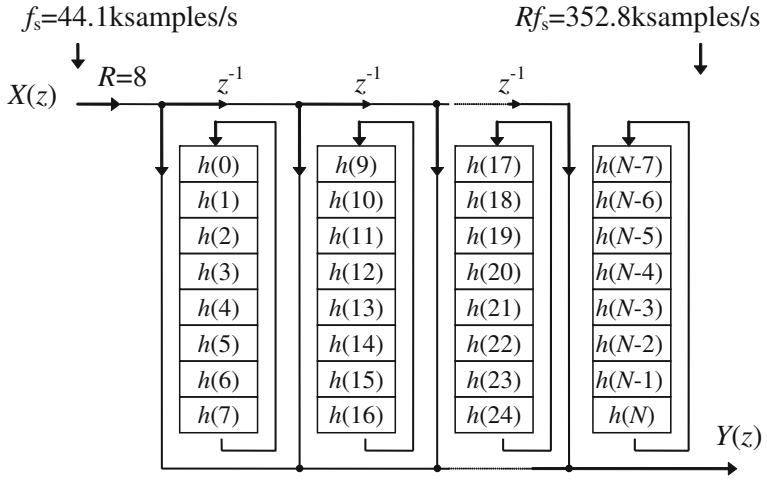



**Fig. 5.23** Polyphase interpolator with periodically time-varying coefficients for $R = 8$

with periodically time-varying coefficients (Fig. 5.23). From the filters analyzed, the IIR filters required the least number of arithmetical operations; however, the polyphase FIR filters showed a similar efficiency.

### *5.7.2 Multistage Interpolators*

The multistage interpolator with parameters in Table 5.2 was designed and realized using a digital signal processor SHARC. The following types of interpolators have been analyzed:

- interpolators with FIR filters and the FIR Parks-McClellan filter (PM FA) employing a stopband characteristic of an analog low-pass filter (Fig. 3.36),
- interpolators with classical IIR filters, elliptic (IIR Elip.) and Czebyshev (IIR Czeb.)
- interpolators with bireciprocal lattice modified wave digital filters (MWDF),
- interpolators with two-path (polyphase) filters (IIR CV).

Bireciprocal lattice modified wave digital filters were also used in the interpolator design [12, 22, 23, 26, 62]. A single-stage interpolator for $R = 2$ used 9-order bireciprocal lattice modified wave digital filter is shown in Fig. 5.24. A block diagram of the interpolator for $R = 8$ is depicted in Fig. 5.25b. Modified wave digital filters are very efficient for implementation with modern floating point signal processors, especially for applications where a wide dynamic range of the signal is important. The author applied bireciprocal lattice wave digital elliptic filters for this realization. Filter coefficients are designed with author's program prepared in the the Matlab

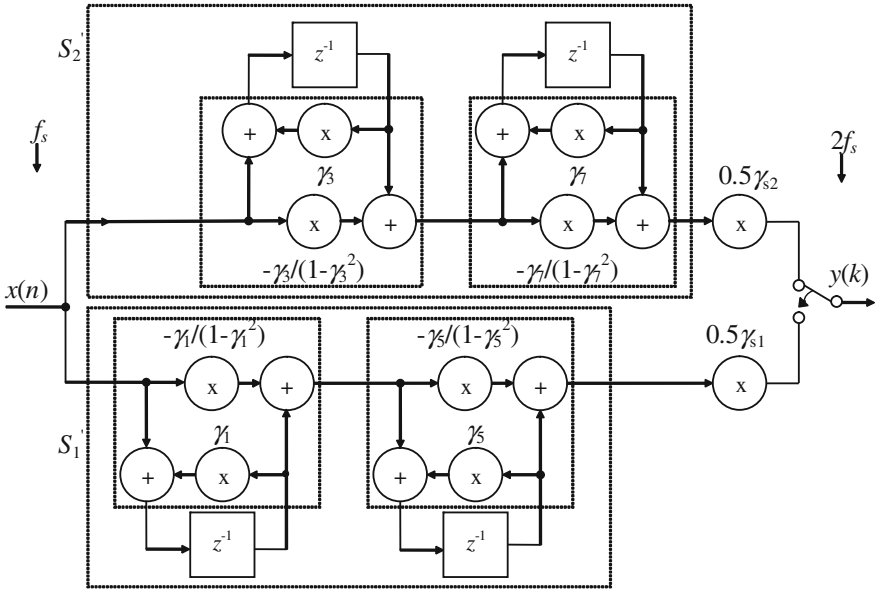



**Fig. 5.24** Block diagram of interpolator used 9-order bireciprocal lattice modified wave digital filter

environment, based on the methods presented in Chap. 3. The interpolator was realized with SHARC DSP using modified wave digital filters. The structure of the interpolator is depicted in Fig. 5.25a. The resulting value of the coefficient $\gamma_{sw1}$ is given by the following equation

$$\gamma_{sw1} = \gamma_{s12}\gamma_{s22}\gamma_{s32}, \tag{5.25}$$

where: $\gamma_{s12}$, $\gamma_{s22}$, $\gamma_{s32}$ are the resultant coefficients of upper branches for stages 1, 2, and 3, respectively. The author modified the structure of this interpolator (Fig. 5.25a) to the equivalent circuit depicted in Fig. 5.25b. This solution is very useful for realization by modern digital signal processor with parallel instruction set, because this structure allows for the implementation of parallel computing. Frequency response of the cascaded interpolator realized with SHARC DSP for $R = 8$ is shown in Fig. 5.26. The interpolator achieves the signal-to-noise and distortion ratio *SINAD* near to $-90$ dB and the passband ripple $\delta_p \approx 8 \cdot 10^{-9}$ dB. To compute the response for one input sample it needs 50 multiplications and 42 additions.

Among the polyphase IIR filters, special attention was paid to a two-path (polyphase) filter designed according to methods introduced by Venezuela and Constantindes [78]. This filter consists of two branches with allpass filters (Fig. 5.27a). Block diagrams of these filters are shown in Fig. 5.27b, c. The two-path filters have very high performance and they are easily implemented and computationally efficient. The quantity $N$ of allpass filter stages depends on: the stopband ripple $\delta_z$ and the relative frequency of transition bandwidth $\Delta F$ and is given by [31]

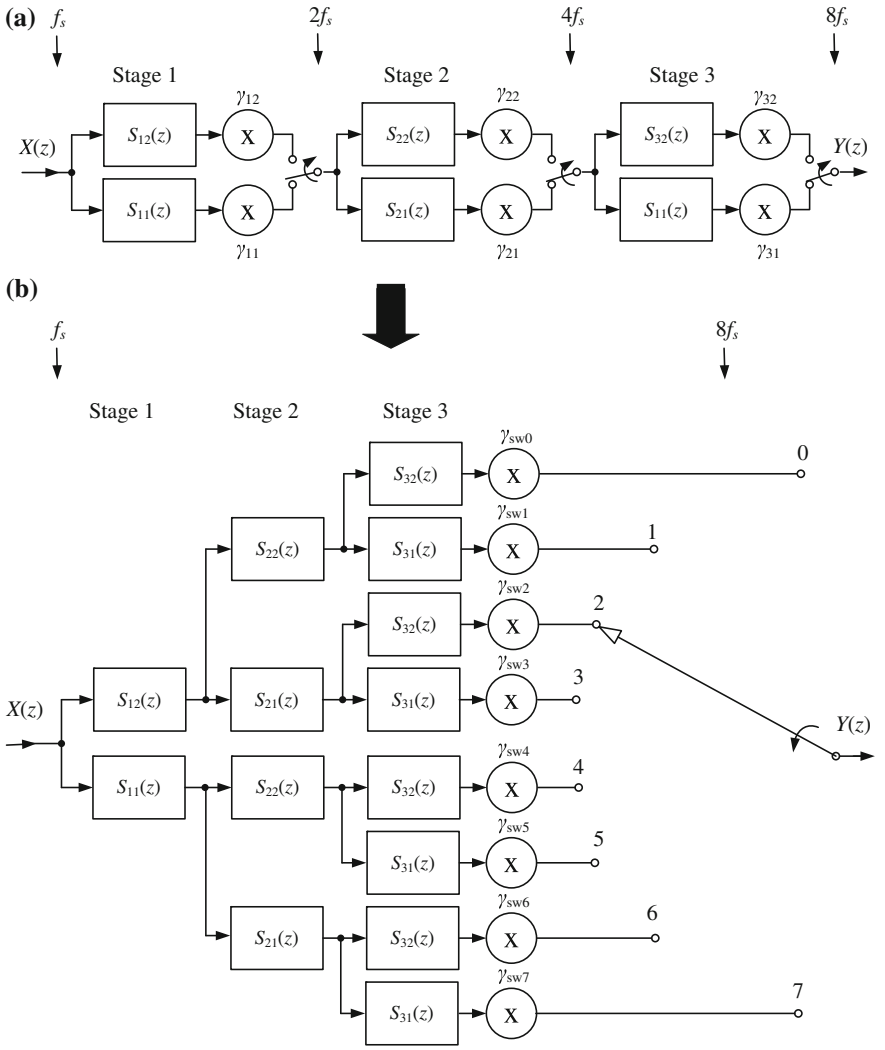



**Fig. 5.25** Cascaded version of the interpolator for $R = 8$ (**a**), version of the interpolator with a single switch and the resulting multipliers (**b**)

$$N = \frac{\delta_z}{72\Delta F + 10}. \tag{5.26}$$

Among the analyzed filters (Fig. 5.22), the multistage interpolator based on a polyphase two-path filter required the smallest number of arithmetical operations for implementation with a SHARC digital signal processor. For applications, for which a linear phase response is important, a multistageinterpolator with a

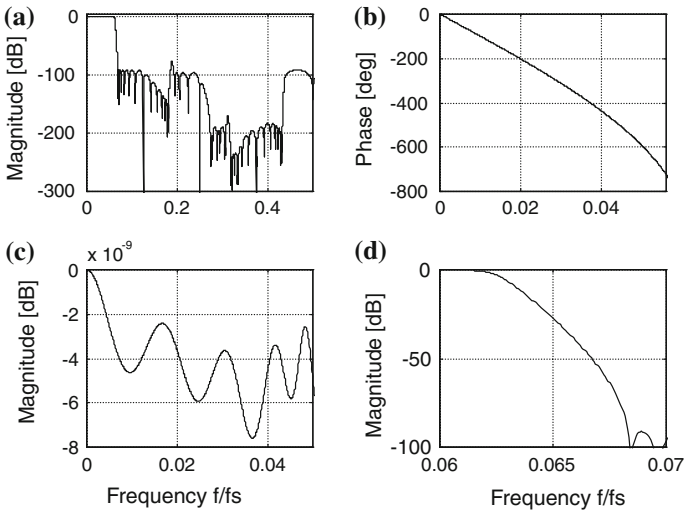



**Fig. 5.26** Frequency response of cascaded interpolator realized by SHARC DSP for $R = 8$: **a**, **c**, **d** magnitude response, **b** phase response

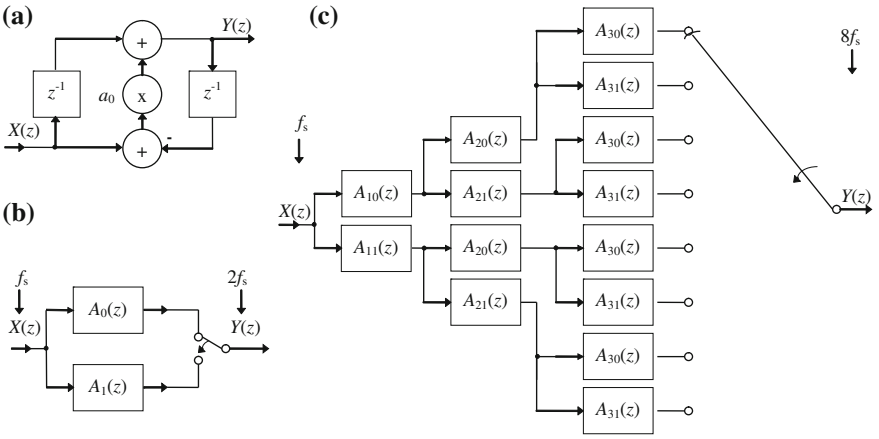



**Fig. 5.27** Block diagram of interpolator realized by polyphase two-path filters: **a** allpass section, **b** interpolator for $R = 2$, **c** multistage version of the interpolator for $R = 8$ with a single switch

Parks-McClellan FIR filter requires the smallest number of arithmetical operations. Using the symmetry of FIR filter coefficients, it is possible to decrease the number of arithmetic operations. Good results are also obtained for multistage interpolators based on modified wave digital filters.

## 5.8 Class D Audio Power Amplifiers

Devices to play music are one of the most common devices used by people. The main part of these devices is the power amplifier. Problems of analog power audio amplifiers are widely described in the literature, among the many publications the following can be cited [5, 15, 21, 42, 47, 50–52]. Digital signal processing algorithms for audio applications are described, inter alia, by Zolcer et al. [80, 81], Ledger and Tomarakos [34], Orfanidis [43, 44], Bateman and Paterson-Stephens [6]. Another very important part of devices to play music are the electroacoustic transducers, usually the loudspeakers. Among the many publications on the loudspeakers the following can be recommend [3, 13, 14, 21]. The main problems of loudspeaker parameters and designing loudspeaker system boxes were successfully solved by Thiele and Small [53–58, 74–76].

The frequency characteristics of the impedance magnitude of a typical loudspeaker is not constant, as shown in Fig. 5.28. This shows that the loudspeaker is not an easy type of load for an audio power amplifier and for a crossover network. It is possible to see a multiple growth ratio in impedance against resonant frequency. For higher frequencies, there is an increase of impedance due to the impacts in coil inductance. Therefore, it is difficult to design a good passive crossover for the flat frequency response of the whole speaker system, independently of the speaker impedances. To solve this problem, individual impedance compensation networks are necessary for particular speakers. Typically, the impedance of the loudspeaker is defined for a frequency of 1 kHz, though it is not sufficient to properly design a passive crossover network. A simplified diagram of a power amplifier output circuit is depicted in Fig. 5.29, $Z_S$ is the output impedance and $Z_L$ load impedance. The power amplifier

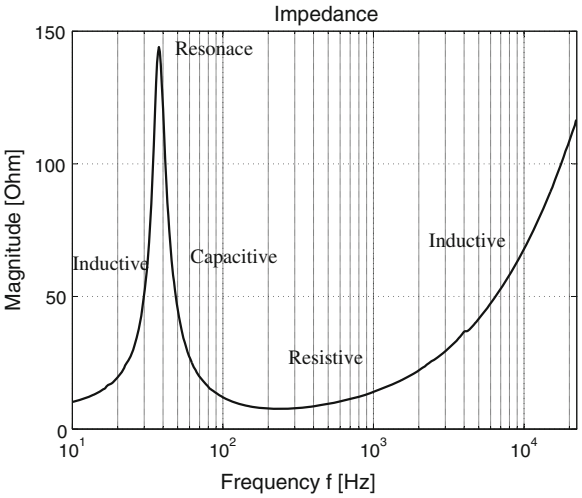



**Fig. 5.28** Impedance of 8 $\Omega$ midrange-woofer loudspeaker

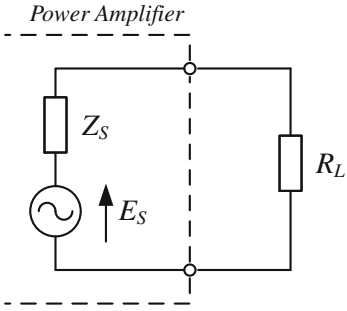



**Fig. 5.29** Simplified diagram of power amplifier output circuit

output impedance is usually less than 0.1 $\Omega$. For a power audio amplifier a damping factor is defined thus

$$D_F = \frac{Z_L + Z_S}{Z_S}. \tag{5.27}$$

The damping factor is not often specified in the amplifier. A high value of damping factor is better for controlling a complex load such as a loudspeaker. A typical value of damping factor range for a classical analog power audio amplifier with direct coupled output stage and negative feedback is from 50 to 2000. For an amplifier without feedback the range is from 0.1 to 10. It should be noted that between the speaker and the amplifier are connected the speaker cable and crossover. They added their impedance to the output impedance of the amplifier. Therefore, impedance of crossover and speaker cable should be minimized and this significantly increases the cost.

Today, the majority of audio sources are digital. Using CD and DVD players, DAT, MP3 players, digital audio processors, digital TV, digital broadcasting systems, and so on, there is direct access to the digital signal sources. Therefore, it seems to be reasonable to supply a digital signal directly to the loudspeaker.

### *5.8.1 Digital Crossovers*

The physics of sound reproduction makes it very difficult for a single loudspeaker to handle the whole audio frequency range. Therefore, for high fidelity applications, most loudspeaker systems consist of multiple loudspeakers, each of them reproducing a specific part of the audio band. In multiway loudspeaker systems there is a crossover circuit for every loudspeaker. A crossover circuit is a set of electrical filters (passive, active, or digital), each of which allows a specific portion of the frequency spectrum to pass through it. In typical solutions, this band is divided into two or three parts. Most loudspeakers can work satisfactorily well in the frequency range of about 10:1 only. Thus, the whole audio band (20 Hz to 20 kHz) should be covered by at last three loudspeakers. However, due to the lower price, two-way loudspeaker systems

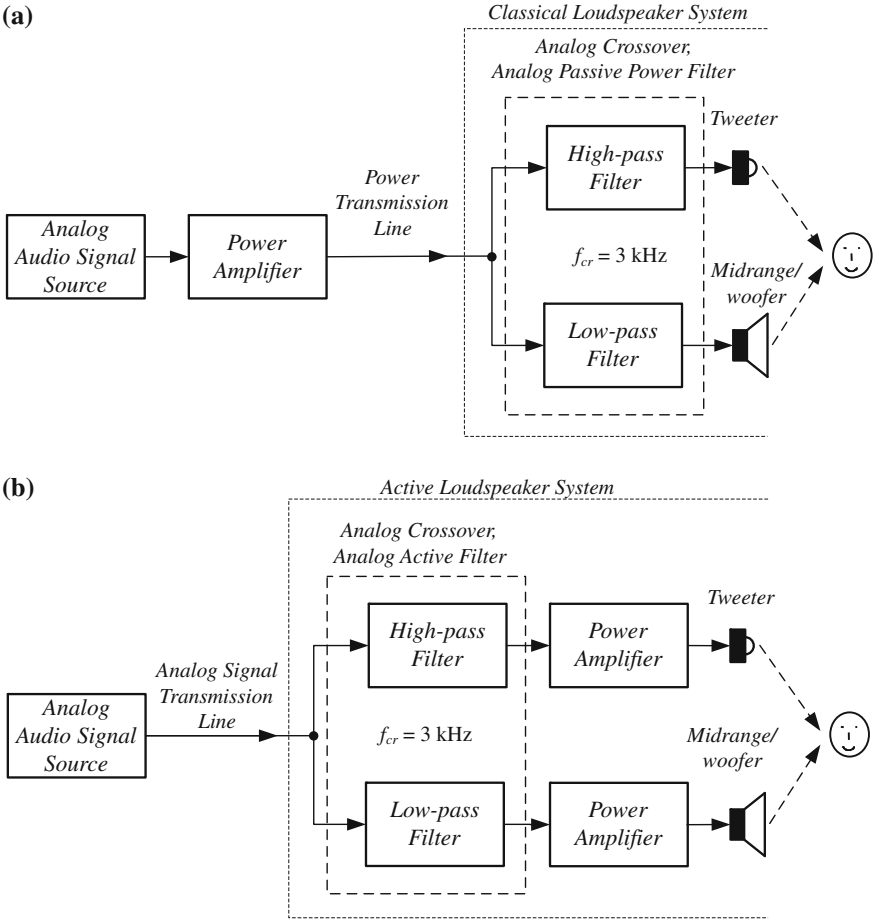



**Fig. 5.30** Block diagram of analog two-way loudspeaker systems: **a** passive, **b** active

are very commonly used. In most current loudspeaker systems, a passive (typically RLC) crossover network (analysis filter bank) is placed between the power amplifier and the loudspeakers. The block diagram of such a classical system is shown in Fig. 5.30a. Another function of the crossover is to equalize different sensitivities of particular loudspeakers. A typical two-way speaker system with second-order passive crossover is depicted in Fig. 5.31. The simplest crossover network consists of a low-pass and a high-pass filter for use in a two-way loudspeaker system.

In the author's opinion, a much better solution is to use the active loudspeaker system, in which the speaker is connected directly to the amplifier. Such a system is shown in Fig. 5.30b. It possesses many advantages over the passive realization. The active system is more accurate and its design is simpler, because there is no loudspeaker impedance influence on crossover parameters. For example, the low

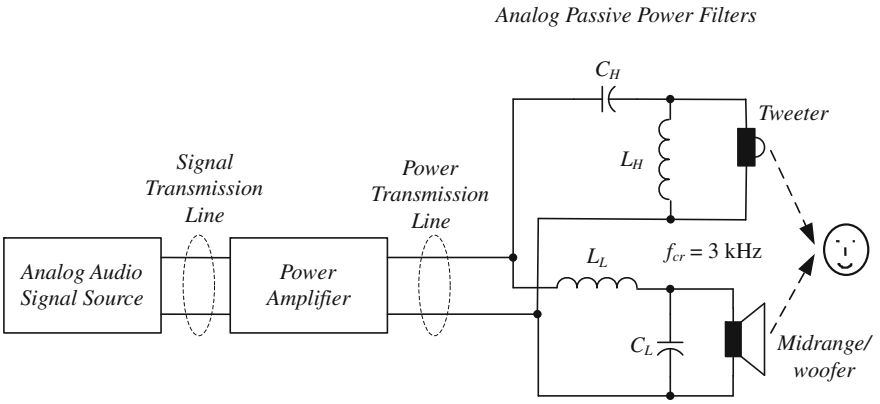



**Fig. 5.31** Block diagram of two-way loudspeaker system with passive crossover

output impedance of a power amplifier suppresses the speaker resonance phenomena. Moreover, the size of active or digital filters is smaller and the cost is less than that for their passive equivalents.

Using digital circuits, it is easy to introduce additional time delays into individual signal paths in order to correct the delay differences. This allows the speakers to have their acoustic centers aligned even though they are mounted at a particular distance to each other. However, in the author's opinion the classic sets consisting in a good class AB analog amplifier and a well-designed loudspeaker system sound excellent.

A digital version of the active crossover is proposed and discussed in this section. It possesses many advantages over the analog realization. It should be stressed, however, that the overall system today can be more expensive for the active realization because of the cost of separate power amplifiers, which are required in this case in each band as the filters should be separated from individual loudspeakers by the power amplifiers. This will, however, change in the near future with lower costs of electronic components. A block diagram of a two-way digital active loudspeaker system with digital class D power amplifier is shown in Fig. 5.32.

The digital audio input signal S/PDIF or AES/EBU (in the CD player standard, i.e. $b = 16$ bit with sampling rate $f_s = 44.1$ kHz) is divided into two channels, left and right, by a digital audio interface receiver (DAI). A typical audio band has a range of 20 Hz–20 kHz. The signal of the channel is divided into two subbands, high pass for tweeter and low pass for midrange/woofer. For a two-way loudspeaker system, a typical value of crossing frequency $f_{\mathrm{cr}}$ is in the range 2–3 kHz. In the next stages, digital pulse width modulators (DPWM) produce pluses controlling pulse power amplifier transistors. The transistor switching frequency $f_c$ can be different for both power amplifiers, it can be lower for midrange/woofer. The loudspeakers are connected to a pulse amplifier through a LC low-pass filter used for suppressing modulation components.

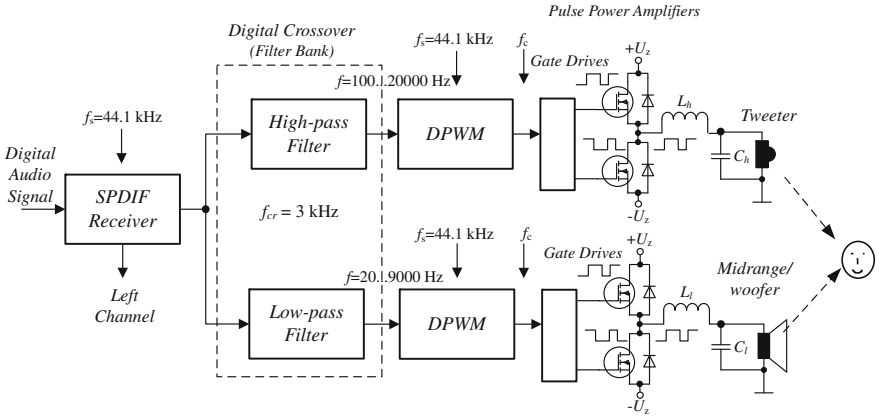



**Fig. 5.32** Block diagram of two-way digital active loudspeaker system with digital class D power amplifiers

## *5.8.2 Loudspeaker Measurements*

The process of converting an electrical signal into an acoustic wave is very complex and very difficult and subject to a mathematical description and simulation. However, loudspeakers are characterized by great variability and depend on parameters for their operation of the size and shape of enclosure and crossover parameters. Therefore, during the design process reliance exclusively on calculations and simulations is not possible, and verification of the results with measurements is needed. This necessitates an acoustic chamber and suitable measuring equipment. When it comes to the acoustic chamber an anechoic chamber would be best, but this is big and expensive (especially at low frequencies). So often the use of acoustic chambers only provide noise isolation from the environment. Similarly, good measuring equipment is expensive, with the most comfortable to use measuring equipment coming from companies such as Audio Precision, Bruel & Kjaer etc. However, you can use cheaper solutions, such as the Clio system from the company of Audiomatica. The author uses an acoustic chamber with insulation and Clio measurement system [4]. The measurement circuit is shown in Fig. 5.33a. According to its advanced signal processing methods, with Clio it is possible to measure frequency characteristics of acoustic systems without an anechoic chamber. The measurements are made using LogChirp or MLS (Maximum Length Sequence) signal and time gating for canceling reflected acoustic waves, only direct response from the loudspeaker is measured. Using the time gating technique, it is possible to cancel the influence of the reflected energy. The block diagram of the measurement algorithm is depicted in Fig. 5.33b. The loudspeaker impulse response can be divided into three regions: delay region, meter-on region, and reflections region. In the analysis, only the meter-on region is used and remaining regions are filed by zeros. The floor reflection geometry is shown in Fig. 5.34. The time gating can be calculated by the formula

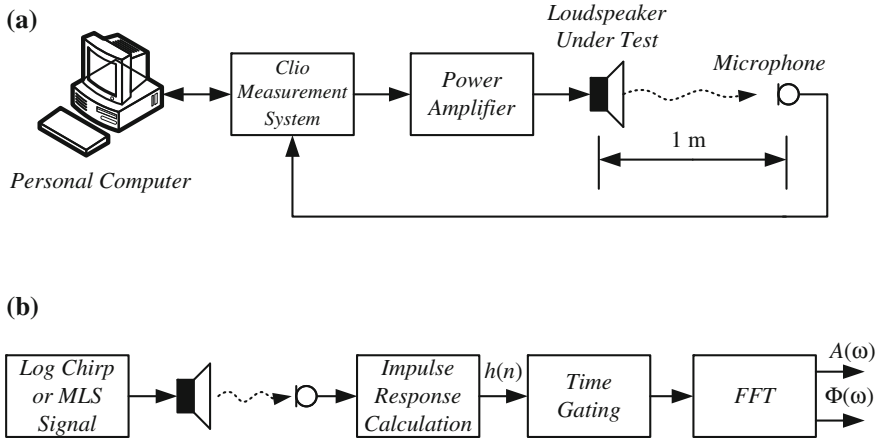



**Fig. 5.33** Loudspeaker measurement: **a** circuit, **b** algorithm

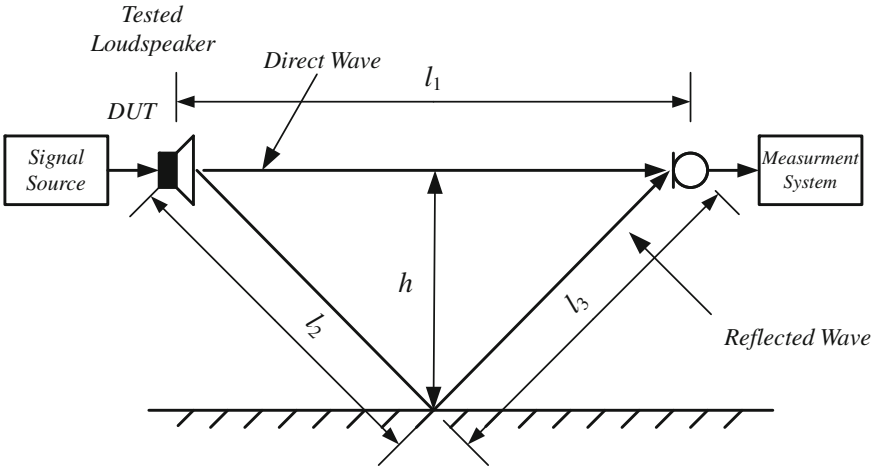



**Fig. 5.34** The floor reflection geometry

$$\Delta t = \frac{2\sqrt{h^2 - \frac{l_1^2}{4}} - l_1}{v}, \tag{5.28}$$

where: $v$—speed of sound, $l_1$—distance between loudspeaker and microphone, $h$—distance between loudspeaker and nearest reflecting surface (floor). The lowest measured frequency is equal to

$$f_{min} = \frac{1}{\Delta t}. \tag{5.29}$$

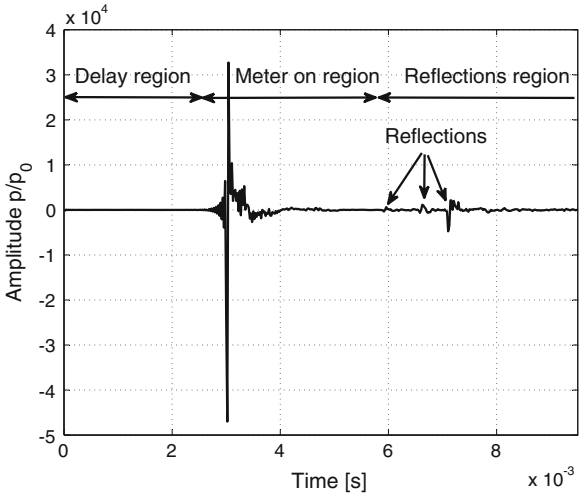



**Fig. 5.35** Tweeter impulse response calculated from Log Chirp signal response

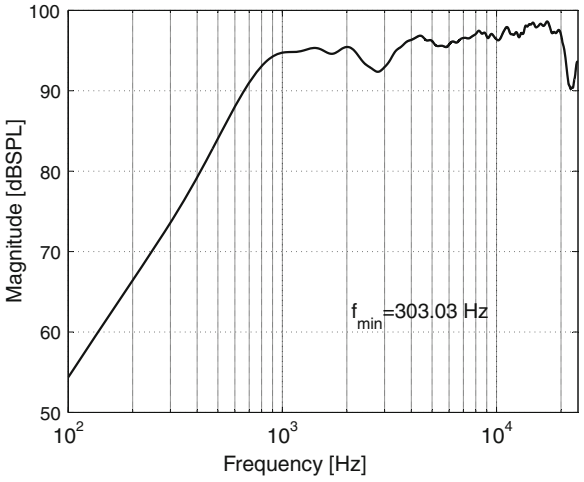



**Fig. 5.36** Tweeter frequency response calculated from impulse response

Reflected energy from nearby walls, floor, and ceiling arrives at the test microphone later than direct waves, as shown in Fig. 5.35. For this particular case, the measurement is valid for the samples between the time points $t_{min} = 2.5 \cdot 10^{-3}$ s and $t_{max} = 5.8 \cdot 10^{-3}$ s, which gives the value of $\Delta t = 3.3 \cdot 10^{-3}$ s Thus, the value of the lowest measured is $f_{min} = 303.03$ Hz. The impulse response is used for calculating the frequency response of the loudspeaker. It has been shown in Fig. 5.36. To measure lower frequencies there should be used a large acoustic chamber or measurements should be taken outside in the open air. The near-field measurement method for low frequencies may also be used, and then measurements combined for near field and

**Fig. 5.37** Digital active loudspeaker box

far field to give the entire frequency characteristics. This evaluation method requires great care in order to obtain reliable results. Loudspeaker measurement problems are fairly well described by D'Appolito [3].

## 5.9 Class D Power Amplifier with Digital Click Modulator

The author has designed and built digital two-way loudspeaker system with digital click modulator [61]. The enclosure was build by friendly company Audiotholn from Zielona Gora, it is very stiff and very carefully done. The enclosure is a 8.5 l vented box, with the ceramic cone tweeter 26HD1/A8 [19] and HexaCone kevlar midrange/woofer 5-880/25 Hex [20], both from Eton. The HexaCone cone is a honeycomb Nomex structure that makes them both extremely light and very stiff. The digital active loudspeaker system was tested in an acoustic chamber. The designed loudspeaker box is shown in Fig. 5.37. The author proposes the use of the digital click modulator. Problems with implementation of the digital CM are represented among others by [30, 32, 45, 49, 61, 64, 65, 79]. Application of the CM allows the reduction of the switching frequency of transistors in comparison to the classical PWM. However, implementation of digital CM encounters difficulties in realization for low-frequency signal. For instance, the Hilbert transform requires for a low signal frequency, such as 20 Hz, a very high-order FIR filter, from several hundreds to thousands. Such high-order FIR filters result in a large computational work load and introduce a very long delay in the signal. Therefore, the author decided to use two different modulation techniques for the lower band and upper band of the signal. Thus,

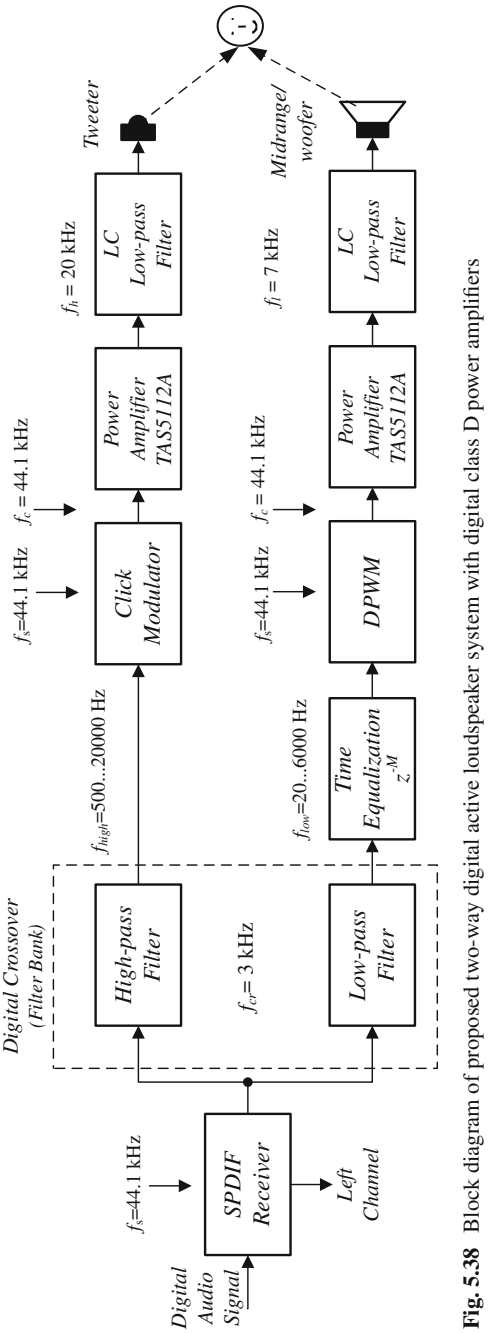



**Fig. 5.38** Block diagram of proposed two-way digital active loudspeaker system with digital class D power amplifiers

**Table 5.3** Design parameters of the Kaiser FIR filter

| Parameter | Value |
|---|---|
| Sampling frequency $f_s$ [Hz] | 44100 |
| Passband frequency $f_p$ [Hz] | 10 |
| Stopband frequency $f_z$ [Hz] | 6000 |
| Passband ripple $R_p$ | 0.0005 |
| Stopband ripple $R_z$ | 0.0005 |

for the lower band, classical PWM, and for upper band, click signal modulation are applied, respectively. The input signal is divided by crossover into two bands (−60 dB): $f_{low} = 20-6000$ Hz, $f_{high} = 500-20000$ Hz. A block diagram of the proposed solution is presented in Fig. 5.38. By using two types of modulators in the system, it is possible to use a very low transistor switching frequency $f_c = 44100$ Hz. The system also employs a delay block for correction of different signal delays in low and high channels. This difference is a result of the application of different modulation algorithms, and various positions of speakers in the box. The pulse power amplifier used was the integrated circuit TAS5121 from Texas Instruments [66]. The amplifier for each band achieves an output power 100 W with a supply voltage equal to 30 V and a load impedance equal to 4 $\Omega$.

### *5.9.1 Digital Crossovers*

In the digital crossover system that is taken into consideration, there exists only an analysis filter bank. The synthesis filter bank results from acoustic wave addition of particular loudspeaker signals. A simplified block diagram of such circuit is shown in Fig. 5.38. In the considered digital active crossovers two solutions are discussed: strictly complementary finite impulse response (FIR) filter bank [24, 59, 61, 77] and Linkwitz-Riley infinite impulse response (IIR) filter bank [36].

As an example, a strictly complementary analysis filter bank based on the Kaiser FIR filter was designed. The design parameters of the filter are described in Table 5.3. The frequency characteristics of the designed 38-order two-channel strictly complementary analysis filter bank are shown in Fig. 5.39. Crossing point coordinates of magnitude characteristics of low- and high-pass filters are −6 dB and 3000 Hz. In Fig. 5.39a, an impulse responses of the filter bank are depicted; especially interesting is the sum of the responses of the two filters. The sum is the same as the input impulse, but is only delayed $N/2$ samples. The frequency characteristic of the output sum is flat.

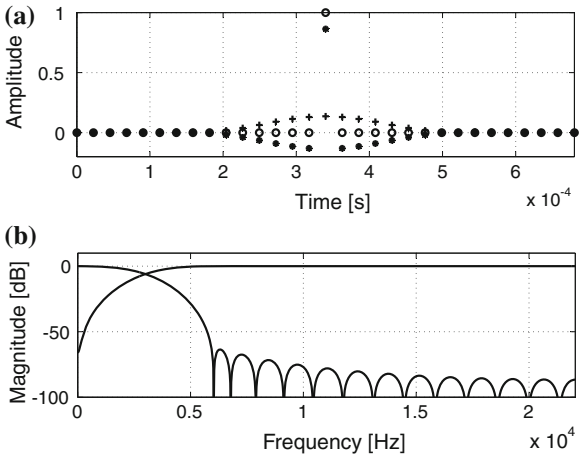



**Fig. 5.39** Responses of the designed two-channel strictly complementary analysis filter bank: **a** Impulse responses: low pass (+), high pass (*) and sum of responses (o), **b** frequency responses

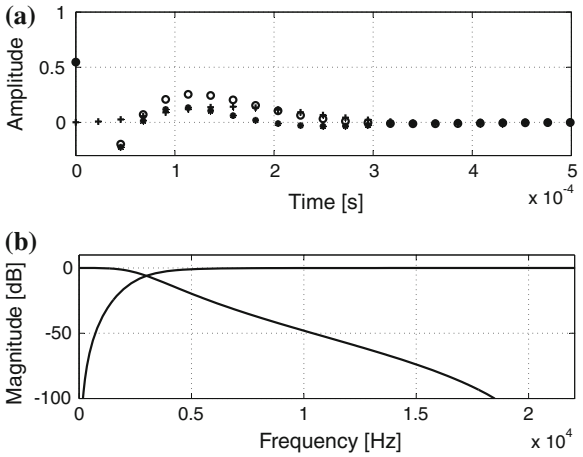



**Fig. 5.40** Responses of the designed two-channel LR analysis filter bank: **a** impulse responses: low pass (+), high pass (*) and sum of responses (o), **b** frequency responses

Another type of filter bank well suited for audio crossover applications is a filter bank based on Linkwitz-Riley filters [36] (also called squared Butterworth). The Linkwitz-Riley crossover achieves:

- sum of the outputs with flat frequency response,
- absolutely flat amplitude response throughout the passband with a steep 24 dB/octave roll off rate after the crossover point,
- outputs in-phase at the crossover frequency,

- phase relationship of the outputs allowing time correction for drivers that are not in the same acoustic plane,
- zero phase difference between drivers at crossover frequency,
- all drivers always wired the same (in phase).

The usual implementation of fourth-order Linkwitz-Riley crossovers is a simple series connection of two second-order Butterworth filters (two for the high-pass channel, and two more for the low-pass channel). In this particular case, a fourth-order Linkwitz-Riley analysis filter bank with crossing frequency $f_{cr} = 3000$ Hz was designed. Frequency characteristics of the tested two-channel fourth-order Linkwitz-Riley analysis filter bank are shown in Fig. 5.40. Crossing point coordinates of magnitude characteristics of low- and high-pass filters are –6 dB and $f_{\mathrm{cr}} = 3000$ Hz. In Fig. 5.40an impulse responses of the filter bank are depicted; especially interesting is the response of the sum of the two filters. The frequency characteristics of the output sum is flat too.

Both designed crossovers are implemented using floating point digital signal processor ADSP-21364.

### *5.9.2 Realization of Digital Click Modulator*

The click modulator is a big challenge for the processor, for example, [65] used three processors with computational power of 233 MMACs and two FPGAs. Therefore, the author decided to use a powerful floating-point digital signal processor (DSP) ADSP-21364 from Analog Devices [1, 2]. The efficiency of the DSP processor used for the realization of the modulator is sufficient to support the entire algorithm at full speed (44.1 kHz).

The block diagram of the realization of the laboratory experimental circuit is shown in Fig. 5.38 [61]. In this circuit, for simplicity, a digital audio input is used. The signal is in Sony/Philips Digital Interconnect Format (S/PDIF) standard and it uses 75 ohm coaxial RCA connector. The 16-bit stereo digital audio input signal is received by an ADSP-21364 digital audio receiver called also a digital audio interface (DAI). The digital signal has a sampling rate $f_s = 44.1$ kHz. The main part of the modulator is realized using floating point digital signal processor ADSP-21364 with $f_{clk} = 300$ MHz clock frequency, delivering 300 million floating-point instructions per second. It is possible to calculate the quantity of available processor operations per input sample $L_{DSP} = \mathrm{floor}(f_{clk}/f_s) = 6802$. The digital PWM is realized with ADSP-21364 counters and it has a 12-bit resolution. The counters work with a frequency of $f_M = 300$ MHz. The switching frequency of the pulse amplifier transistors is $f_c = 44.1$ kHz. The data to PWM are fed with frequency $f_c = 44.$ kHz.

The block diagram for the digital realization of the click modulator algorithm is presented in Fig. 5.41. Based on the linear phase response of the whole algorithm, finite impulse response filters (FIR) have to be used. For Hilbert transform of the

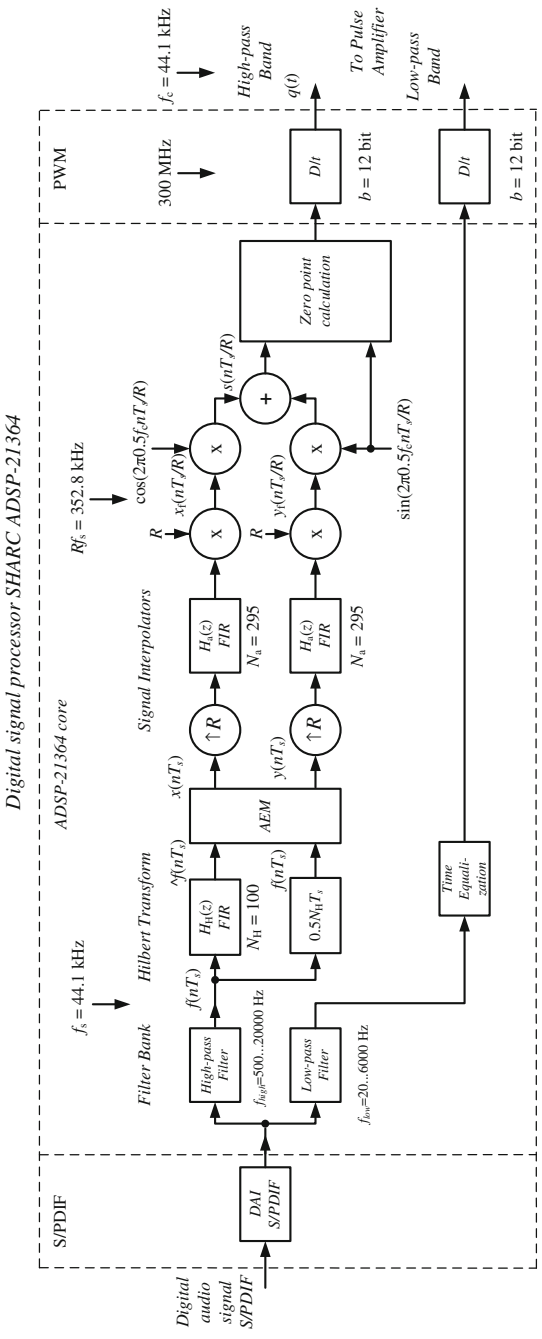



**Fig. 5.41** Realization block diagram of the ALS

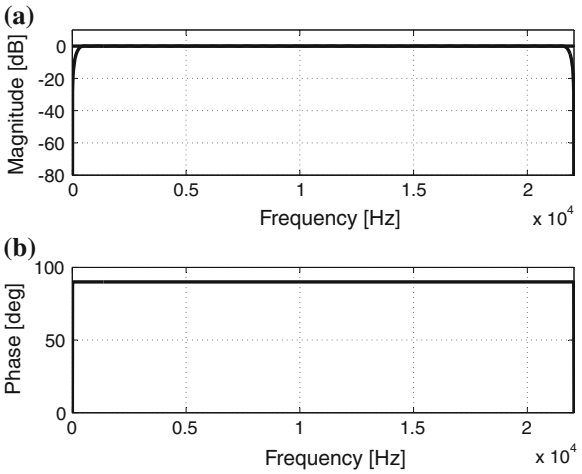



**Fig. 5.42** Frequency responses of the Hilbert FIR filter and delay line: **a** amplitude responses, **b** difference of phase responses

input signal a FIR filter is applied. A practical FIR implementation of the Hilbert transform will exhibit bandpass characteristics. The bottleneck of this algorithm is the low-frequency performance. The Hilbert FIR filter was designed using the Matlab Signal Processing Toolbox, as shown in following listing

```
N_H = 100; % Order
F = [0.02 0.98]; % Frequency Vector
A = [1 1]; % Amplitude Vector
W = 1; % Weight Vector
b = remez (N_H, F, A, W, 'hilbert');
```

The frequency response of the Hilbert FIR filter (red line) and delay line (blue line) is depicted in Fig. 5.42. Realization of ADSP-21364 code for such FIR filter is described in following listing, with every filter tap executed in a single processor machine cycle 3.333 ns (for 300 MHz clock).

```
/* load sample from circular buffer
in data memory and coefficient from
 circular buffer in program memory */
f2=dm(i0,m0), f4=pm(i8,m8);
/* loop initialization */
lcntr=TAPS-1, do (pc,1) until lce;
/* calculate filter tap */
f8=f2*f4,f12=f8+f12,f2=dm(i0,m0),
f4=pm(i8,m8);
/* calculate last tap */
f8=f2*f4 , f12=f8+f12;
/* last accumulation */
f12 = f8+f12;
```

The digital algorithm determined moments of the zero crossing of signal $s(t)$; to increase the accuracy of the digital process, signal sampling rate should be increased $R$ times. The chosen value of $R$ equal 8, which is a compromise between modulation accuracy and computational complexity. The sampling rate is increased before the filter $H_a(z)$, so that the filter also fulfilled the role of the interpolation filter.

Similar to the Hilbert filter is the design of the $H_a(z)$ FIR filter. In practice, the low-pass filter should sufficiently attenuate the stopband to suppress the unwanted images of the baseband. Finally, the signal amplitude is increased $R$ times to compensate amplitude losses. In the designed modulator, the finite impulse response filter FIR has to be used according to its linear phase response. The chosen interpolator ratio is $R = 8$. The FIR filter was designed using the Matlab Signal Processing Toolbox as shown in following listing:

```
fs = 44100 * 8; % sampling frequency
Na = 295; % filter order
Fpass = 20000; % passband Frequency
Fstop = 27000; % stopband Frequency
Wpass = 1; % passband Weight
Wstop = 1; % stopband Weight
b = firls(N,[0 Fpass Fstop fs/2]/(fs/2),..
[1 1 0 0],[Wpass Wstop]);
```

The filter order is $N_{int} = 295$. The interpolator requires $(N_a + 1)R$ multiplication and addition per one input sample.

It is possible to decrease the quantity of arithmetic calculation by elimination of the multiplication and addition for zero value samples. The block diagram of such solution is shown in Fig. 5.43. This is a FIR-based signal interpolator for $R = 8$ with periodically switched coefficients and filter order $N_a = 295$. In this case, the interpolator requires $N_a + 1$ multiplication and addition per one input signal sample. This kind of filter structure is easy and efficiently realized by the DSP.

The signal $s(kT_s/R)$ has a sampling rate equal to 352.8 kHz. This time resolution is still too low to perform high quality audio signal. Therefore, zero crossing point has to be calculated with higher accuracy. The time counters work with a clock frequency equal to 300 MHz. The zero crossing point is calculated using linear interpolation. This process is shown in Fig. 5.44.

The weak point of the algorithm is the need to use FIR filters with very high orders, which causes high DSP workload and signal latency. The author successfully applied instead of FIR filters, a linear phase IIR filter, which is described in Chap. 3. This results in a significant reduction of DSP workload for the same results.

### 5.9.3 Experimental Results

Experimental results for the sinusoidal input signal for the realized click modulator are presented in Fig. 5.45. Presented is the spectrum of the output signal for an input

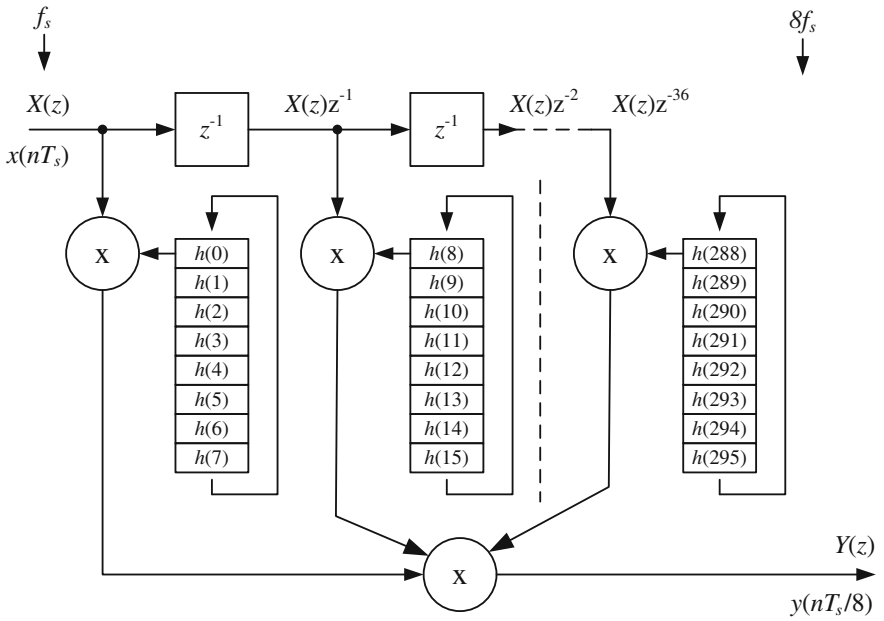



**Fig. 5.43** Block diagram of FIR-based signal interpolator for $R = 8$ with periodically switched coefficients and filter order $N_{int} = 295$

signal of 5 kHz. Modulation components are moved from a signal band of 500 Hz–20 kHz, some harmonics in the signal band on −80 dB level are connected with limited time resolution.

Acoustic measurements were made using the computer controlled system Clio from Audiomatica [4]. Thanks to its advanced signal processing methods, using the Clio system it is possible to measure the frequency characteristics of acoustic systems without an anechoic chamber.

Acoustics waves generated by two drivers must be coincident. This means the drivers have to radiate from exactly the same point in space and time. According to different sizes of tweeter and woofer, in a typical loudspeaker system, the positions of driver acoustic centers are not located on the same plane. Therefore, the distance to the summing point of both drivers is different. This causes phase error and the amplitude characteristics of whole speaker system is distorted around the crossing frequency. A simple digital delay circuit can be used to equalize time aligns, thus harmonizing the phase of both drivers, and reducing lobing error by adding delay to the tweeter loudspeaker. In the loudspeaker systems under consideration digital delays were used (Fig. 5.41). The loudspeakers are equalized by adding delay to the forward driver time aligns thus harmonizing the phase of both drivers, and reducing lobing error.

Measured frequency responses of the designed two-way digital loudspeaker system, low-pass channel, high-pass channel, and two channels together are shown in

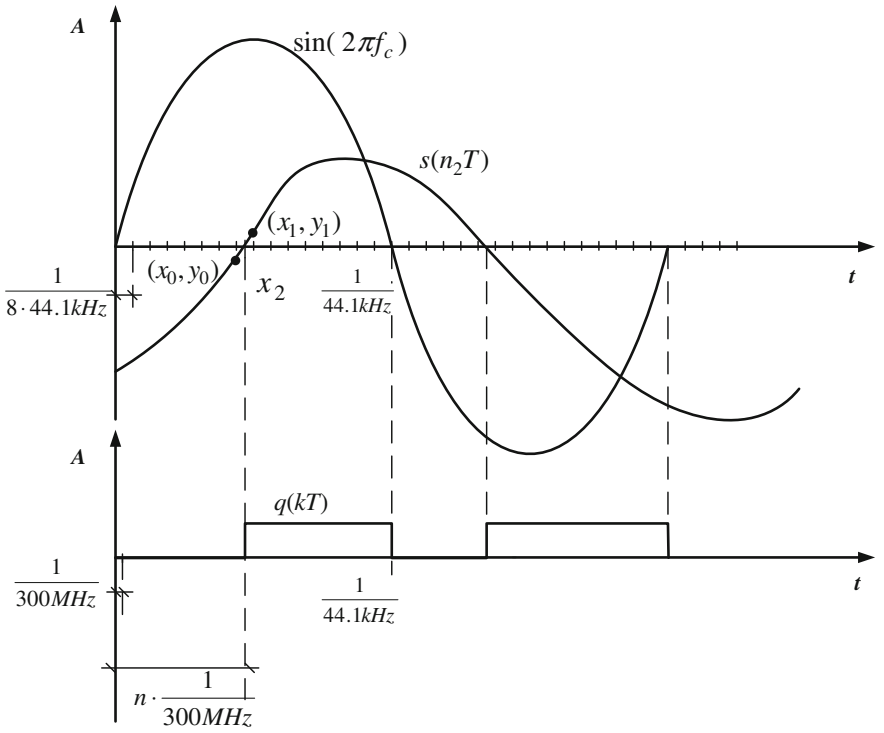



**Fig. 5.44** Zero crossing calculation

Fig. 5.46. Frequency characteristics for the system with SC crossover are depicted in Fig. 5.46a and with LR crossover in Fig. 5.46b respectively.

The digital system, implemented with a digital signal processor, directly controls the power pulse amplifier using a digital-to-time converter with noise shaping. Unlike the other so-called digital amplifiers, no analog feedback or analog signal processing amplification is involved at any stage of the presented system. The resulting system is thus a high power D/A converter device that translates the digital information directly into sound. The presented concept is characterized by numerous advantages:

- signal distortion is totally coherent with the sound (music), no ringing or decay effects can appear,
- transient intermodulation distortion cannot occur,
- distortion is the same under steady state and dynamic conditions.

The proposed digital crossovers based on a strictly complementary filter bank and Linkwitz-Riley filter bank are well suited for a digital active loudspeaker box. The results of both filter banks are similar. The main advantage of click modulation is low switching frequency close to the upper signal band limit and high efficiency of energy conversion. The main disadvantage of click modulation is complication of the control

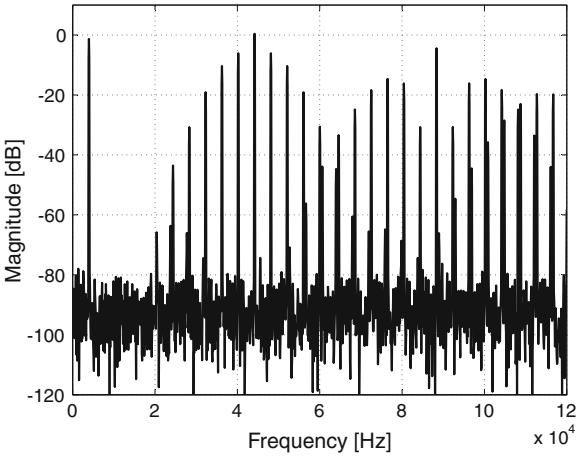



**Fig. 5.45** Experimental results of digital audio amplifier output signal with click modulator for $f_c = 44.1$ kHz and sinusoidal input signal $f = 5$ kHz

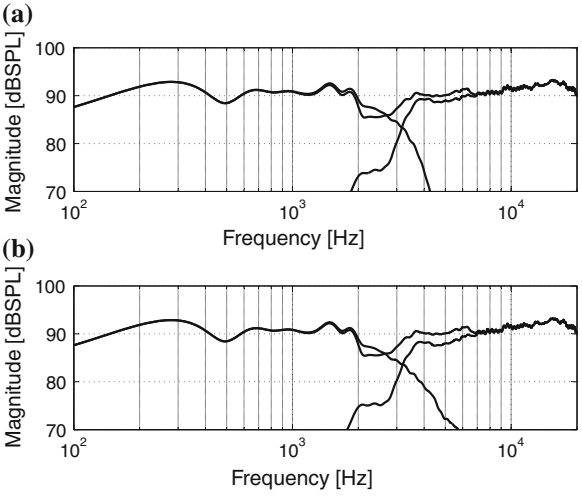



**Fig. 5.46** Measured frequency responses of the designed two-way digital loudspeaker system: low-pass channel, high-pass channel, two channels (**a**) with LR crossover (**b**) with SC crossover

algorithm. It is a big challenge even for the fastest digital signal processors. Another difficult problem is output pulse time resolution. Fortunately, the speed of modern digital signal processors and microcontrollers is continuously growing. Using two types of modulation allowed the use of very low switching transistor frequency while maintaining good performance of the system. Using low switching frequency reduces power losses and reduces EMC interference. The designed active loudspeaker system covers the whole audio band, theoretically from 20 Hz to 20 kHz, though practically, low frequency is higher according to woofer/midrange loudspeaker and box parameters.

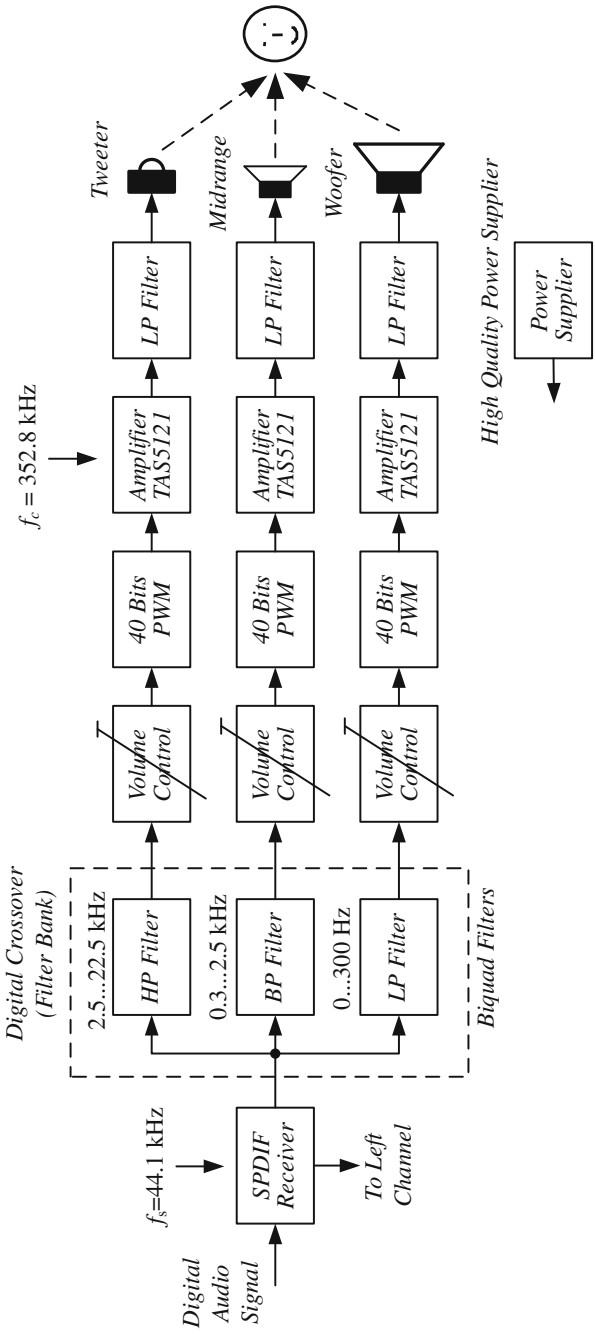



**Fig. 5.47** Block diagram of three-way loudspeaker system

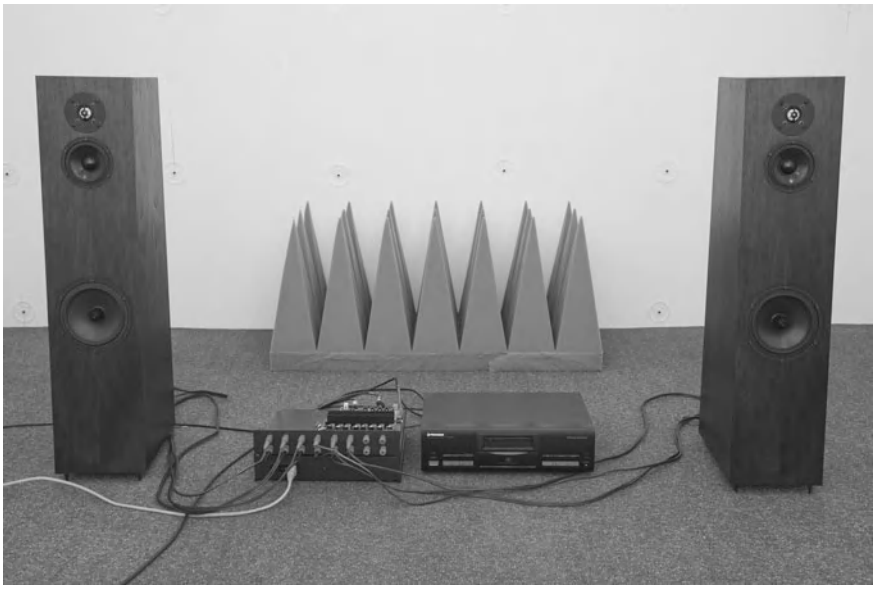


**Fig. 5.48** Three-way loudspeaker system

## 5.10 Digital Audio Class D Power Amplifier with TAS5508 DSP

The author has designed and built a high quality stereo three-way digital loudspeaker system. The system consists of a digital crossover and a digital class-D power audio amplifier. It is based on TAS5508-5121K8EVM class-D digital power amplifier evaluation module. Figure 5.47 shows the block diagram of one channel of the loudspeaker system. The system consists of a digital audio interface (DAI) on the front. In DAI, digital audio signal is divided into two channels. Then signal is divided into three subbands by a digital crossover (analysis filter bank). Next, the signal is converted by DPWM to pulse controlled amplifier transistor signals. The whole system is supplied by a high quality switch mode power supplier.

The selected loudspeakers for the presented loudspeaker system were: woofer 7-200/A8/32 [18] HEX, midrange 4-200/A8/25 HEX [17], tweeter 26HD1/A8 [20], all from Eton. The enclosure is a 12.5 l vented box. Figure 5.48 shows the loudspeaker system in an acoustic chamber. The loudspeakers in the box were tested in an acoustic chamber. The frequency characteristics of the tested loudspeaker are depicted in Fig. 5.49. In the acoustic laboratory circumstances, the lowest measured frequency is about 268 Hz. The graph shows that the sensitivity of the tweeter is higher than other loudspeaker, but it can be easily equalized.

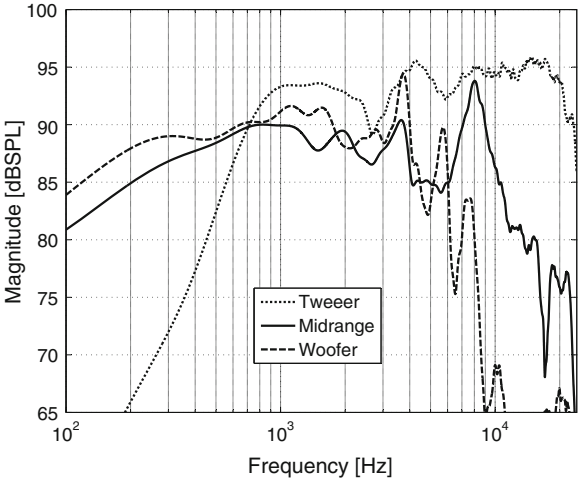



**Fig. 5.49** Frequency characteristics of the loudspeakers

### *5.10.1 TAS5508-5121K8EVM*

The proposed system consists in the TAS5508-5121K8EVM evaluation module board (EVM) and Input PC Board [68]. The Input PC Board has three stereo audio 24-bit A/D converters for analog inputs and two digital audio inputs SPDIF: optical Toslink and Coaxial. The system is controlled by a personal computer using a USB interface.

The TAS5508-5121K8EVM evaluation amplifier module consists in two main types of integrated circuits: one TAS5508 and eight TAS5121. The TAS5508 is a high performance 32-bit (24-bit input) pulse width modulator (PWM) and 48-bit multi channel digital audio processor (DAP). It accepts input signal sample rate from 32 to 192 kHz. The TAS5121 is an integrated circuit high power digital amplifier power stage designed to drive a $4\,\Omega$ loudspeaker up to 100 W. The EVM and Input PC Board is a complete 8-channel digital audio amplifier, which includes digital audio inputs, analog audio inputs, interface to personal computer, and DAP features such as digital volume control, input and output mixer audio mute, equalization, tone controls, loudness, and dynamic range compression. All these functions are controlled by special registers in the TAS5508. The access to these register is possible using the USB interface. Using the USB interface, the digital amplifier is connected to a personal computer. The content of the registers is controlled by TAS5508 graphical interface software.

Analog or digital audio signal SPDIF is converted by an Input PC Board and then using an I2S interface is transmitted to the evaluation module. Then it passes through an input mixer to selected biquad filter (SOS) groups. The biquad filter group consists of seven filters. The filter coefficients $b_0$, $b_1$, $b_2$, $-a_1$, $-a_2$ (Fig. 5.50) are 28-bit, using a 5.23 number format. The coefficients, formatted as 5.23 numbers,

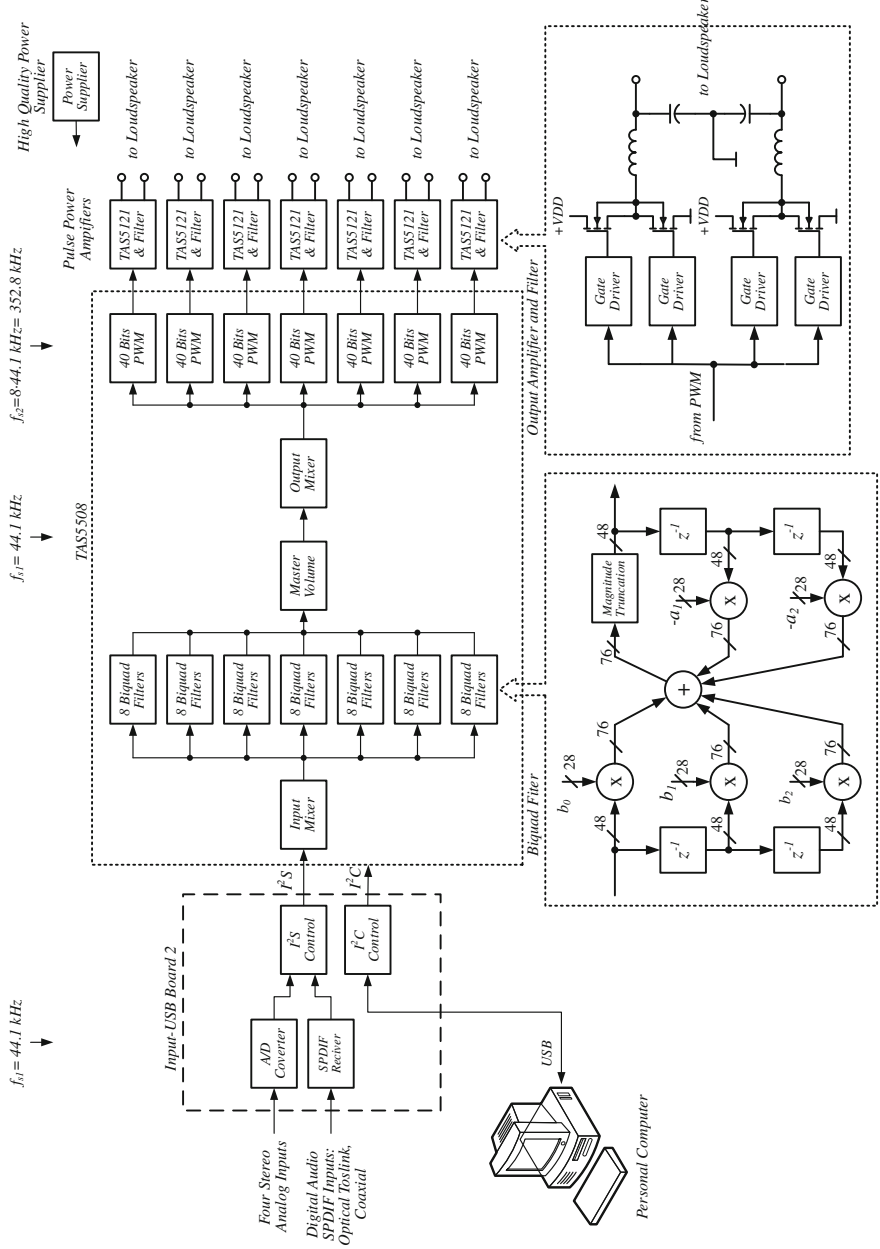



**Fig. 5.50** Block diagram of TAS5508 evaluation module

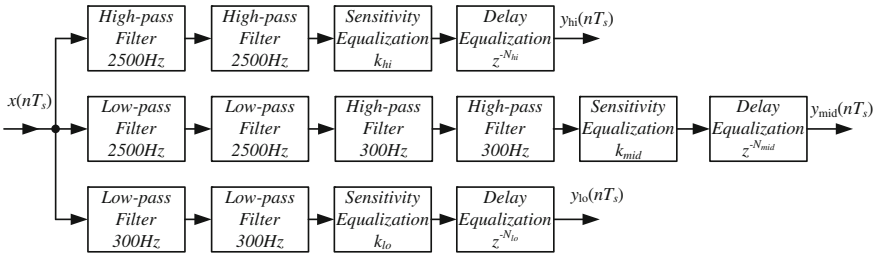



**Fig. 5.51** Block diagram of fourth-order three-way Linkwitz-Riley crossover

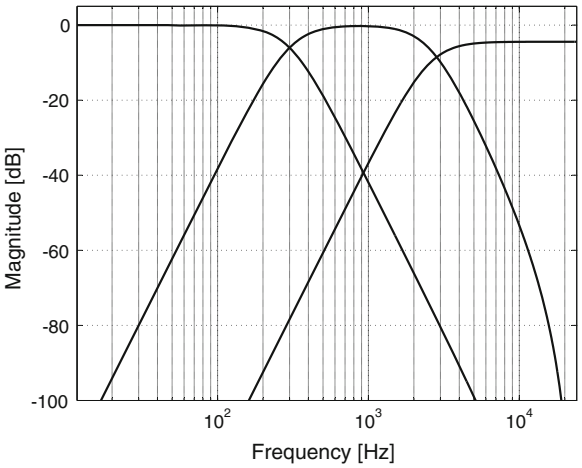



**Fig. 5.52** Frequency characteristics of fourth-order three-way Linkwitz-Riley crossover

mean that there are 5 bits to the left of the decimal point and 23 bits to the right of the decimal point. From the SOS filter group, the signal is sent to the output mixer. In the next stage, digital signals are amplified by a digital class D audio amplifier TAS5121. The transistor switching frequency is equal to $8f_s = f_c = 352.8\,\text{kHz}$ (for 44.1 kHz input signal sampling rate).

## *5.10.2 Three-way Digital Crossover*

Figure 5.51 shows a block diagram of a fourth-order three-way Linkwitz-Riley crossover. The crossover divides signal into three subbands using a fourth-order Linkwitz-Riley filter. Additionally, there is a crossover equalizing the loudspeaker sensitivity and delay (according to loudspeaker position in the box). The frequency characteristics of the crossover are shown in Fig. 5.52. In the tweeter channel there is added sensitivity equalization; therefore its frequency characteristic is below 0 dB.

The crossover filters were easily implemented using the TAS5508 processor. The author wrote a Matlab program to transfer floating-point filter coefficients into 5.23 fixed point format. The following is a listing of the Matlab program function for this conversion:

```
function hex_out = f_dec2hex_TAS5508 (in_dec)
% Quantize to 23 bits and round to the nearest integer
quant = abs (round ((2^23) * in_dec));
if in_dec < 0 % i.e. negative
   quant = bitcmp (quant,28) + 1; % quant = quant + 2^27
end
% Convert the decimal number to hex
hex_out = dec2hex (quant,8);
```

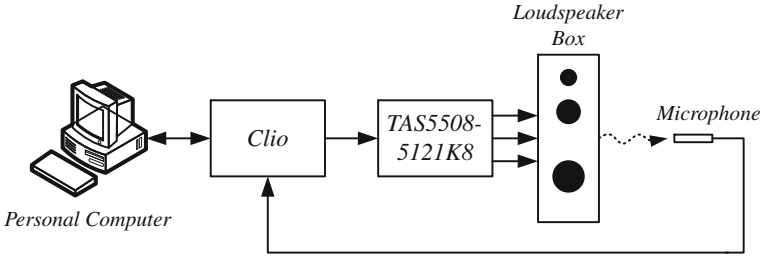



**Fig. 5.53** Measurement circuit for three-way loudspeaker system

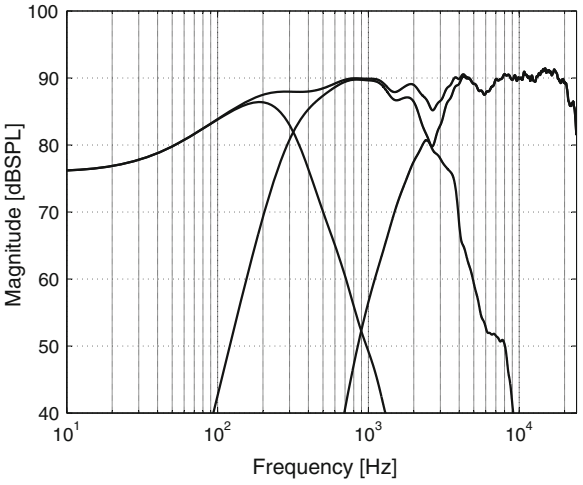



**Fig. 5.54** Frequency characteristics of the measured loudspeaker system, channels: tweeter, midrange, woofer, and whole system

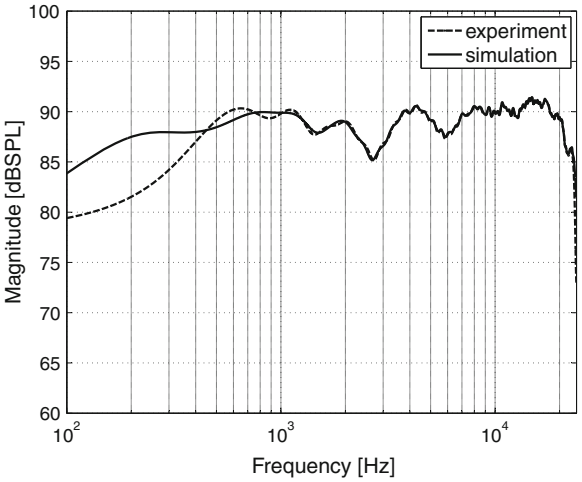



**Fig. 5.55** Comparison of simulation and experimental results of the loudspeaker system

### *5.10.3 Experimental Results*

All measurements were made in an acoustics chamber using the Clio system. The simplified block daigram of the measurement system is depicted in Fig. 5.53. Figure 5.54 shows frequency characteristics of the loudspeaker system channels (loudspeaker and crossover) tweeter, midrange, woofer, and whole system. Similar to the case of measuring the loudspeaker lower frequency, the frequency is limited by the conditions of the measurement and is 268 Hz. Also was made a comparison of loudspeaker system simulations with the experimental results obtained from the measurement of the entire system. In simulation, tests were used as the measured impulse responses of the loudspeakers. Figure 5.55 shows such frequency characteristics. The characteristics curves show consistency of simulation and experimental results.

The presented system is also very useful for an electroacoustic laboratory, especially for experiments with crossovers for speaker boxes. Using laptop computer and the Matlab program for designing the filter, it is very easy to change filter parameters.

## 5.11 Conclusions

The proposed noise shaping circuit for the digital class D amplifier PWM makes it possible to increase the quality of the D/A conversion. In future research, more efficient noise shaping circuits should be investigated. Special attention also should be paid to class D amplifier with full digital feedback. But this task is very difficult in audio applications with respect to the creation of audible transient suboscillation. The results of such circuits should be carefully verified by subjective tests.

Open loop digital class D amplifiers are free from such problems, but they require very high quality power supply voltage. For an audio application the power supply source impedance should be low, up to 20 kHz! So the author has presented an analog circuit for supply voltage fluctuation and transistor amplitude errors resulting from nonlinear on-state resistance compensation.

In the digital class D amplifier signal oversampling is required; therefore, there have also been considered signal interpolators that allow for increasing sampling frequency whilst maintaining substantial separation of signal from noise.

Finaly, two-way and three-way loudspeaker systems, designed by the author, have been presented, where a signal from input to output is digitally processed. The proposed two-way loudspeaker system with employed click modulator for the higher band and ordinary PWM for the lower band makes it possible to keep transistor switching frequency equal to 44.1 kHz. Using the low switching frequency reduces transistor power losses and reduces EMC interference. The designed active loudspeaker system covers the whole audio band, theoretically from 20 Hz to 20 kHz.

In the author's opinion, in the near future, digital active loudspeaker systems with digital input will become more and more popular, especially for home cinema systems. Another advantage of such systems is the possibility to control individual loudspeaker characteristics and give overload protection.

The algorithms and applications presented by the author in this chapter are a little bit off topic for traditional power electronics applications. However, the scope of application of power electronics is now quickly expanding to more and more areas. The problems presented in this chapter can be successfully applied in typical power electronics circuits. In particular, a noise shaping circuit for compensating systematic errors of inverter output stages can be used. This type of circuit can decrease the influence of dead time and minimum switch-on time. In the author's opinion, this compensation should be very fruitful for multilevel inverters too. The additional workload on the processor for a noise shaping circuit is very small, so it can be also easily implemented in the existing control circuits.

## References

1. Analog Devices (2005) ADSP-2136x SHARC processor hardware reference. Rev 1.0. Analog Devices Inc
2. Analog Devices (2007) ADSP-21364 Processor EZ-KIT lite evaluation system manual. Rev 3.2, Analog Devices Inc
3. D'Appolito J (1998) Testing loudspeaker. Audio Amateur Press, Peterborough
4. Audiomatica (2005) Clio electrical & acoustical test. User's manual, Audiomatica
5. Barbour E (1998) The cool sound of tubes. IEEE Spectr 35(8):24–35
6. Bateman A, Paterson-Stephens I (2002) The DSP handbook: algorithms, applications and design techniques. Prentice Hall, New Jersey
7. Bresch E, Padgett WT (1999) TMS320C67-based design of a digital audio power amplifier introducing novel feedback strategy. Texas Instruments DSPS Fest 99
8. Bruunshuus T (2004) Implementation of power supply volume control. Application report, SLEA038, Texas Instruments Inc

9. Bruunshuus T (2004) Power supply considerations for AV receivers. Application report, SLEA028, Texas Instruments Inc
10. Carley R L, Schreier R, Temes GC (1997) Delta-sigma ADCs with multibit internal conveters, In: Norsworthy SR, Schreier R, Temes GC (eds) Delta-sigma data converters, theory, design and simulation. IEEE Press, New York
11. Cataltepe T, Kramer AR, Larson LE, Temes GC, Walden RH (1992) Digitaly corrected multi-bit $\Sigma\Delta$ data converters. In: Candy JC, Temes GC (eds) IEEE Proceeding of ISCAS'89, May 1989. Oversampling delta-sigma data converters theory, design, and simulation. IEEE Press
12. Dabrowski A, Sozanski K (1998) Implementation of multirate modified wave digital filters using digital signal processors. XXI Krajowa Konferencja Teoria Obwodów i Układy Elektroniczne, KKTUIE98, Poznan
13. Dickason V (2000) The loudspeaker design cookbook. Audio Amateur Press, Peterborough
14. Dobrucki A (2007) Electroacoustic transducers. WNT, Warszawa (in Polish)
15. Duncan B (1996) High performance audio power amplifier for music performance and reproduction. Newnes, Oxford
16. Esslinger R, Gruhler G, Stewart RW (2004) Feedback strategies in digitally controlled class-D amplifiers. In: Conference proceedings, AES 114Th convention, Amsterdam, The Netherlands, 2003 pp 22–25, Audio Engineering Society
17. Eton (2012) Midrange loudspeaker 4–200/A8/25 HEX. Data sheet, Eton Gmbh
18. Eton (2012) Midrange loudspeaker 7–200/A8/32 HEX. Data sheet, Eton Gmbh
19. Eton (2012) Midrange loudspeaker 5–880/25 Hex. Data sheet, Eton Gmbh
20. Eton (2012) Tweeter loudspeaker 26HD1/A8. Data sheet, Eton Gmbh
21. Everest F (2000) Master handbook of acoustics. McGraw-Hill, New York
22. Fettweis A (1982) Transmultiplexers with either analog conversion circuits, wave digital filters, or SC filters—a review. IEEE Trans Commun 30(7):1575–1586
23. Fettweis A (1989) Modified wave digital filters for improved implementation by commercial digital signal processors. Signal Process 16(3):193–207
24. Flige N (1994) Multirate Digital Signal Processing. Wiley, NewYork
25. Galton I (1997) Spectral shaping of circuit errors in digital-to-analog converters. IEEE Trans Circuits Syst II Analog Digital Signal Process 44(10):789–797
26. Gazsi L (1985) Explicit formulas for lattice wave digital filters. IEEE Trans Circuit Syst 32(1):68–88
27. Goldberg JM, Sandler MB (1994) New high accuracy pulse width modulation based digital-to-analogue convertor/power amplifier. IEE Proc Circuits Devices Syst 141(4):315–324
28. Gwee BH, Chang JS, Adrian V (2007) A micropower low-distortion digital class-D amplifier based on an algorithmic pulsewidth modulator. IEEE Trans Circuits Syst I Regul Pap 52(10):2007–2022
29. Holmes DG, Lipo TA (2003) Pulse width modulation for power converters: principles and practice. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc
30. Kostrzewa M, Kulka Z (2005) Time-domain performance investigations of the click modulation-based PWM for digital class-D audio power amplifiers. In: Conference proceedings, signal processing 2005—IEEE, pp 121–126
31. Krukowski A, Kale I, Morling R, Hejn K (1994) A Design technique for polyphase decimators with binary constrained coefficients for high resolution A/D converters. In: IEEE international symposium on circuits and systems (ISCAS'94), pp 533–536
32. Kuncewicz L (2009) Design and realization of PWM with click modulation algorithm. Master's thesis, University of Zielona Gora, Poland (in Polish)
33. Larson LE, Cataltepe T, Temes G (1992) Multibit oversampled—A/D converter with digital error correction, IEEE electronics letters, 24 Aug 1988. In: Candy J C, Temes G C (eds) Oversampling delta-sigma data converters, theory, design and simulation. IEEE Press, New York
34. Ledger D, Tomarakos J (1998) Using the low cost, high performance ADSP-21065L digital signal processor for digital audio applications. Revision 1.0, Analog devices, Norwood, USA

35. Leung BH, Sutarja S (1992) Multibit—A/D converter incorporating a novel class of dynamic element matching techniques. IEEE Trans Circuits Syst II Analog Digital Signal Process 39(1):35–51
36. Linkwitz SH (1976) Active crossover networks for non-coincident drivers. J Audio Eng Soc 24(1):2–8
37. Logan BF (1984) Click modulation. AT T Bell Lab Techn J 63(3):401–423
38. Madsen K, Soerensen T (2005) PSRR for purePath digital TM audio amplifiers. Application report, SLEA049, Texas Instruments Inc
39. Midya P, Roeckner B (2010) Large-signal design and performance of a digital PWM amplifier. J Audio Eng Soc 58(9):739–752
40. Mosely ID, Mellor PH, Bingham CM (1999) Effect of dead time on harmonic distortion in class-D audio power amplifiers. IEEE Electron Lett 35(12):950–952
41. Mouton T, Putzeys B (2009) Digital control of a PWM switching amplifier with global feedback. In: Conference proceeding, AES 37th international conference, Hillerod, Denmark, 28–30 Aug 2009, Audio engineering society
42. Nielsen K (1998) Audio power amplifier techniques with energy efficient power conversion. Ph.D. thesis, Departament of Applied Electronics, Technical University of Denmark
43. Orfanidis SJ (1996) ADSP-2181 experiments. http://www.ece.rutgers.edu/orfanidi/ezkitl/man.pdf. Accessed Dec 2012
44. Orfanidis SJ (2010) Introduction to signal processing. Prentice Hall, Inc, Upper Saddle River
45. Oliva A, Paolini E, Ang SS (2005) A new audio file format for low-cost, high-fidelity, portable digital audio amplifiers, Texas Instruments
46. Pascual C, Song Z, Krein PT, Sarwate DV, Midya P, Roeckner WJ (2003) High-fidelity PWM inverter for digital audio amplification: spectral analysis, real-time DSP Implementation and results. IEEE Trans Power Electron 18(1):473–485
47. Putzeys B (2008) A universal grammar of class D amplification, Tutorial, 124th AES convention. http://www.aes.org. Accessed 26 June 2012
48. Putzeys B, Veltman A, Hulst P, Groenenberg R (2006) All amplifiers are analogue, but some amplifiers are more analogue than others. Convention paper 353, 120th convention 2006 May. France, Audio Engineering Society, Paris, pp 20–23
49. Santi S, Ballardini M, Rovatti R, Setti G (2005) The effects of digital implementation on ZePoC codec. In: ECCTD—IEEE III, pp 173–176
50. Self D (2002) Audio power amplifier design handbook. Newnes, Oxford
51. Self D (2008) Linear audio power amplification. Tutorial, 124th AES convention. http://www.aes.org. Accessed 26 June 2012
52. Slone GR (1999) High-power audio amplifier construction manual. McGraw-Hill, New York
53. Small R (1973) Vented-box loudspeaker systems. Part I J Audio Eng Soc 21:363–372
54. Small R (1973) Closed-box loudspeaker systems. Part II J Audio Eng Soc 21:11–18
55. Small R (1973) Vented-box loudspeaker systems. Part III J Audio Eng Soc 21:635–639
56. Small R (1973) Vented-box loudspeaker systems. Part II J Audio Eng Soc 21:549–554
57. Small R (1972) Direct-radiator loudspeaker system analysis. J Audio Eng Soc 20:383–395
58. Small R (1972) Closed-box loudspeaker systems. Part I J Audio Eng Soc 20:798–808
59. Sozanski K (1999) Design and research of digital filters banks using digital signal processors. Ph.D. thesis, Technical University of Poznan (in Polish)
60. Sozanski K (2007) Subwoofer loudspeaker system with acoustic dipole. Elektronika : Konstrukcje, Technologie, Zastosowania 4:21–26
61. Sozanski K (2010) Digital realization of a click modulator for an audio power amplifier. Przeglad Elektrotechniczny (Electric Rev) 2010(2):353–357
62. Sozanski K (2002) Implementation of modified wave digital filters using digital signal processors, In: Conference proceedings, 9th international conference on electronics. Circuits and systems, ICECS, pp 1015–1018
63. Sozanski K, Strzelecki R, Fedyczak Z, (2001) Digital control circuit for class-D audio power amplifier. In: Conference proceedings, 2001 IEEE 32nd annual power electronics specialists conference—PESC, pp 1245–1250

64. Streitenberger M, Bresch H, Mathis W (2000) Theory and implementation of a new type of digital power amplifiers for audio applications. In: ICAS 2000—IEEE I, pp 511–514
65. Streitenberger M, Felgenhauer F, Bresch H, Mathis W (2002) Class-D audio amplifiers with separated baseband for low-power mobile applications. In: Conference proceedings, ICCSC'02—IEEE, pp 186–189
66. Texas Instruments (2004) TAS5121 Digital amplifier power stage. Texas Instruments Inc
67. Texas Instruments (2007) TAS5518-5261K2EVM. User's guide, SLAA332A, Texas Instuments Inc
68. Texas Instruments (2007) TAS5508-5121K8EVM evaluation module for the TAS5508 8-channel digital audio PWM processor and the TAS5121 digital amplifier power output stage. User's guide, SLEU054b.pdf, Texas Instrumentss Inc
69. Texas Instruments (2008) TMS320F28335/28334/28332, TMS320F28235/28234/28232 digital signal controllers (DSCs). Texas Instruments Inc, Data manual
70. Texas Instruments (2010) TAS5508C 8-channel digital audio PWM processor. Data manual, SLES257, Texas Instruments Inc
71. Texas Instruments (2010) C2000 Teaching materials, tutorials and applications. SSQC019, Texas Instruments Inc
72. Texas Instruments (2010) A 600W, universal input, isolated PFC power supply for AVR amplifiers based on the TAS5630/5631. Reference design, SLOU293 Texas Instruments Inc
73. Texas Instruments (2012) TAS5631B 300 W stereo/ 600 W mono purePathTM HD digital-input power stage. Data sheet, SLES263C, Texas Instruments Inc
74. Thiele N (1971) Loudspeakers in vented boxes. Part I J Audio Eng Soc 19:382–392
75. Thiele N (1971) Loudspeakers in vented boxes. Part II J Audio Eng Soc 19:471–483
76. Thile N, Small R (2008) Loudspeaker parameters, Tutorial. AES 124th convention. http://www.aes.org
77. Vaidyanathan PP (1992) Multirate systems and filter banks. Prentice Hall Inc, Englewood Cliffs
78. Venezuela RA, Constantindes AG (1982) Digital signal processing schemes for efficient interpolation and decimation. IEE Proc Part G (6):225–235
79. Verona J (2001) Power digital-to-analog conversion using sigma-delta and pulse width modulations, ECE1371 Analog electronics II, ECE University of Toronto 2001(II):1–14
80. Zolzer U (2008) Digital audio signal processing. Wiley, New York
81. Zolzer U (ed.) (2002) DAFX - Digital audio effects. John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

# Chapter 6
# Conclusion

## 6.1 Summary of Results

In this book the author has presented his research, analysis, and completed projects in the field of signal processing. It began by discussing analog signal acquisition through conversion to digital form, then examined the methods of its filtration and separation, and finally focused on pulse control of output inverters. To start with, an analysis was made of the most common sources of errors during conversion of analog signal into its digital form. This process is unquestionably very important for the quality of the entire digital control system. The presented discussion has given a deeper understanding of the selection of control system parameters.

The author has focused on two applications for the considered methods of digital signal processing: An active power filter and a digital class D power amplifier. In this book, the author's original solutions for both applications have been analyzed and implemented. Both applications require precise digital control circuits with a very high dynamic range of control signals. Hence, these applications have provided very good illustrations for the considered methods.

The scope of the monograph has included the following selected digital signal processing methods:

- Selected digital signal processing algorithms useful for a power electronics control circuits: Special attention has been paid to implementation aspects using digital signal processors. The author has presented an overview of the characteristics of microprocessors useful for implementing digital signal processing.
- Wave digital filters: The properties of such filters give excellent results in implementation. Thus, this book has included descriptions of wave digital filters and a wave digital filter with the author's modifications. The monograph has analyzed the critical path of such filters, and selected a circuit with a shorter critical path. There has also been shown an effective application of wave digital filters in multirate circuits. In spite of the advantageous features of the type of filters described in Chap. 3, they are not commonly used. The presented methods and circuit have been used in a selected application.

K. Sozański, *Digital Signal Processing in Power Electronics Control Circuits*, Power Systems, DOI: 10.1007/978-1-4471-5267-5_6,

- Linear-phase IIR filters based on noncausal IIR filter: These filters have been shown to be a good alternative to the high-order FIR filter, as they require less arithmetic operations. In this book, the design of such filters has been presented. Additionally, these filters have been used to build signal interpolators.

The most important issues concerning active power filter control circuits which have been considered in the monograph are:

- A review and analysis of selected algorithms based on DFT transform useful for the implementation of control systems APF: Sliding DFT, sliding Goertzel, and moving DFT algorithms have been considered. In 2003, the author was one of the first to introduce the sliding DFT algorithm to APF control systems. The usefulness of these algorithms has been confirmed through simulation and experimental studies.
- A review and analysis of selected filter banks for signal separation useful in applications for power electronics: The filter banks have been applied to a selective harmonics compensation algorithm. Instantaneous power theory and moving DFT have been considered. These algorithms have been confirmed through simulation studies.
- Dynamic distortion in APF: Its presence makes it impossible to fully eliminate line harmonics. In some cases, the line current *THD* ratio for systems with APF compensation can reach a value of a dozen or so percent. Hence, the problems of active power filter dynamics have been investigated. Power loads can be divided into two main categories: Predictable loads and noise-like loads. Most loads belong to the first category. For this reason, it is possible to predict current values in subsequent periods, after a few periods of observation. The author has proposed simplified APF models suitable for analysis and simulation of this phenomena. The author has found a solution to these problems. For predictable line current changes, the author has designed a modification using a predictive circuit to reduce dynamic compensation errors. The author's experimental results have confirmed the usefulness of the compensation method with predictive circuit. This modification for APF control algorithms is very simple and the additional computational workload is very small. Therefore, it is shown to be very easy to implement it in an existing APF digital control circuit based on a digital signal processor, microcontroller, or programmable digital circuit (FPGA, CPLD, etc.), thereby improving the quality of harmonic compensation. In addition, the research has shown that current prediction circuits may be applied to other power electronics devices, such as serial APF, power conditioners, high quality AC sources, UPS etc.
- Unpredictable line current changes: The author has developed a multirate APF. The presented multirate APF has shown a fast response to sudden changes in the load current. Therefore using multirate APF, it is possible to decrease *THD* ratio of line current even for unpredictable loads.

For the control circuit of digital class D power amplifiers the following topics have been included:

- Signal interpolators for high quality audio signal with high signal-to-noise ratio.

- A second order noise shaping circuit for compensating quantization noise and systematic errors of inverter output stages: This can increase the output voltage signal-to-noise ratio. This type of circuit is shown to be able to decrease the influence of dead time and minimum switch-on time. The additional workload on the processor for a noise shaping circuit is shown to be very small, making it easy to implement in existing control circuits. The circuit can be also applied in other power electronics devices. In the author's opinion this compensation should be very fruitful for multilevel inverters too.
- Problems of supply voltage fluctuation influence on a class D amplifier.
- Analysis and design of an analog circuit for supply voltage fluctuation and transistor amplitude errors resulting from nonlinear on-state resistance compensation.
- The design of a two-way loudspeaker system with digital click modulator: When such a system is used for the higher band and ordinary PWM for the lower band it has been shown to make it possible to keep transistor switching frequency equal to 44.1 kHz. Using the low switching frequency reduces transistor power losses and reduces EMC interference. The designed active loudspeaker system covers the whole audio band.

The greater part of the presented methods and circuits in this book are the original work of the author. The results of simulation and experimental studies have been achieved by the original work of the author. For some algorithms, listings from Matlab or in C language have been presented. In the author's opinion, the presented methods and circuits can be successfully applied to the whole range of power electronics circuits.

## 6.2 Future Work

The scope of future research planned for selected signal processing algorithms related to specific applications:

- The design of an efficient linear phase IIR filter with modified lattice wave digital filters and two-path filters: In the next phase signal interpolators with such filters will be researched.
- The analysis and design of a digital crossover using filter banks with loudspeaker characteristics equalization: In this crossover the use of wave digital filters will be studied.
- Research of methods for power quality analysis and fault detection [2].

The scope of future research on active power filter control circuits:

- Continued investigation of APF dynamics: The work on APF control circuits based on iterative learning control algorithms, repetitive control algorithm [3], and wavelets will be continued.
- The investigation of closed loop APF control circuits with predictive current circuits.

- Improvement of control circuit properties: To this end, the application of a digital signal processing circuit fully synchronized with power line frequency will be studied. For this purpose,a digital phase locked loop circuit will be developed.

The scope of future research on digital class D power amplifiers:

- High quality audio signal digital circuits: Such circuits need to be well synchronized with a low level of jitter [1]. Research and construction of a fully synchronized digital circuit with low noise digital phase locked loop circuit will be undertaken.
- Signal-to-noise ratio: To increase this factor research of more efficient high-order noise shaping circuits will be investigated.
- A class D amplifier with full digital feedback [4–6]: Special attention will be paid to such an amplifier, which should have very low output impedance. However, this task is very difficult in audio applications with respect to the creation of audible transient suboscillation. Therefore, such a circuit will be investigated and designed. The results of such circuits will be carefully verified by tests.
- An analysis of woofer functioning with the class D digital amplifier: The purpose of this analysis is to determine the position of the speaker cone with respect to the electromotive force generated in the coil. This will lead to better control of the speaker in the low frequency range.

## References

1. Azeredo-Leme C (2011) Clock jitter effects on sampling: a tutorial. IEEE Circuits Syst Mag 3:26–37
2. Bollen MHJ, Gu IYH, Santoso S, McGranaghan MF, Crossley PA, Ribeiro MV, Ribeiro PF (2009) Bridging the gap between signal and power. IEEE Signal Process Mag 26(4):12–31
3. Buso S, Mattavelli P (2006) Digital control in power electronics. Morgan & Claypool, Princeton
4. Mouton T, Putzeys B (2009) Digital control of a PWM switching amplifier with global feedback. In: AES 37th international conference, Audio Engineering Society, Hillerod, Denmark, 28–30 Aug 2009
5. Midya P, Roeckner B (2010) Large-signal design and performance of a digital PWM amplifier. J Audio Eng Soc 58(9):739–752
6. Putzeys B (2008) A universal grammar of class D amplification, tutorial. 124th AES convention. http://www.aes.org. Accessed Dec 2012

# Index




K. Sozański, *Digital Signal Processing in Power Electronics Control Circuits*, Power Systems, DOI: 10.1007/978-1-4471-5267-5,